



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

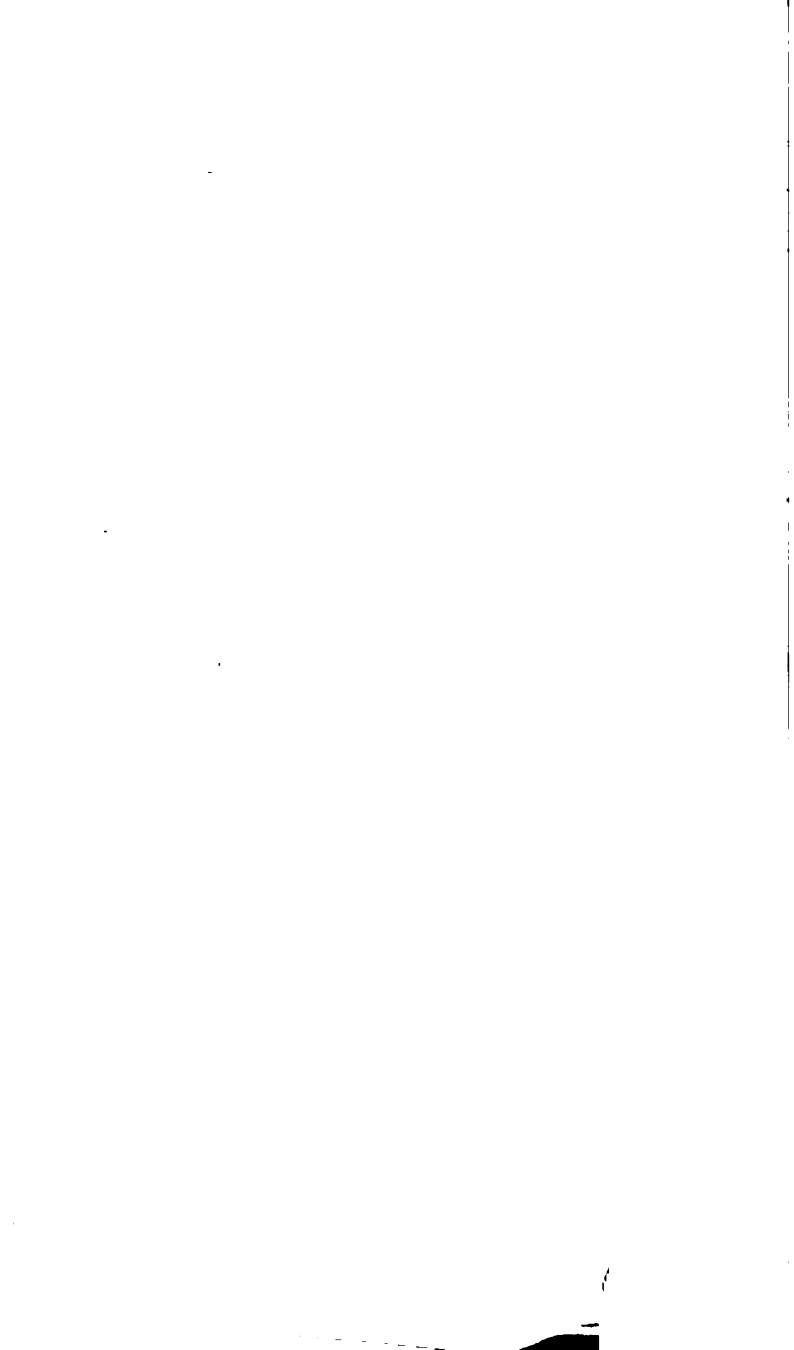
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

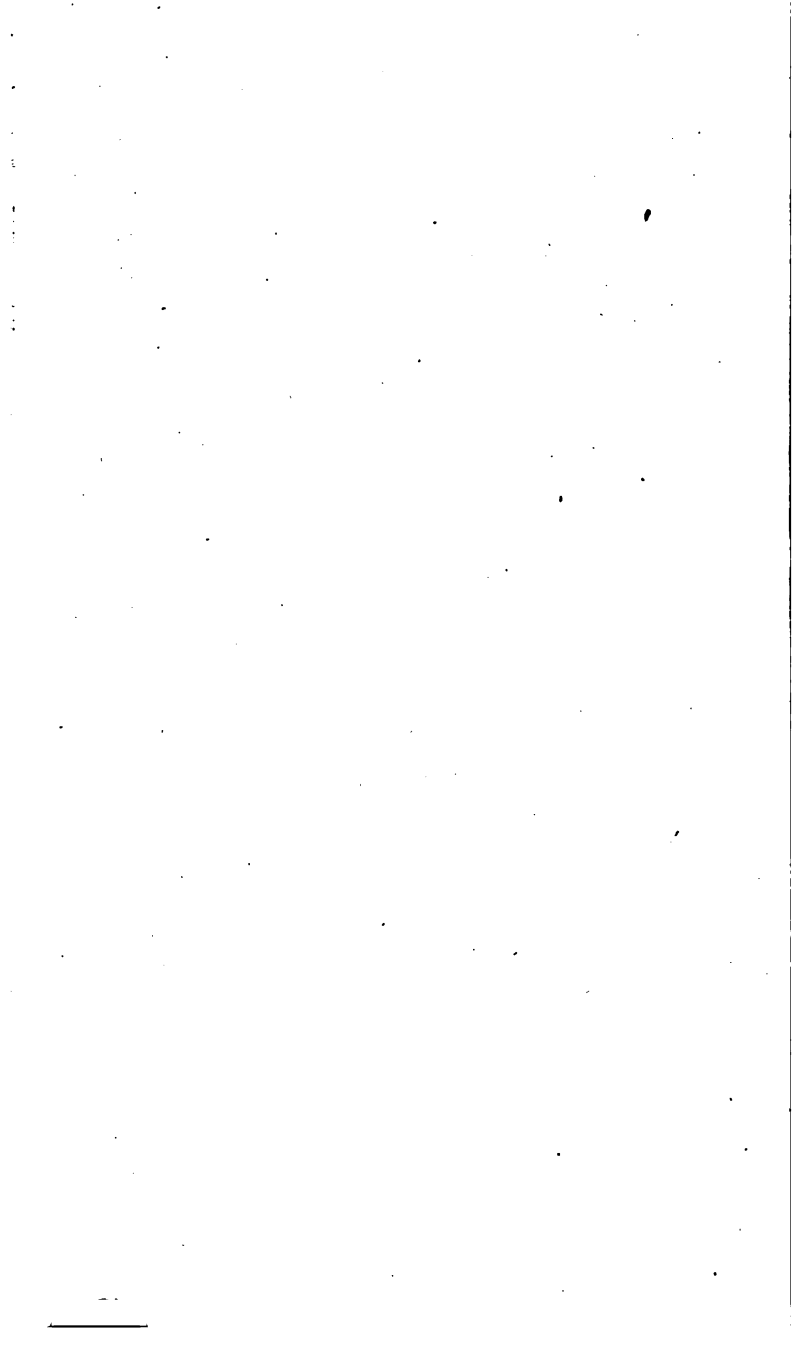
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





A  
NEW AND COMPENDIOUS  
THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL  
GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
FRENCH LANGUAGE,

TO WHICH HAS BEEN ADDED,  
A COMPLETE TREATISE ON THE GENDERS OF FRENCH NOUNS:

BY  
ISIDORE BRASSEUR,  
PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN  
KING'S COLLEGE, AND THE CHARTER HOUSE, LONDON.

THIRD EDITION

CAREFULLY REVISED.



LONDON:  
BOSSANGE, BARTHÈS, AND LOWELL,  
14, GREAT MARLBOROUGH STREET.

MDCCCXL.

446.

SECRET  
THIS DOCUMENT CONTAINS NO

## P R E F A C E.

---

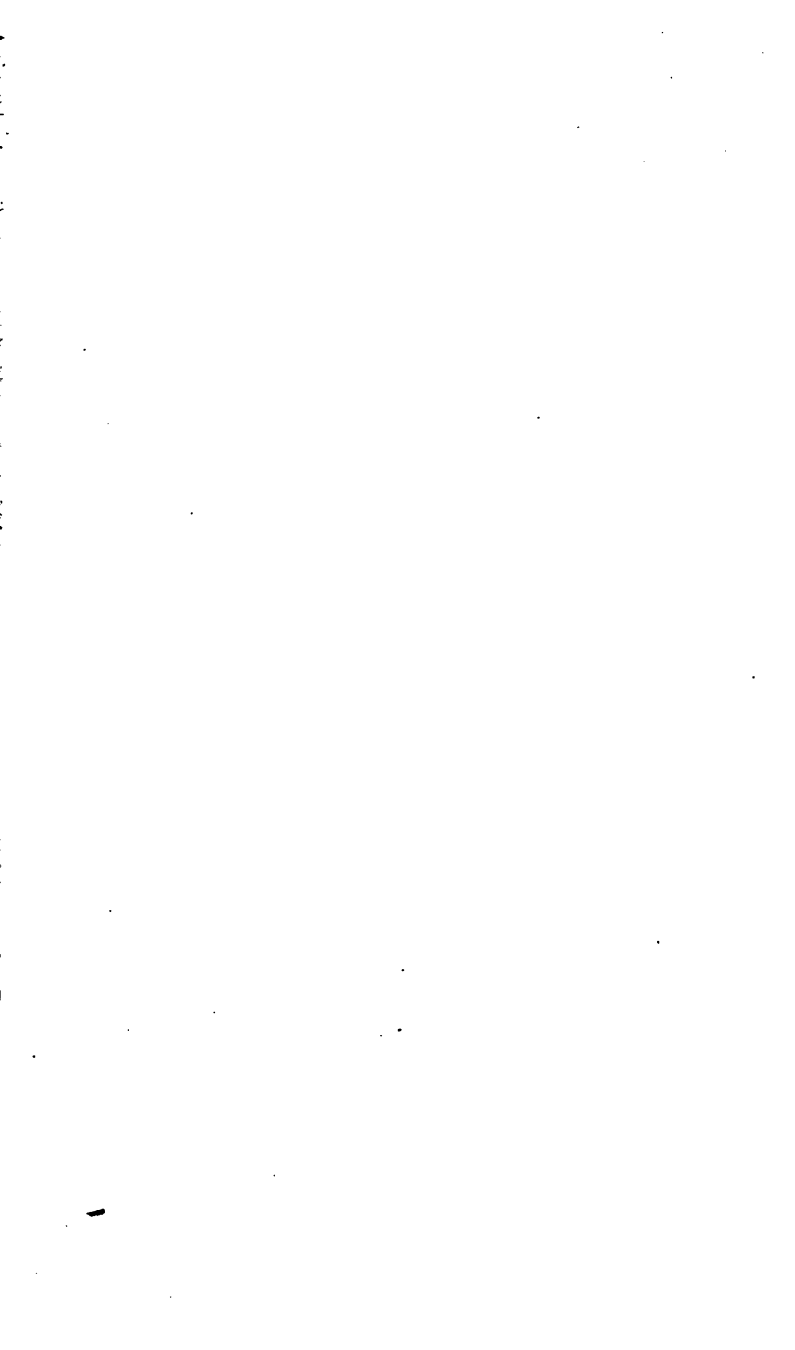
THE publication of a new French Grammar in England seemed, considering the number already known and justly esteemed, unnecessary, except on the ground of further improvement—and the attempt was made, not in conceit, but in the confident belief, strengthened by an experience of many years, that a Grammar arranged throughout with an especial view to *shorten* and *facilitate*, more than had been done before, the labours of Pupils in the *Juvenile Classes*, would be acceptable both to themselves and their instructors.

The time allowed for studying the French Language in Schools is usually very limited, and the attention necessary for the understanding of some of the books used in many of these establishments is not or *cannot* always be given; the hope, therefore, that a book professing to save time and trouble, would be received with favour, was not altogether groundless.

The rapidity with which two large Editions of the present work have been exhausted is a gratifying proof that its Author was not in error.

I. B.

*King's College, September, 1840.*



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## PART THE FIRST.

	PAGE.
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1
General observations on vowels . . . . .	2
Of accents and other signs . . . . .	3
Of consonants . . . . .	5

### CHAPTER I.

Of the article . . . . .	13
--------------------------	----

### CHAPTER II.

Of the substantive or noun . . . . .	19
--------------------------------------	----

### CHAPTER III.

#### OF ADJECTIVES.

Qualificative adjectives . . . . .	24
Degrees of comparison . . . . .	32
Possessive adjectives . . . . .	35
Demonstrative adjectives . . . . .	37
Indefinite adjectives . . . . .	39
Numeral adjectives . . . . .	39

### CHAPTER IV.

#### OF PRONOUNS.

Of personal pronouns . . . . .	44
Of possessive pronouns . . . . .	46
Of demonstrative pronouns . . . . .	47
Relative pronouns . . . . .	50
Indefinite pronouns . . . . .	53

### CHAPTER V.

#### OF VERBS.

Remarks on the orthography of the verbs of the first conjugation . . . . .	76
General remarks on the four conjugations . . . . .	95
Of the formation of tenses . . . . .	96
Tabular view of the terminations of French regular verbs . . . . .	96
Of passive verbs . . . . .	99
Of neuter verbs . . . . .	ib.
Of pronominal verbs . . . . .	101
Of unipersonal verbs . . . . .	110
Of irregular verbs . . . . .	117

### CHAPTER VI.

Of the adverb . . . . .	128
-------------------------	-----

### CHAPTER VII.

Of the preposition . . . . .	135
------------------------------	-----

### CHAPTER VIII.

Of the conjunction . . . . .	139
------------------------------	-----

### CHAPTER IX.

Of interjections . . . . .	140
----------------------------	-----



## PART THE SECOND. OF SYNTAX.

### CHAPTER I.

#### SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

	PAGE.
Cases in which the definite article is used in French . . .	141
Cases in which no article is used in French . . .	146

### CHAPTER II.

Syntax of substantives . . . . .	152
Of nouns of multitude . . . . .	155

### CHAPTER III.

#### SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

Of the agreement of adjectives with their substantives . . .	156
Of the place of adjectives . . . . .	158
Of the government of adjectives . . . . .	161
Adjectives of dimension . . . . .	164
Of the comparison of adjectives . . . . .	165
Of possessive adjectives . . . . .	168
Of demonstrative adjectives . . . . .	171
Of indefinite adjectives . . . . .	173
Of numeral adjectives . . . . .	179
Of ordinal numbers . . . . .	181

### CHAPTER IV.

#### SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

Of personal pronouns . . . . .	182
Of possessive pronouns . . . . .	196
Of demonstrative pronouns . . . . .	197
Of relative pronouns . . . . .	199
Of the indefinite pronoun . . . . .	202

### CHAPTER V.

#### SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Of the subject, or nominative of verbs . . . . .	206
Of the object, or government of verbs . . . . .	207
Of the use of tenses, simple and compound . . . . .	210
Of participles . . . . .	221
Of the participle present . . . . .	ib.
Of the participle past with <i>avoir</i> . . . . .	223
Of the participle past with <i>être</i> . . . . .	226

### CHAPTER VI.

#### SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

Place of adverbs . . . . .	228
Observations on some negations . . . . .	230
Particular rules on <i>ne</i> . . . . .	231

### CHAPTER VII.

#### ON PREPOSITIONS.

Observations on some prepositions . . . . .	236
---	-----

### CHAPTER VIII.

#### SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

On the various use of <i>que</i> . . . . .	239
Of the government of conjunctions . . . . .	243
Rules on genders . . . . .	245

# A GRAMMAR

## OF THE

# FRENCH LANGUAGE.

### INTRODUCTION.

#### OF THE FRENCH ALPHABET.

FRENCH Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the French language correctly.

The French alphabet is composed of *twenty-five* letters, viz :

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O,  
P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

French consonants are called by the sound they have in words, in the way here pointed out.

B	pronounce	<i>be</i> *	as in	<i>barbe</i> ,	beard.
C	....	<i>ke</i>	...	<i>côte</i> ,	coast or rib.
D	....	<i>de</i>	...	<i>le monde</i> ,	the world.
F	....	<i>fe</i>	...	<i>fenêtre</i> ,	window.
G	....	<i>gue</i>	...	<i>gâteau</i> ,	a cake.

---

\* In the new pronunciation as given here, the *e* having no accent is sounded as in the English word *flattery*. Formerly the consonants were pronounced *bé, cé, dé, effé, gé, ache, elle, emme, enne, pé, qu, erre, esse, té, vé, icse, zéde*; the other method (that adopted here), proposed by the most eminent grammarians the French ever had, is by far more rational, and is now generally adopted. As Girault Divivier justly remarks, *fe, re, i*, as pronounced according to the new method, make *fri*, whereas, according to the old *effé, erre, i*, make *efféri*; *p, r, o*, in the former case, make *pro*, in the latter *pérro*, showing by these examples, the superiority of the new method by which consonants preserve, when joined with other letters, the sound they have when used singly.

H	pronounce	<i>he</i>	as in	<i>héros,</i>	a hero.
J	.....	<i>je</i>	....	<i>jeter,</i>	to throw.
K	.....	<i>ke</i>	....	<i>kali,</i>	kali.
L	.....	<i>le</i>	....	<i>lit,</i>	a bed.
M	.....	<i>me</i>	....	<i>malade,</i>	sick.
N	.....	<i>ne</i>	....	<i>aune,</i>	an ell.
P	.....	<i>pe</i>	....	<i>petit,</i>	little.
Q	.....	<i>ke</i>	....	<i>quand, que,</i>	when, what.
R	.....	<i>re</i>	....	<i>rare, rat,</i>	rare, rat.
S	.....	<i>se</i>	....	<i>semestre,</i>	half-year.
T	.....	<i>te</i>	....	<i>tête,</i>	head.
	.....	<i>ve</i>	....	<i>valve,</i>	a valve.
	.....	<i>kse</i>	....	<i>exclus,</i>	excluded.
	.....	<i>ze</i>	....	<i>zèle,</i>	zeal.

The above twenty-five letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

A *vowel* is a letter that forms a perfect sound when uttered alone.

A *consonant* on the contrary, cannot be articulated without the assistance of a vowel.

*A, e, i, o, u, y,* are *vowels*; the rest are *consonants*.

The French language has no *w*; this, as well as *k*, is only found in words borrowed or derived from other languages.

## GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE VOWELS.

The vowels are pronounced either *short* or *long*.

### EXAMPLES :

<i>a</i> is long in	<i>pâte,</i>	dough.	<i>a</i> is short in	<i>patte,</i>	paw.
<i>e</i> " "	<i>tempête,</i>	storm.	<i>e</i> " "	<i>trompette,</i>	trumpet.
<i>i</i> " "	<i>gîte,</i>	a home.	<i>i</i> " "	<i>petite,</i>	little.
<i>o</i> " "	<i>hôte,</i>	host.	<i>o</i> " "	<i>hotte,</i>	basket, wicket.
<i>u</i> " "	<i>flûte,</i>	flute.	<i>u</i> " "	<i>hutte,</i>	hut.

From the simple vowels are formed what are called the compound and the nasal vowels.

### THE COMPOUND AND NASAL VOWELS ARE :

#### Compound.

*ai* as in *mai, may.*  
*ae* — *aurore, aurore.*  
*eu* — *Europe, Europe.*  
*ou* — *tout, all.*

#### Nasal.

*an* or *en* *ange, content, angel, pleased.*  
*in* — *ingrat, ungrateful.*  
*un* — *chacun, each.*  
*on* — *bon, good.*

The above compound vowels form *simple* sounds, peculiar to the French language ; they must not, therefore, be confounded with *diphthongs* which are syllables in which *two* distinct sounds are heard, though uttered with a single emission of the voice : as in the word *Dieu*, in which the sounds of *i* and *eu* are distinctly heard.

## OF ACCENTS.

*Accents* are signs peculiar to the French language. They alter the pronunciation of the vowels over which they are placed.

There are three accents in the French language.

The *acute* ( ' ) placed over the letter *e* only, to give it the sound of *a* in English, as in *témérité*, *été*, *vérité*.

The *grave* ( ` ) placed over the letter *e* only, to give it an open sound, as in *accès*, *succès*, *père*.

The *circumflex* ( ^ ) placed over any vowel, to give it a long sound, as, *plâtre*, *fête*, *même*, *dôme*.

### OBSERVATION ON THE GRAVE AND CIRCUMFLEX ACCENTS.

The grave accent is placed upon :

<i>à</i> , to or at ;	{ to distinguish them from }	<i>a</i> , has.
<i>là</i> , there ;		<i>la</i> , the.
<i>où</i> , where ;		<i>ou</i> , or.
<i>dès</i> , from ;		<i>des</i> , of or from the, some.

The circumflex accent is likewise placed upon :

<i>mûr</i> , ripe ;	{ to distinguish them from }	<i>mur</i> , a wall.
<i>sûr</i> , sure ;		<i>sur</i> , upon.
<i>crû</i> , grown ;		<i>cru</i> , believed.
<i>dû</i> , due ;		<i>du</i> , of or from the, some.
<i>pu</i> , grazed ;		<i>pu</i> , participle of <i>pouvoir</i> .
<i>tû</i> , kept secret ;		<i>tu</i> , thou.

## OF THE APOSTROPHE.

The *apostrophe* ( ' ) denotes the suppression of a vowel before another vowel, or an *h* mute : it is placed above the

level of the line, as *l'enfant*, *l'homme*. This suppression is called *elision*; it is done to avoid an unpleasant sound.

The vowel is suppressed in the monosyllables *le*, *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ce*,\* *ne*, *que*, when coming immediately before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

It is suppressed also in the compounds of *que*, such as : *jusque*, *puisque*, *quoique*, etc.

The vowel *a* is suppressed in the article definite *la*; and,

The vowel *i* only in the word *si* (if), before the pronouns *il*, *ils*.

## OF THE CEDILLA.

The *cedilla* is a little sign made nearly like a comma, and placed under the *c*, thus (*ç*), to give it the soft sound of *s*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, as in *façade*, *garçon*, *aperçu*, which are pronounced *fasade*, *garson*, *apersu*.

## OF THE DIÆRESIS.

The *diæresis* or *trema*, is a double dot placed over the vowels *e*, *i*, *u*, to denote that their pronunciation is quite distinct from that of the vowel which precedes them; as in *haïr*, *Moïse*, *noël*, *Esaü*, which are pronounced *ha-ir*, *Mo-ise*, *no-el*, *Esa-u*.

## OF THE HYPHEN.

The *hyphen* is a short mark, thus (-), placed between two words to shew that they are to be joined, or that they form a compound word, as in *long-temps*, *dix-huit*, *non-seulement*, *dépêchez-vous*, *dites-moi*, *suis-je*, *moi-même*, *arc-en-ciel*, *vis-à-vis*, etc.

\* Only when a pronoun; when *ce* is used as a demonstrative adjective, we add a *t* to it, as : *cet ami*, *cet homme*.

## OF DIPHTHONGS.

As we have already stated, the *diphthong* is the union of two or more vowels in the same syllable, which, though uttered with a single emission of the voice, conveys to the ear a double sound.

## THE PRINCIPAL DIPHTHONGS ARE :

<i>ei</i>	as in	<i>bourgeois,</i>	a citizen.
<i>ia</i>	" "	<i>galimatias,</i>	nonsense.
<i>ie</i>	" "	<i>amitié,</i>	friendship.
<i>ie</i>	" "	<i>rivière,</i>	river.
<i>iu</i>	" "	<i>reliure,</i>	binding.
<i>ieu</i>	" "	<i>lieu,</i>	place.
<i>io</i>	" "	<i>brioche,</i>	a kind of cake.
<i>ien</i>	" "	<i>lien,</i>	tie.
<i>ian</i>	" "	<i>viande,</i>	meat.
<i>ion</i>	" "	<i>passion,</i>	passion.
<i>oi*</i>	" "	<i>loi,</i>	law.
<i>oin</i>	" "	<i>foin,</i>	hay.
<i>ouan</i>	" "	<i>louange,</i>	praise.
<i>ouai</i>	" "	<i>je jouai,</i>	I played.
<i>oui</i>	" "	<i>Louis,</i>	Lewis.
<i>uai</i>	" "	<i>je remuai,</i>	I moved
<i>uer</i>	" "	<i>éternuer,</i>	to sneeze.

## OF CONSONANTS.

## B.

B, *b*, has the same sound as in English.

## C.

C, *c*, has the sound  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} k, \text{ before } a, o, u, \text{ and } l, n, r. \\ s, \text{ before } e, i, \text{ and } y. \end{array} \right.$

---

\* The difficulty was great which formerly existed as to the pronunciation of *oi* in the names of some nations, provinces, or their inhabitants; for example:—*Chinois, Suédois, Anglois, Hollandois*, which are pronounced Chi-noa, Suédoa; *Anglais, Hollandais*, no rule being given, and the number in one case being as great as in the other. Now, the difficulty is removed, as we write with *ai* instead of *oi* all such words in which this combination had the sound of *è*—accordingly we write *Anglais, Hollandais, &c. &c.*

## EXAMPLES :

Of <i>c</i> sounded as <i>k</i> .		Of <i>c</i> sounded as <i>s</i> .	
<i>curiosité,</i>	curiosity.	<i>célèbre,</i>	celebrate.
<i>capitale,</i>	a capital.	<i>ceci,</i>	this.

C, is sounded as *g* hard in *second*.

C, at the end of words is usually pronounced *k*; as in *duc*, a duke; *avec*, with; *lac*, a lake; *échec*, a loss, etc. but it is not sounded in :—

<i>un almanach,</i>	an almanack.	<i>franc,</i>	frank.
<i>le blanc,</i>	white.	<i>l'instinct,</i>	instinct.
<i>estomac,</i>	stomach.	<i>lacs,</i>	nets.
<i>broc,</i>	jug.	<i>arsenic,</i>	arsenic.
<i>croc,</i>	hook.	<i>escroc,</i>	sharper.
<i>accroc,</i>	rent.	<i>tronc,</i>	trunk.
<i>marc,</i>	eight ounces.	<i>clerc,</i>	clerk.
<i>échecs,</i>	chess.	<i>cric,</i>	jack.
<i>tabac,</i>	snuff.	<i>porc,</i>	hog.
<i>jonc,</i>	reed.	<i>le flanc,</i> etc.	the side.

Ch, has generally the sound of *sh* in *she*, *show*, as in *chemin*, road; *chapeau*, hat; but before a consonant, it has the sound of *k*, as in *chrétien*, christian; *chronique*, chronicle. Ch, has the sound of *k* in most words derived from the Greek, or some oriental language, as in *Chaldéen*, *Chersonèse*, *Melchisédec*, etc.

## D.

D, *d*, has the same sound as in English.

At the end of words before a vowel or a consonant, *d* takes the sound of *t*; as *vend-il*, does he sell? *un grand homme*, a great man.

## F.

F, *f*, is sounded like the same letter in English.

F, is sounded in all words ending in *if*, as *actif*, *vif*; and in most words ending in *f*; the principal exceptions are :

*clef,*  
*cerf,*  
*bœuf-gras,*  
*chef-d'œuvre,*  
*œuf-frais,*

key.  
 stag.  
 fat-ox.  
 master piece.  
 new laid egg.

to which may be added the following words when *plural* :

*nerfs,*  
*bœufs,*  
*œufs,*  
*neufs,*

nerves.  
 oxen.  
 eggs.  
 new.

## G.

G, *g*, is pronounced { hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, *r*, and *l*, as  
                                   *gant*, glove ; *gomme*, gum.  
                                   soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*, as in *agir*,  
                                   to act ; *gymnase*, gymnasium.

G, coupled with *n*, has generally the *liquid sound*, as in *dignité*.

G is mute in :

<i>faubourg,</i>	suburb.
<i>Luxembourg,</i>	Luxemburg.
<i>legs,</i>	legacies.
<i>doigt,</i>	finger.
<i>poing,</i>	fist.
<i>vieux-oing,</i>	cart's grease.

<i>hareng,</i>	herring.
<i>étang,</i>	pond.
<i>vingt,</i>	twenty.
<i>coing,</i>	quince.
<i>seing,</i>	signature.

and in *rang*, rank ; *sang*, blood ; *long*, long ; before a consonant.

## H.

H, *h*, is either *mute* or *aspirated* ; when *mute*, *h* is not sounded at all, as in *les hommes*, the men ; which we pronounce *lé zommes*. No rule can be laid down for distinguishing the words wherein the *h* is either *mute* or *aspirated*.

## J.

J, *j*, is pronounced as in *jeune*, young ; *jamais*, never.



## K.

K, *k*, requires no observation.

## L.

L, *l*, final, and *ll* in the middle of words preceded by *i*, generally have the liquid sound, as in *taille*, shape; *bail*, lease; *brillant*, brilliant. Except *gille*, *ville*, *mille*, and all words beginning with *ill*: as *illustre*, *illégal*, etc.

The letter *l* is not pronounced in :

<i>un baril,</i>	a barrel.	<i>le nombril,</i>	the navel.
<i>un chenil,</i>	a dog-kennel.	<i>un outil,</i>	a tool.
<i>du coustil,</i>	ticklen.	<i>le pouls,</i>	the pulse.
<i>un fils,</i>	a son.	<i>du persil,</i>	parsley.
<i>un fusil,</i>	a gun.	<i>saoûl,</i>	tipsy.
<i>gentil,</i>	pretty, gentle.	<i>sourcil,</i>	eyebrow.
<i>un gril,</i>	a gridiron.		

## M.

M, *m*, followed by *b* or *p*, has the sound of *n* in nasal vowels; as in *embrasser*, *empire*, *impie*.

*m* has likewise the sound of *n* in *faim*, hunger; and *parfum*, perfume.

## N.

N, *n*, is sounded as in English.

In *monsieur*, it has the sound of *s*; pronounce *mos-sieu*.

## P.

P, *p*, which is generally sounded as in English, is mute in *baptiste*, *cambric*; *corps*, body; *temps*, weather, time; *printemps*, spring; *baptistaire*, a register for christening; in the words *baptême*, christening; *exempt*, exempted; police officer; *compte*, an account; and throughout the verbs *baptiser*, *exempter*, and *compter*: *p* is mute likewise in the three persons sing. of the present indic. of *rompre*,

to break ; and in the numeral adj. *sept*, seven ; *septième*, *septièmement*.

## Q.

Q, q, sounds like *kou*, in :

<i>aquatique</i> ,	aquatic.	<i>quaker</i> ,	quaker.
<i>aquatile</i> ,	aquatile.	<i>quadrupède</i> ,	quadruped.
<i>aquarelle</i> ,	aquatinta.	<i>quadruple</i> ,	quadruple.
<i>équateur</i> ,	equator.	<i>quaterne</i> ,	quaternion.
<i>équation</i> ,	equation.	<i>quadragénaire</i> ,	a man of forty.
<i>in quarto</i> ,	quarto size.	<i>quadrature</i> ,	quadrature.
<i>loquacité</i> ,	loquacity.		

and in a few others.

Q sounds like *ku*, in :

<i>équitation</i> ,	horsemanship.
<i>équestre</i> ,	equestrian.
<i>questeur</i> ,	questor.
<i>questure</i> ,	questure.
<i>quintuple</i> ,	quintuple.

and in a few other terms little in use.

## R.

R, r, is sounded like the same letter in English in the words *remnant*, *air*, *rural*, *error*.—In the middle of a word, the *r* followed by a consonant, as in *por-ter*, *par-ler*, etc., should always be dwelt upon very strongly.

The final *r* is sounded before the vowels *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, as *char*, *désir*, *trésor*, *futur*.

The final *r* is generally mute in words ending in *er* : is sounded, however, in words ending in *erd*, *ers*, *ert* : and in

<i>alger</i> ,	alger.	<i>fer</i> ,	iron.
<i>amer</i> ,	bitter.	<i>fier</i> ,	proud.
<i>belveder</i> ,	belvider.	<i>hier</i> ,	yesterday.
<i>cancer</i> ,	cancer.	<i>magister</i> ,	schoolmaster.
<i>cher</i> ,	dear.	<i>mer</i> ,	sea.
<i>cuiller</i> ,	spoon.	<i>Niger</i> ,	Niger.
<i>enfer</i> ,	hell.	<i>Stathouder</i> ,	Stadtholder.
<i>ether</i> ,	ether.	<i>ver</i> ,	worm.

in other cases it is sounded as in English.

## S.

S, s, at the commencement of words, has the same sound as in English, as *soldat*, soldier; *semé*, sown. When placed between two vowels, it has the sound of z, as in *aise*, pleased; *rusé*, cunning; *rose*, rose. Except in a few compound words, as: *parasol*, parasol; *vraisemblable*, likely; *monosyllabe*, monosyllable.

The final s is sounded in *tous* used substantively, as: all have seen it, *tous l'ont vu*; and in the following words:

<i>un agnus,</i>	an agnus.	<i>iris,</i>	an iris.
<i>un aloès,</i>	an aloe.	<i>laps,</i>	lapse.
<i>un as,</i>	an ace.	<i>un lis,</i>	a lily.
<i>un atlas,</i>	an atlas.	<i>mœurs,</i>	manners.
<i>bis,</i>	again, encore.	<i>un ours,</i>	a bear.
<i>blocus,</i>	blocus.	<i>le pathos,</i>	pathos.
<i>chorus,</i>	chorus.	<i>un prospectus,</i>	a prospectus.
<i>gratis,</i>	gratis.	<i>un rébus,</i>	a rebus.
<i>hélas,</i>	alas.	<i>un tournevis.</i>	a turnscrew.
<i>hiatus,</i>	hiatus.	<i>une vis,</i>	a screw.
<i>jadis,</i>	formerly.	<i>un os,</i>	a bone.

## T.

T, t, has two sounds; the first as in the English word *tactic*; the second like c in *cedar*.

In the words ending in *tion*, t has the sound of c, when the termination *tion*, is not immediately preceded by an s or an x; as in *action*, *imitation*, *bénédiction*. Verbs are excepted.

T, has the sound of c, in words ending in *tial*, *tiel*, as: *martial*, *essentiel*, and in:

<i>aristocratie,</i>	aristocracy.	<i>inertie,</i>	sluggishness.
<i>démocratie,</i>	democracy.	<i>minutie,</i>	trifle.
<i>diplomatie,</i>	diplomacy.	<i>prophétie,</i>	prophecy.
<i>facétie,</i>	facetiousness.	<i>suprématie,</i>	supremacy.
<i>impéritie,</i>	ignorance.	<i>théocratie,</i>	theocracy.

*patient,*  
*patience,*

patient.  
patience.

| *séditeux,*

seditionous.

To which may be added a few others.

It has also the sound of *c*, in the verb *balbutier*, and in names of countries, nations, or persons, as :

*Béotie,*  
*Dalmatie,*  
*Béotien,*  
*Capétien,*

Bœetia.  
Dalmatia.  
Bœotian.  
Capetian.

| *Domitien,*  
*Egyptien,*  
*Le Titien,*

Domitian.  
Egyptian.  
Titian.

Neither *t* nor *s* are heard in *Jésus Christ*, which is pronounced *Jésu Cri*, although both are in *Christ*, when used without *Jésus*.

*T*, is always mute in the conjunction *et*, and never in *dot*, a dowry. In most cases not mentioned here, the *t* is pronounced as in English.

## V.

*V*, *v*, has the same sound in French as in English ; the *w* which is only found in foreign words, generally takes the sound of a *v*, as in : *Westphalie*, *Weser*, which are pronounced *Vesphalie*, *Véser*.

## X.

*X*, *x*, has the five following different sounds :

<i>ks</i> or <i>cs</i>	as in	<i>extrême,</i>	extreme.
<i>gz</i>	" "	<i>exemple,</i>	example.
<i>k</i> or <i>c</i>	" "	<i>excellent,</i>	excellent.
<i>ss</i>	" "	<i>Bruxelles,</i>	Brussels.
<i>z</i>	" "	<i>deuxième,</i>	second.

It may be observed, as a general rule, that a final consonant unless it be followed by a vowel, is not sounded in French, as : *abricot*, *plat*, which are pronounced *abrico*, *pla*. The principal exceptions to this rule, are :

1. Most proper names, and other words derived or borrowed of dead or foreign languages, as : *Anacharsis, Jupiter, Lesbos, Gil Blas, Angélu, blocu, patho*, etc.

2. The infinitives of all verbs of the second and third conjugations, as : *servir, partir, voir*, etc., and any other words ending in *ir, oir, or eur*, as : *désir, plaisir, raser, comptoir, douceur, grandeur*, etc.

A

# FRENCH GRAMMAR.

---

## CHAPTER I.

Grammarians, in order to facilitate the acquisition of language, have divided its elements into classes, called *parts of speech*; these are:

THE ARTICLE.

THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

THE ADJECTIVE.

THE PRONOUN.

THE VERB.

THE ADVERB.

THE PREPOSITION.

THE CONJUNCTION.

THE INTERJECTION.

*Which change their terminations  
in certain circumstances.*

*Which never change their ter-  
minations.*

---

## OF THE ARTICLE.

The *article* is a word prefixed to substantives to shew the extent of their signification.

There are, in French, three articles, which are rendered into English by *the*, *a*, or by *some*.

These are called *definite*, *indefinite*, and *partitive*.

The article *the* is called *definite* because it shows the particular person or thing mentioned.

The article *a* is called *indefinite* because it does not determine what particular person or thing is meant.

The article *some* is called *partitive* because it implies a *part* or *portion* of a whole.

## DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

*The* is rendered into French, by :

<i>le</i>	for the masculine singular.
<i>la</i>	for the feminine singular.
<i>les</i>	for the plural in both genders.

OBSERVE.—*L'* is used for *le, la*, before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

## EXAMPLES :

<i>Le roi</i>	<i>la reine</i>	<i>l'état</i>	<i>les princes or les princesses.</i>
The king	the queen	the state	the princes or the princesses.

The French for *of* or *from* is *DE*. *Of* or *from the* before a noun masc. sing. would, accordingly be *de le*, and *de les* for the plural. Instead of which, *du* is used before a substantive masc. singular, beginning with a consonant, and *des* before all nouns plural : This is called *contraction*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Du roi</i>	<i>de la reine</i>	<i>de l'état*</i>	<i>des princes or des princesses.</i>
---------------	--------------------	-------------------	---------------------------------------

The French for *to* or *at* is *à* with the grave accent 'over it. Here again the contraction takes place, and instead of *à le* or *à les* for *to* or *at the*, the French say *au* before a noun masc. sing. beginning with a consonant, and *aux* before all nouns plural.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Au roi</i>	<i>à la reine</i>	<i>à l'état</i>	<i>aux princes or aux princesses.</i>
---------------	-------------------	-----------------	---------------------------------------

---

\* Observe that no contraction ever takes place before substantives singular beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

TABLE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>plural.</i>
	masc.	fem.	before a vowel or h mute.	mas. and fem.
the	<i>le</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>l'</i>	<i>les</i>
of or from the	<i>du</i>	<i>de la</i>	<i>de l'</i>	<i>des</i>
to or at the	<i>au</i>	<i>à la</i>	<i>à l'</i>	<i>aux</i>

## EXERCISE.\*

The creator. (The) providence. The universe. The wonders of (the) nature. Of the Almighty. From the soul. Of (the) men. From the planets. Of the earth. To (the) heaven. To the moon. To the eclipses. To the storm. The rays of the sun. To the lustre of the stars. The glory of (the) heroes. From the water to the fire and to the air. From the north to the east. From the east to the south and from the south to the west. The four parts of the world. (The) Europe, (the) Asia, (the) Africa, and (the) America. The months of the year. The days of the week. The duties of the scholars. The immortality of the soul. The philosophy of the ancients. The illusions of youth. The infirmities of age. The paternal tenderness of the father and the mother: the filial piety of the children.

Creator,	<i>créateur, m.</i>	Stars,	<i>étoiles, f.</i>	Europe,	<i>Europe, f.</i>
Providence,	<i>providence, f.</i>	Glory,	<i>gloire, f.</i>	Asia,	<i>Asie, f.</i>
Universe,	<i>univers, m.</i>	Heroes,	<i>héros.</i>	Africa,	<i>Afrique, f.</i>
Wonders,	<i>merveilles, f.</i>	Water,	<i>eau, f.</i>	America,	<i>Amérique, f.</i>
Nature,	<i>nature, f.</i>	Fire,	<i>feu, m.</i>	Months,	<i>mois, m.</i>
Almighty,	<i>tout-puissant, m.</i>	And	<i>et</i>	Year,	<i>année, f.</i>
Soul,	<i>ame, f.</i>	Air,	<i>air, m.</i>	Days,	<i>jours, m.</i>
Men,	<i>hommes.</i>	North,	<i>nord or septentrion, m.</i>	Week,	<i>semaine, f.</i>
Planets,	<i>planètes, f.</i>	East,	<i>est or orient, m.</i>	Duties,	<i>devoirs, m.</i>
Earth,	<i>terre, f.</i>		<i>m.</i>	Scholars,	<i>écoliers, m.</i>
Heaven,	<i>ciel, m.</i>	South,	<i>sud or midi, m.</i>	Immortality,	<i>immortalité, f.</i>
Moon,	<i>lune, f.</i>		<i>m.</i>	Philosophy,	<i>philosophie, f.</i>
Eclipses,	<i>éclipses, f.</i>	West,	<i>ouest or occident, m.</i>	Ancients,	<i>anciens, m.</i>
Storm,	<i>orage, m.</i>		<i>m.</i>	Illusions,	<i>illusions, f.</i>
Rays,	<i>rayons, m.</i>	Four,	<i>quatre.</i>	Youth,	<i>jeunesse, f.</i>
Sun,	<i>soleil, m.</i>	Parts,	<i>parties, f.</i>	Infirmities,	<i>infirmités, f.</i>
Lustre,	<i>éclat, m.</i>	World,	<i>monde, m.</i>	Age,	<i>vieillesse, f.</i>

## OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

The *indefinite article* *a* or *an* is rendered into French by *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine.

It is thus declined :

\* Articles have been added to the English, though not wanted, where they must be used in French.



*Masculine.*

A king,	<i>un roi.</i>
Of or from a king,	<i>d'un roi.</i>
To a king,	<i>à un roi.</i>

*Feminine.*

A queen,	<i>une reine.</i>
Of or from a queen,	<i>d'une reine.</i>
To a queen,	<i>à une reine.</i>

## EXERCISE.

A globe. An empire. A republic. Of a kingdom. From a province. Of an island. To a country. To a colony. To an eternity. From a mountain to a valley. From a desert to a town. Of a road and a bridge. From a shoal or a coast. A river. Of a canal. To a lake. A pound. From a brook. To a seaport. A lighthouse. To a pier. Of a cloud. From a balloon. To a monument. From a friend to an enemy. A prayer. An offering. A supreme God. Of an eternal felicity.

Globe,	<i>globe, m.</i>	Road,	<i>route, f.</i>	Lighthouse,	<i>phare, m.</i>
Empire,	<i>empire, m.</i>	And,	<i>et.</i>	Pier,	<i>jetée, f.</i>
Republic,	<i>république</i>	Bridge,	<i>pont, m.</i>	Cloud,	<i>nuage, m.</i>
Kingdom,	<i>royaume, m.</i>	Shoal,	<i>écueil, m.</i>	Balloon,	<i>ballon, m.</i>
Province,	<i>province, f.</i>	Or,	<i>ou.</i>	Monument,	<i>monument, m.</i>
Island,	<i>île, f.</i>	Coast,	<i>côte, f.</i>	Friend,	<i>ami, m.</i>
Country,	<i>pays, m.</i>	River,	<i>rivière, f.</i>	Enemy,	<i>ennemi, m.</i>
Colony,	<i>colonie, f.</i>	Canal,	<i>canal, m.</i>	Prayer,	<i>prière, f.</i>
Eternity,	<i>éternité, f.</i>	Lake,	<i>lac, m.</i>	Offering,	<i>offrande, f.</i>
Mountain,	<i>montagne, f.</i>	Pound,	<i>étang, m.</i>	Supreme	<i>Dieu su-</i>
Valley,	<i>vallée, f.</i>	Brook,	<i>ruisseau, m.</i>	God,	<i>prême.</i>
Desert,	<i>désert, m.</i>	Seaport,	<i>port de mer,</i>	Eternal fe-	<i>félicité éter-</i>
Town,	<i>ville, f.</i>		<i>m.</i>	licity,	<i>nelle, f.</i>

## OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

The partitive article, *some* or *any*, is expressed in French by the same words used for the genitive of the definite article.

## EXAMPLES:

	<i>m. s.</i>	<i>f. s.</i>	before a vowel or à mute.	plur. for all.
<i>Some,</i>	<i>du</i>	<i>de la</i>	<i>de l'</i>	<i>des.</i>

OBSERVE.—The partitive article is sometimes understood in English, but in French it must always be expressed; thus:

Bread and water are sufficient for him, *Du pain et de l'eau lui suffisent.*

NOTA BENE:—*De* is used instead of *du, de, la, de l, des*, when an adjective comes between the partitive article and a substantive taken in a general sense.

*Of* or *from some* is also rendered by *de* alone: for example:—

Some good bread,  
From some good bread, } *DE bon pain.*

#### EXERCISE.

It will last for months, years. He has gold and silver. Are there fruits, vegetables, and flowers in your garden? Yes: it produces fine fruits, good vegetables, and beautiful flowers. I take tea, coffee, or chocolate; Always with cream and sugar. He is not among strangers; he has relations, friends, and good neighbours. Large towns. Broad streets. Modern buildings. Long nights. Short days. Entertain honourable sentiments. Inculcate religious principles. Prefer useful studies to vain pleasures. Let us read good books. It is not enough to give good advice, we must also give good examples.

It will last	<i>cela durera.</i>	Tea,	<i>thé, m.</i>	Entertain	<i>nourrissez</i>
for		Coffee,	<i>café, m.</i>	honorable	<i>sentiments</i>
Months,	<i>mois, m.</i>	Chocolate,	<i>chocolat, m.</i>	sentiments,	<i>honorables.</i>
Years,	<i>années, f.</i>	Always with,	<i>toujours avec</i>	Inculcate	<i>inculquez</i>
He has,	<i>il a.</i>	Cream,	<i>crème, f.</i>	religious	<i>principes</i>
Gold,	<i>or, m.</i>	Sugar,	<i>sucré, m.</i>	principles.	<i>religieux.</i>
Silver,	<i>argent, m.</i>	He is not	<i>il n'est pas</i>	Prefer useful	<i>préfèrent</i>
Are there,	<i>y a-t-il.</i>	among,	<i>parmi.</i>	studies.	<i>études utiles.</i>
Fruits,	<i>fruits, m.</i>	Strangers,	<i>étrangers, m.</i>	Vain plea-	<i>vains plai-</i>
Vegetables,	<i>légumes, m.</i>	He has	<i>il a.</i>	sures,	<i>surs.</i>
Flowers,	<i>fleurs, f.</i>	Relations,	<i>parents, m.</i>	Let us read	<i>lisons</i>
In your,	<i>dans votre.</i>	Friends,	<i>amis, m.</i>	books,	<i>livres, m.</i>
Garden,	<i>jardin, m.</i>	Neighbours,	<i>voisins, m.</i>	It is not	<i>il ne suffit</i>
Yes,	<i>oui.</i>	Large towns,	<i>grandes villes</i>	enough to	<i>pas de don-</i>
It produces	<i>il produit.</i>	Broad streets	<i>rues larges.</i>	give	<i>ner</i>
Fine,	<i>beaux.</i>	Modern	<i>bâtiments</i>	good advice,	<i>conseils, m.</i>
Good,	<i>bons.</i>	buildings,	<i>modernes.</i>	We must	
Beautiful,	<i>belles, f. p.</i>	Long nights,	<i>longues nuits</i>	also	
I take,	<i>je prends.</i>	Short days,	<i>jours courts.</i>	Examples,	<i>Exemples, m.</i>

## FREE EXERCISE ON THE THREE ARTICLES.

OBSERVE.—*An article must be used before every substantive common, in the following exercise.*

## EXERCISE.

I have good friends. Peace of mind is the height of happiness. Virtue is preferable to riches, friendship to money, and usefulness to pleasure. Hypocrisy is an homage which vice pays to virtue. The wisdom of Socrates and the valour of Achilles are celebrated in the writings of poets and historians. An ungrateful man is a monster in the eyes of a feeling man. A fine flower is an ornament in a garden. She has modesty and prudence. I prefer good water to bad beer. Merit and favour are the two causes of envy. Truth is the basis of human happiness. Ignorance is the mother of admiration, error, and superstition. Health, honours, and fortune cannot always satisfy the heart of man. Religion, morality, government, fine arts, every thing is overturned in that country.

I have,	<i>j'ai.</i>	Feeling man,	<i>homme sensible.</i>
Good friends,	<i>bons amis, m.</i>	Fine flower,	<i>belle fleur, f.</i>
Peace, mind,	<i>paix, f. esprit, m.</i>	Ornament,	<i>ornement, m.</i>
Is,	<i>est.</i>	In,	<i>dans.</i>
Height, happiness,	<i>comble, m. félicité, f.</i>	Garden,	<i>jardin, m.</i>
Virtue,	<i>vertu, f.</i>	She has,	<i>elle a.</i>
Preferable,	<i>préférable.</i>	Modesty,	<i>modestie, f.</i>
Riches,	<i>richesses, f.</i>	Prudence,	<i>prudence, f.</i>
Friendship,	<i>amitié, f.</i>	I prefer,	<i>je préfère.</i>
Money,	<i>argent, m.</i>	Good water,	<i>bonne eau, f.</i>
And,	<i>et.</i>	Bad beer,	<i>mauvaise bière, f.</i>
Usefulness,	<i>utilité, f.</i>	Merit, favour,	<i>mérite, m. faveur, f.</i>
Pleasure,	<i>plaisir, m.</i>	Are, two causes,	<i>sont, deux causes, f.</i>
Hypocrisy,	<i>hypocrisie, f.</i>	Envy,	<i>envie, f.</i>
Homage,	<i>hommage, m.</i>	Truth, basis,	<i>vérité, f. base, f.</i>
Which,	<i>que.</i>	Human happiness,	<i>bonheur humain, m.</i>
Vice,	<i>vice, m.</i>	Ignorance,	<i>ignorance, f.</i>
Pays,	<i>rend.</i>	Admiration, error,	<i>admiration, f. erreur</i>
Wisdom,	<i>sagesse, f.</i>	superstition,	<i>f. superstition, f.</i>
Socrates,	<i>Socrates.</i>	Health, honours,	<i>santé, f. honneurs,</i>
Valour,	<i>valeur, f.</i>	fortune,	<i>m. fortune, f.</i>
Achilles,	<i>Achilles.</i>	Cannot always sa-	<i>ne peuvent toujours</i>
Are celebrated in	<i>sont célébrés dans.</i>	tisfy,	<i>satisfaire.</i>
Writings,	<i>ouvrages, m.</i>	Heart, man,	<i>cœur, m. homme.</i>
Poets,	<i>poètes, m.</i>	Religion, morality,	<i>religion, f. morale, f.</i>
Historians,	<i>historiens, m.</i>	Government, fine	<i>gouvernement, m.</i>
Ungrateful man,	<i>ingrat, m.</i>	arts,	<i>beaux arts, m.</i>
Monster,	<i>monstre, m.</i>	Every thing,	<i>tout.</i>
In the,	<i>aux,</i>	Overtured,	<i>renversé.</i>
Eyes,	<i>yeux, m.</i>	In that country,	<i>dans ce pays.</i>

## CHAPTER II.

### OF SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

A substantive or noun is the name of a person or a thing.

---

#### OF THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

There are also two genders in French, all substantives therefore are masculine or feminine.

The gender of substantives of inanimate objects which in English are neuter, is distinguished in French by the termination of their names.\*

---

#### OF SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES THAT ARE ALIKE IN FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

Most substantives and adjectives that have the following terminations are alike in both languages.

able, ible,	as	fable, bible.
ace, ice,	"	place, justice.
acle,	"	oracle.
ade,	"	promenade.
ance, ence,	"	élégance.
al,	"	original.
ant, ent,	"	galant, argument.
ge,	"	collège.
ile,	"	docile.
ine,	"	machine.
ion,	"	religion.
ude,		habitude.

---

\* Concise TABLES OF TERMINATIONS, and rules on this important chapter, are contained in a small treatise which will be found by itself at the end of this book. The preliminary remarks, with the tables which follow them, should be committed to memory at the same time that the student proceeds with the parts of speech.

English nouns with the following terminations generally become French by changing their termination thus :

ary,	into	aire,	as	solitary,	<i>solitaire.</i>
cy,	"	ce,	"	constancy,	<i>constance.</i>
ic,	"	ique,	"	music,	<i>musique.</i>
ist,	"	iste,	"	artist,	<i>artiste.</i>
ine,	"	in,	"	clandestine,	<i>clandestin.</i>
ive,	"	if,	"	exclusive,	<i>exclusif.</i>
ory,	"	oire,	"	history,	<i>histoire.</i>
or, our,	"	eur,	"	horror, valour,	<i>horreur, valeur.</i>
ous,	"	eux,	"	courageous,	<i>courageux.</i>
ty,	"	té,	"	charity,	<i>charité.</i>
y,	"	ie,	"	envy,	<i>envie.</i>

OBSERVE.—Occasional accents must of course be added in French.

#### EXERCISE ON THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The gratitude. Of the echo. To a boot. A necklace. Of a chameleon. To a walking-stick. Some earth. A class. An obstacle. To a cupola. Some pack-thread. Sand. A mixture. Some essence. A light. A light-house. To a dance. An oratory. To the disciple. Of a case. To a comparison. The kingdom of heaven. Some liquor. Some sugar. Of an apple. A conclave. To a hill. Some pitch. A cenotaph. Some smoke. A luminary. A member. To the catechism. The mob. A punishment. The meadow. The burn. An opera. The disorder. Some rashness. A catalogue. Some envy. A paradox. Of the drama. A star. Of a diadem. A poultice. A habit. Some Salad. A meteor. The syllabus. A tree.

As the rules on genders which ought to be applied in this exercise may not yet be familiar to the learner, the gender of the several nouns given hereunder has been marked.

gratitude,	<i>reconnaissance, f.</i>	light,	<i>lumière, f.</i>
echo,	<i>écho, m.</i>	light-house,	<i>phare, m.</i>
boot,	<i>botte, f.</i>	case,	<i>étui, m.</i>
necklace,	<i>collier, m.</i>	kingdom,	<i>royaume, m.</i>
chameleon,	<i>caméléon, m.</i>	liquor,	<i>liqueur, f.</i>
walking-stick,	<i>canne, f.</i>	sugar,	<i>sucré, m.</i>
earth,	<i>terre, f.</i>	apple,	<i>pomme, f.</i>
class,	<i>classe, f.</i>	conclave,	<i>conclave, m.</i>
cupola,	<i>dôme, m.</i>	hill,	<i>côteau, m.</i>
pack-thread,	<i>ficelle, f.</i>	pitch,	<i>poix, f.</i>
sand,	<i>sable, m.</i>	cenotaph,	<i>cénotaphe, m.</i>
mixture,	<i>mélange, m.</i>	smoke,	<i>fumée, f.</i>

member,	<i>membre, m.</i>
catechism,	<i>catéchisme, m.</i>
mob,	<i>populace, f.</i>
punishment,	<i>punition, f.</i>
meadow,	<i>pré, m.</i>
burn,	<i>brûture, f.</i>
opera,	<i>opéra, m.</i>
disorder,	<i>désordre, m.</i>
rashness,	<i>témérité, f.</i>
paradox,	<i>paradoxe, m.</i>

drama,	<i>drame, m.</i>
star,	<i>astre, m.</i>
diadem,	<i>diadème, m.</i>
poultice,	<i>cataplasme, m.</i>
habit,	<i>habitude, f.</i>
salad,	<i>salade, f.</i>
meteor,	<i>météore, m.</i>
syllabus,	<i>programme, m.</i>
tree,	<i>arbre, m.</i>

#### OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

Substantives admit of two numbers. The singular and the plural.

The plural of substantives (and adjectives) is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular.\*

#### EXCEPTIONS.

1. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, do not vary in the plural. Examples :

a hero,	<i>un héros.</i>	heroes,	<i>des héros.</i>
a cross,	<i>une croix.</i>	crosses,	<i>des croix.</i>
the nose,	<i>le nez.</i>	noses,	<i>des nez.</i>

2. Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, take *x*† instead of *s* for their plural. Of those in *ou*, some end in *s*, some in *x* :

a pebble,	<i>un caillou.</i>	make in the plural {	pebbles,	<i>des cailloux.</i>
a cabbage,	<i>un chou.</i>		cabbages,	<i>des choux.</i>
a knee,	<i>un genou.</i>		knees,	<i>des genoux.</i>
an owl,	<i>un hibou.</i>		owls,	<i>des hiboux.</i>
a louse,	<i>un pou.</i>		lice,	<i>des poux.</i>

\* This rule is applicable to nouns and adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent*, no reason being assigned why their plural should, as is still done by some, be formed by changing the final *t* into *s*; most modern authors apply the general rule and write: *le méchant, les méchants; un présent, des présents*, etc.; *gent*, and *tout* are the only exceptions.

† *Bleu* is the only one which takes an *s* for its plural.

Those which make their plural in *s* are :

Bamboo, *bambou* ; nail, *clou* ; cuckoo, *coucou* ; neck, *cou* ; the nut, or box of a screw, *écrou* ; \* pick-pocket, *filou* ; madman, *fou* ; toy, *joujou* ; a halter, *licou* ; tom-cat, *matou* ; old French half-penny, *sou* ; little dog (a child's term), *toutou* ; jewel, *bijou* ; hole, *trou* ; and bolt, *verrou*.

3. Nouns ending in *al* or *ail* in the singular, become plural by changing *al* or *ail* into *aux*.

The following are excepted, and take *s* for their plural.

ball,	<i>bal.</i>	cowl,	<i>camail.</i>
hardened skin,	<i>cal.</i>	particulars,	<i>détail.</i>
carnival,	<i>carnaval.</i>	fan,	<i>éventail.</i>
jackal,	<i>chacal.</i>	rudder,	<i>gouvernail.</i>
naval,	<i>naval.</i>	mall, hammer,	<i>mail.</i>
pale (in heraldry)	<i>pal.</i>	breast-plate,	<i>poitrail.</i>
feast,	<i>régal.</i>	front gate of a	} <i>portail.</i>
apparatus,	<i>attirail.</i>	church,	
sheep-fold,	<i>bercail.</i>	seraglio,	<i>sérail.</i>

The following irregular nouns cannot be brought under any rule.

	Singular.	Plural.
garlic,	<i>ail,</i>	<i>aulx</i> (heads of garlic).
grandfather,	<i>aïeul,</i>	<i>aïeux.</i>
cattle,	<i>bestial</i> or <i>bétail,</i>	<i>bestiaux.</i>
heaven,	<i>ciel,</i>	<i>cieux.</i>
eye,	<i>œil,</i>	<i>yeux.</i>

#### REMARKS.

The substantive *cal* is seldom used : we say *durillon*. *Naval* has no masculine plural ; we say, for sea-fights, *des combats sur mer*, or *des batailles navales*. *Régal* is little used in the plural.

*Bercail* has no plural and is seldom used in the sense of sheep-fold ; we say *bergerie*. *Camail* is a sort of covering for the head, or short cloak, worn by French clergymen in winter. *Aulx* is seldom used, we say *des gousses d'ail*.

*Ciel* and *œil*, take *s* for their plural when used in a figurative sense ; as *des ciels de lit*, bed testers ; *des œils de*

\* *Écrou* means also the commitment of a prisoner entered in the jailer's book.

*bœuf*, oval windows; and names of metals, aromatics, virtues and vices, have no plural.

A few nouns have no singular; as ancestors, *ancêtres*; scissars, *ciseaux*; clothes, *hardes*; morals, *mœurs*; snuff, *mouchettes*; &c., others composed of Latin or foreign words have no plural in use; thus we write *des post-scriptum*, as *un post scriptum*; *des forté-piano*, as *un-forté-piano*, &c., but those words which have been admitted in the language as French substantives, take the mark of the plural. Ex. *un duo, des duos*; *un opéra, des opéras*.

#### EXERCISE ON THE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

The sons of the admiral. The general of the allies. A diamond cross.\* Some gold crosses. The palaces of the kings, and the castles of the nobility. The laws of the country. The Gods of the Pagans. A sea fight. Some sea fights. A blue eye. Some blue eyes. The bed testers. The kingdom of heaven. The immensity of the heavens. The eyes of an ox. Some oval windows. Some garlic. Heads of garlic. The helms of the ships. The court balls.† The knees of that horse. The neighing of the horses. Give him two pence to buy nails. Throw away those pebbles, and pick up your toys. Here are halters for all the horses. The waters passed through these holes. The bolts are not strong enough. These pictures represent sea-fights. Nelson was a hero.

son,	<i>fil.</i>	pagan,	<i>payen, m.</i>
admiral,	<i>amiral.</i>	sea fight,	<i>combat naval, m.</i>
general,	<i>général.</i>	blue eye,	<i>œil bleu, m.</i>
ally,	<i>allié, m.</i>	bed tester,	<i>ciel de lit, m.</i>
cross,	<i>croix, f.</i>	kingdom,	<i>royaume, m.</i>
diamond,	<i>diamant, m.</i>	of heaven,	<i>du ciel, m.</i>
of gold,	<i>d'or, m.</i>	immensity,	<i>immensité, f.</i>
palace,	<i>palais, m.</i>	ox,	<i>bœuf.</i>
castle,	<i>château, m.</i>	oval window,	<i>œil de bœuf, m.</i>
nobility,	<i>noblesse, f.</i>	garlic,	<i>ail, m.</i>
law,	<i>loi, f.</i>	helm,	<i>gouvernail, m.</i>
country,	<i>pays, m.</i>	ship,	<i>vaisseau, m.</i>

\* Turn, a cross of diamonds.

† The balls of the court.



ball,	<i>bal</i> , m.	pick up,	<i>ramasser</i> .
court,	<i>cour</i> , f.	your,	<i>vos</i> , p.
knee,	<i>genou</i> , m.	here are,	<i>voici</i> ,
that,	<i>ce</i> .	for all,	<i>pour tous</i> .
horse,	<i>cheval</i> , m.	water,	<i>eau</i> , f.
neighing,	<i>hennissement</i> , m. ( <i>h</i> asp.)	passed through,	<i>passèrent à travers</i> .
give him,	<i>donnez-lui</i> .	these,	<i>ces</i> .
two,	<i>deux</i> .	are not strong	<i>ne sont pas assez</i>
to buy,	<i>pour acheter</i> .	enough.	<i>forts</i> .
throw away,	<i>jeter</i> ,	picture,	<i>tableau</i> , m.
these,	<i>ces</i> .	represent,	<i>représentent</i>
		was,	<i>était</i> .

## CHAPTER III.

### OF ADJECTIVES.

AN adjective is a word which expresses the quality ascribed to a person or thing, or otherwise modifies a noun.

As modern grammarians justly consider such words as : one, *un* ; this, *ce* ; my, *mon* ; none, *aucun* ; each, *chaque* ; whatever, *quelque* ; such, *tel* ; as adjectives, it follows that they divide adjectives into five classes, viz : the *qualificative*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *indefinite*, and *numeral*.

#### OF QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

The qualificative adjectives are those which express the quality ascribed to persons or things ; *savant*, *poli*, *grand*, *petit*, etc., are, therefore, qualificative adjectives.

As qualificative adjectives in French agree in gender and number with the substantive which they qualify, particular attention must be paid to the following rules.

## OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

1. An adjective is made feminine by adding an *e* mute to its masculine termination ;

## EXAMPLES.

A learned man,	<i>un homme</i> SAVANT.
A learned woman,	<i>une femme</i> SAVANTE.

2. Qualificative adjectives ending in an *e* mute, are alike in both genders.

## EXAMPLES.

A young man,	<i>un</i> JEUNE <i>homme</i> .
A young woman,	<i>une</i> JEUNE <i>femme</i> .

(*maître* and *traître*, probably because generally used as substantives, make *maîtresse* and *traîtresse*.)

3. Adjectives in *f* change this letter into *ve*.

## EXAMPLES.

A new hat,	<i>un chapeau</i> NEUF.
A new gown,	<i>une robe</i> NEUVE.

4. Adjectives in *el*, *eil*, *ul*, *ien*, and *on*, form their feminine by doubling the last consonant and adding an *e* mute to it.

## EXAMPLES.

M.	F.		
EL	ELLE	A cruel father, <i>un père</i> CRUEL.	A cruel mother, <i>une mère</i> CRUELLE.
EIL	EILLE	A florid complexion, <i>un teint</i> VERMEIL.	A like undertaking, <i>une entreprise</i> PAREILLE.
UL	ULLE	A void deed, <i>un contrat</i> NUL.	A null condition, <i>une condition</i> NULLE.
IEU	IEUUE	A Christian king, <i>un roi</i> CHRÉTIEN.	A Christian life, <i>une vie</i> CHRÉTIENNE.
ON	ONNE	A good master, <i>un bon maître</i> .	A good mistress, <i>une bonne maîtresse</i> .

5. Adjectives ending in *as* and *os* become feminine by adding *se* to the masculine.

## EXAMPLES.

M.	F.		
AS	ASSE	A low seat, <i>un siège BAS,</i>	A low house, <i>une maison BASSE.</i>
OS	OSSE	A severe cold, <i>un GROS rhume.</i>	A violent fever, <i>une GROSSE fièvre.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

Bare, *ras*; close, *clos*; take an *e* mute, and make in the feminine, *rase*, *close*.

6. Adjectives ending in *et* and *ot*, become feminine by adding *te*, to the masculine.

## EXAMPLES.

M.	F.		
ET	ETTE	A clean glass, <i>une verre NET.</i>	A clean house, <i>une maison NETTE.</i>
OT	OTTE	A silly speech, <i>un sot discours.</i>	A silly answer, <i>une sottte réponse.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

Complete, *complet*; discreet, *discret*; uneasy, *inquiet*; secret, *secret*; ready, *prêt*; follow the general rule and make in the feminine *complète*, *discrète*, *inquiète*, *secrète*;—devout, *dévot*; hypocrite, *çagot*; and idiot, *idiot*; follow likewise the general rule, and take an *e* mute in the feminine.\*

7. Words ending in *eur* become feminine by changing *x* into *se*.

## EXAMPLES.

M.	F.		
EUX	EUSE.	A generous friend, <i>un ami GÉNÉREUX,</i>	A generous action, <i>une action GÉNÉREUSE.</i>

8. Of words ending in *eur* the greatest number become feminine by changing *eur* into *euse*.†

\* A few others are given by some grammarians; but as they may be spelt either way, no notice has been taken of them here.

† The words *antérieur*, *extérieur*, *inférieur*, *intérieur*, *majeur*, *mineur*, *meilleur*, *postérieur*, *supérieur*, *ultérieur*, which give an idea of opposition or comparison, follow the general rule, and make in the feminine, *antérieure*, *extérieure*, *inférieure*, *intérieure*, *majeure*, *mineure*, *meilleure*, *postérieure*, *supérieure*, *ultérieure*.

## EXAMPLES.

M.	F.		
<b>EUR</b>	<b>EUSE</b>	A deceitful man, <i>un homme TROMPEUR.</i>	A deceitful promise, <i>une promesse TROMPEUSE.</i>

Those in *teur* (except a few derived from verbs) become feminine by changing *eur* into *rice*.

## EXAMPLES.

M.	F.		
<b>EUR</b>	<b>RICE.</b>	A protecting look, <i>un regard PROTECTEUR.</i>	A protecting law, <i>une loi PROTECTRICE.</i>

There are a few words in *eur* which make their feminine in *eresse*; these are:—

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>Bailleur,</i>	<i>bailleresse,</i>	one who supplies capital.
<i>Chasseur,</i>	<i>chasseresse,</i>	a hunter, used in high style for <i>chasseuse.</i>
<i>Demandeur,</i>	<i>demanderesse,</i>	a plaintiff.
<i>Défendeur,</i>	<i>défenderesse,</i>	a defendant.
<i>Enchanteur,</i>	<i>enchanteresse,</i>	enchanted, charmer.
<i>Pêcheur,</i>	<i>pêcheresse,</i>	a sinner.
<i>Vengeur,</i>	<i>vengeresse,</i>	an avenger, revenging.

NOTA BENE.—A list of all words in *eur* with their feminine, will be found at the end of the book, in the treatise on the genders of nouns.

Irregular adjectives which cannot be brought under any rule.

	Masc.	Fem.
White,	<i>blanc,</i>	<i>blanche.</i>
Thick,	<i>épais,</i>	<i>épaisse.</i>
Sincere,	<i>franc,</i>	<i>franche.</i>
Fresh,	<i>frais,</i>	<i>fraiche.</i>
Dry,	<i>sec,</i>	<i>sèche.</i>
Decaying,	<i>caduc,</i>	<i>caduque.</i>
Public,	<i>public,</i>	<i>publique.</i>
Greek,	<i>Grec,</i>	<i>Grecque.</i>
Turkish,	<i>Turc,</i>	<i>Turque.</i>
Handsome,	<i>beau,</i>	<i>belle.</i>
Foolish,	<i>fou,</i>	<i>folle.</i>
Soft,	<i>moU,</i>	<i>molle.</i>

	Masc.	Fem.
New,	<i>nouveaux,</i>	<i>nouvelle.</i>
Old,	<i>vieux,</i>	<i>vieille.</i>
Sweet,	<i>doux,</i>	<i>douce.</i>
False,	<i>faux,</i>	<i>fausse.</i>
Favourite,	<i>favori,</i>	<i>favorite.</i>
Pretty,	<i>gentil,</i>	<i>gentille.</i>
Jealous,	<i>jalous,</i>	<i>jalousie.</i>
Long,	<i>long,</i>	<i>longue.</i>
Benign,	<i>bénin,</i>	<i>bénigne.</i>
Still, snug,	<i>coi,</i>	<i>coite.</i>
Mischievous,	<i>malin,</i>	<i>maligne.</i>
Unwrought,	<i>mat,</i>	<i>matte.</i>
Reddish,	<i>roux,</i>	<i>rousse.</i>
Third,	<i>tiers,</i>	<i>tierce.</i>

Nut-brown, *châtain*; active, nimble, *dispos*; Hebrew, *Hébreu*; resolved, *résous*; partizan, *partisan*; witness, *témoin*; vellum, *vélin* have no feminine; *artisan, poète, peintre, auteur, écrivain*, and generally, all those which denote an habitual profession, whether used as substantives or adjectives, are masculine, even in referring to a female.

OBSERVE.—*Beau, nouveau, fou, mou, vieux*, make in the masculine, *bel, nouvel, fol, mol, vieil*, when placed before nouns beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute.

#### EXERCISE ON THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.\*

A natural<sup>2</sup> sentiment.<sup>1</sup> A mutual<sup>2</sup> inclination.<sup>1</sup> A long poem.  
A long lesson. An old tradition. A bitter<sup>2</sup> draught.<sup>1</sup> A whole-  
some<sup>2</sup> diet.<sup>1</sup> A sweet<sup>2</sup> almond.<sup>1</sup> A ripe<sup>2</sup> pear.<sup>1</sup> A fine prospect.  
An alarming<sup>2</sup> symptom.<sup>1</sup> A secret<sup>2</sup> enterprise.<sup>1</sup> A steep<sup>2</sup> hill.<sup>1</sup>  
A useful<sup>2</sup> work.<sup>1</sup> A fresh<sup>2</sup> flower.<sup>1</sup> A bad excuse. A thick<sup>2</sup> wall.<sup>1</sup>  
A bold<sup>2</sup> resolution.<sup>1</sup> A dark<sup>2</sup> passage.<sup>1</sup> A narrow<sup>2</sup> street.<sup>1</sup> A  
favourite<sup>2</sup> walk.<sup>1</sup> A new discovery. A modest<sup>2</sup> answer.<sup>1</sup> The  
superior<sup>2</sup> power<sup>1</sup> of that destructive<sup>2</sup> nation.<sup>1</sup> The constant<sup>2</sup> applica-  
tion<sup>1</sup> of that attentive<sup>2</sup> scholar.<sup>1</sup> The candid<sup>2</sup> answer<sup>1</sup> of that country-  
girl. The liberal<sup>2</sup> contribution<sup>1</sup> of the new ambassador. The per-  
suasive<sup>2</sup> eloquence<sup>1</sup> of the new minister. A personal<sup>2</sup> acquaintance<sup>1</sup>  
with the father. The filial<sup>2</sup> piety<sup>1</sup> of the son. The protecting<sup>2</sup> hand<sup>1</sup>  
of providence. The inferior<sup>2</sup> quality<sup>1</sup> of the materials. That dumb-  
girl is red-haired, but tall and well made. His sister is pretty and  
discreet. She has an enchanting<sup>2</sup> voice.<sup>1</sup> It is a destructive<sup>2</sup> scourge.<sup>1</sup>  
Appearances are often deceitful. A friendly<sup>2</sup> reception.<sup>1</sup> A bewitch-  
ing<sup>2</sup> smile.<sup>1</sup> A low<sup>2</sup> chair.<sup>1</sup> A dry<sup>2</sup> answer.<sup>1</sup> A Pagan<sup>2</sup> goddess.<sup>1</sup>

---

\* As French adjectives do not always come before their substantives as in English, until rules have been given on that point, their place will be marked by numbers, in every sentence where the order must, in French, be inverted.

Sentiment,	<i>sentiment, m.</i>	Attentive,	<i>attentif.</i>
Natural,	<i>naturel.</i>	Answer,	<i>réponse, f.</i>
Inclination,	<i>inclination, f.</i>	Candid,	<i>franc.</i>
Mutual,	<i>mutuel.</i>	Country-man,	<i>paysan.</i>
Long,	<i>long.</i>	Contribution,	<i>contribution, f.</i>
Poem,	<i>poème, m.</i>	Liberal,	<i>libéral.</i>
Lesson,	<i>leçon, f.</i>	New,	<i>nouveau.</i>
Old,	<i>vieux.</i>	Ambassador,	<i>ambassadeur.</i>
Tradition,	<i>tradition, f.</i>	Eloquence,	<i>éloquence, f.</i>
Draught,	<i>médecine, f.</i>	Persuasive,	<i>persuasif.</i>
Bitter,	<i>amer.</i>	Minister,	<i>ministre.</i>
Diet,	<i>nourriture, f.</i>	Acquaintance,	<i>connaissance, f.</i>
Wholesome,	<i>sain.</i>	Personal,	<i>personnel.</i>
Almond,	<i>amande, f.</i>	With,	<i>avec.</i>
Sweet,	<i>doux.</i>	Piety,	<i>piété, f.</i>
Pear,	<i>poire, f.</i>	Filial,	<i>filial, f.</i>
Ripe,	<i>mûr.</i>	Son,	<i>fil.</i>
Fine,	<i>beau.</i>	Hand,	<i>main, f.</i>
Prospect,	<i>vue, f.</i>	Protecting,	<i>protecteur.</i>
Symptom,	<i>symptôme, m.</i>	Of Providence,	<i>de la providence.</i>
Alarming,	<i>alarmant.</i>	Quality,	<i>qualité, f.</i>
Enterprise,	<i>entreprise, f.</i>	Inferior,	<i>inférieur.</i>
Secret,	<i>secret.</i>	Materials,	<i>matériaux, m.</i>
Hill,	<i>colline, f.</i>	Dumb,	<i>muet.</i>
Steep,	<i>escarpé.</i>	Is,	<i>est.</i>
Work,	<i>ouvrage, m.</i>	Red-haired,	<i>roux.</i>
Useful,	<i>utile.</i>	But,	<i>mais.</i>
Flower,	<i>fleur, f.</i>	Tall,	<i>grand.</i>
Fresh,	<i>frais.</i>	And,	<i>et.</i>
Bad,	<i>mauvais.</i>	Well made,	<i>bien fait.</i>
Excuse,	<i>excuse, f.</i>	His sister,	<i>sa sœur.</i>
Wall,	<i>mur, m.</i>	Pretty,	<i>joli.</i>
Thick,	<i>épais.</i>	Discreet,	<i>discret.</i>
Resolution,	<i>résolution, f.</i>	She has,	<i>elle a.</i>
Bold,	<i>hardi.</i>	Voice,	<i>voix, f.</i>
Passage,	<i>passage, m.</i>	Enchanting,	<i>enchanteur.</i>
Dark,	<i>obscur.</i>	It is,	<i>c'est.</i>
Street,	<i>rue, f.</i>	Scourge,	<i>fléau, f.</i>
Narrow,	<i>étroit.</i>	Destructive,	<i>destructeur.</i>
Walk,	<i>promenade, f.</i>	Appearances,	<i>les apparences, f.</i>
Favourite,	<i>favori.</i>	Are often,	<i>sont souvent.</i>
New,	<i>nouveau.</i>	Deceitful,	<i>trompeur.</i>
Discovery,	<i>découverte, f.</i>	Reception,	<i>réception, f.</i>
Answer,	<i>réponse, a.</i>	Friendly,	<i>amical.</i>
Modest,	<i>modeste.</i>	Smile,	<i>sourire, m.</i>
Power,	<i>puissance, f.</i>	Bewitching,	<i>enchanteur.</i>
Superior,	<i>supérieur.</i>	Chair,	<i>chaise, f.</i>
That,	<i>cette.</i>	Low,	<i>bas.</i>
Nation,	<i>nation, f.</i>	Answer,	<i>réponse, f.</i>
Destructive,	<i>destructeur.</i>	Dry,	<i>sec.</i>
Application,	<i>application, f.</i>	Goddess,	<i>divinité, f.</i>
Constant,	<i>constant.</i>	Pagan,	<i>payen.</i>
Scholar,	<i>écolier, m.</i>		

## OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

The plural of adjectives in French, is generally formed like that of the substantives, that is, by adding an *s* to the singular.\*

## EXAMPLES :

<i>Polite men,</i>	<i>des hommes POLIS.</i>
<i>Polite women,</i>	<i>des femmes POLIES.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS :

Adjectives ending in *s* or *x* do not change their termination in the plural masculine.

## EXAMPLES :

a fat child,	un GROS enfant.	fat children,	de GROS enfants.
an hideous object,	un objet HIDEUX.	hideous objects,	des objets HIDEUX.

Adjectives ending in *au* take an *x* in the plural masculine.

## EXAMPLES :

a new opera,	un opéra NOUVEAU.	new operas,	des opéras NOUVEAUX
a fine sentiment,	un BEAU sentiment.	fine sentiments,	de BEAUX sentiments.

OBSERVE.—The greatest number of adjectives ending in *al* in the masculine singular, become plural by changing *al* into *aux*, as : *cardinal*, *cardinaux* ; *libéral*, *libéraux* ; some follow the general rule and take an *s* ; these are :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Examples.</i>
Amical,	<i>amicaux,</i>	<i>des avis amicaux.</i>
Bancal,	<i>bancals,</i>	<i>des enfants bancals.</i>
Colossal,	<i>colossaux,</i>	<i>des monuments colossaux.</i>
Fatal,	<i>fatals,</i>	<i>des instants fatals.</i>
Filial,	<i>filiaux,</i>	<i>des sentiments filiaux.</i>
Final,	<i>finaux,</i>	<i>des sons finaux.</i>
Frugal,	<i>frugaux,</i>	<i>des repas frugaux.</i>
Glacial,	<i>glaciaux,</i>	<i>des vents glaciaux.</i>
Initial,	<i>initiaux,</i>	<i>des sons initiaux.</i>
Matinal,	<i>matinaux,</i>	<i>des hommes matinaux.</i>
Nasal,	<i>nasaux,</i>	<i>des sons nasaux.</i>
Pascal,	<i>pascaux,</i>	<i>des cierges pascaux.</i>
Pénal,	<i>pénaux,</i>	<i>des codes pénaux.</i>
Théâtral,	<i>théâtraux,</i>	<i>des ouvrages théâtraux.</i>

\* The adjective *tous* drops the *t* in the plural masculine, and makes *tous*.

**OBSERVE.**—The feminine plural of adjectives is formed from the feminine singular, by adding *s* to it, according to the general rule, as :

Masc. sing.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Plur.
<i>Gros,</i>	<i>grosse,</i>	<i>grosses.</i>
<i>Heureux,</i>	<i>heureuse,</i>	<i>heureuses.</i>
<i>Beau,</i>	<i>belle,</i>	<i>belles.</i>
<i>Moral,</i>	<i>morale,</i>	<i>morales.</i>
<i>Docile,</i>	<i>docile,</i>	<i>dociles.</i>

**EXERCISE ON THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE AND PLURAL  
OF ADJECTIVES.**

A colossal<sup>2</sup> monument,<sup>1</sup> a colossal<sup>2</sup> fortune;<sup>1</sup> some colossal monuments; some colossal fortunes. The brother is happy; the sister is graceful; the brothers are happy; the sisters are graceful. A pretty present; a pretty gown; some pretty presents; some pretty gowns. A white<sup>2</sup> curtain<sup>1</sup>; a white<sup>2</sup> house;<sup>1</sup> some white curtains; some white houses. An impartial<sup>2</sup> judge;<sup>1</sup> an impartial<sup>2</sup> mother;<sup>1</sup> impartial judges; impartial mothers. A cruel<sup>2</sup> and revengeful<sup>3</sup> animal;<sup>1</sup> cruel and revengeful animals; a cruel and revengeful woman; cruel and revengeful women. That general<sup>2</sup> officer<sup>1</sup> is brave; our army is brave; those general officers are brave; our armies are brave. A new<sup>2</sup> book;<sup>1</sup> a new<sup>2</sup> watch;<sup>1</sup> new books; new watches. A loyal<sup>2</sup> proceeding;<sup>1</sup> a loyal<sup>2</sup> petition;<sup>1</sup> loyal proceedings; loyal petitions. A fatal<sup>2</sup> event;<sup>1</sup> a fatal<sup>2</sup> resolution;<sup>1</sup> fatal events; fatal resolutions. Your brother is prudent and wise; your brothers are prudent and wise; your sister is prudent and wise; your sisters are prudent and wise. An ideal<sup>2</sup> being;<sup>1</sup> an ideal<sup>2</sup> fortune;<sup>1</sup> ideal beings; ideal riches.

Fortune,	<i>fortune, f.</i>
Graceful,	<i>gracieux.</i>
Are,	<i>sont.</i>
Happy,	<i>heureux.</i>
Pretty,	<i>joli.</i>
Present,	<i>cadeau, m.</i>
Gown,	<i>robe, f.</i>
Curtain,	<i>rideau, m.</i>
White,	<i>blanc.</i>
House,	<i>maison, f.</i>
Judge,	<i>juge, m.</i>
Impartial,	<i>impartial.</i>
Mother,	<i>mère.</i>
Animal,	<i>animal, m.</i>
Cruel,	<i>cruel.</i>
Fatal,	<i>fatal.</i>
Resolution,	<i>résolution, f.</i>
Your,	<i>votre.</i>
Prudent,	<i>prudent.</i>

Revengeful,	<i>vindictif.</i>
Woman,	<i>femme.</i>
That,	<i>ce.</i>
Officer,	<i>officier, m.</i>
General,	<i>général.</i>
Brave,	<i>brave.</i>
Our,	<i>notre.</i>
Army,	<i>armée, f.</i>
Book,	<i>livre, m.</i>
New,	<i>neuf.</i>
Watch,	<i>montre, f.</i>
Proceeding,	<i>procédé, m.</i>
Loyal,	<i>loyal.</i>
Petition,	<i>pétition, f.</i>
Event,	<i>événement, m.</i>
Wise,	<i>sage.</i>
Being,	<i>être, m.</i>
Ideal,	<i>idéal.</i>



## OF THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION OF ADJECTIVES.

There are three degrees of signification in adjectives ; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

## OF THE POSITIVE.

The *positive* is the adjective in its primitive state and meaning, without any increase or diminution ; as a studious man, *un homme studieux*.

## OF THE COMPARATIVE.

The comparative draws a comparison between two or more objects, either in a degree of inferiority, equality, or superiority, so that there are three sorts of comparatives.

1. The comparative of inferiority which is formed in French, by placing *moins*, less ; before the adjective, and *que*, than ; after it, as :

He is *less* learned than you,      *il est MOINS savant QUE vous.*

2. The comparative of equality which is formed by placing *aussi*, *si*,\* as, so ; before the adjective, and *que*, as ; after it, as :

He is *as* learned as you,      *il est AUSSI savant QUE vous.*  
He is not *so* learned as you,      *il n'est pas si savant QUE vous.*

3. The comparative of superiority which is formed by placing *plus*, more ; before the adjective, and *que*, than ; after it, as :

He is *more* learned than you,      *il est PLUS savant QUE vous.*

## OF THE SUPERLATIVE.

There are two sorts of superlative ; the *relative* and the *absolute*.

---

\* *Aussi* is used when the sentence is affirmative, and *si* when it is negative ; in the latter case, both may be used indifferently.

The *superlative relative* denotes the quality of a person or thing in the highest or lowest degree, and is formed by prefixing the articles *le, la, les*, to the comparative of superiority or inferiority; it is called *relative*, because it always implies a comparison.

## EXAMPLES:

The *finest* ornament,  
The *least* trouble,

le PLUS *bel* *ornement*.  
la MOINDRE *peine*.

The superlative *absolute* expresses a high degree of quality, but not the highest; it is formed by prefixing to the adjective an adverb such as *très, fort, extrêmement*, etc. It is called *absolute* because it does not express any relation to any other object,

## EXAMPLES:

His sister is *extremely* pretty,    *sa sœur est* EXTRÊMEMENT *jolie*.  
I am *very* tired,    *je suis* TRÈS *fatigué*.

When no comparison is implied, the superlative absolute is formed by *le plus, le mieux, le moins*, before an adjective; in that case, the article always remains masculine singular.

## EXAMPLES:

She never complains even when    *elle ne se plaint jamais, même quand*  
she is *most* ill-treated,    *elle est* LE PLUS *maltraitée*.

*Le plus, le mieux, le moins*, having reference to a verb or an adverb, are invariable, because in that case, they are used *adverbially*.

## EXAMPLES:

Of all flowers, the rose and the    *de toutes es fleurs, la rose et la*  
tulip please me *most*,    *tulipe me plaisent* LE PLUS.

Three adjectives and three adverbs are irregular in the formation of the comparative, which is formed in each severally in the following manner.

## ADJECTIVES.

Good,	<i>bon</i> ;	makes in the comparative,	better,	<i>meilleur</i> .
Bad,	<i>mauvais</i> ;	“    “	worse,	<i>pire ou plus mauvais</i> .
Little,	<i>petit</i> ;	“    “	less,	<i>moindre, plus petit</i> .

## ADVERBS.

Well,	<i>bien</i> ;	“    “	better,	<i>mieux</i> .
Ill,	<i>mal</i> ;	“    “	worse,	<i>pis, or plus mal</i> .
Little,	<i>peu</i> ;	“    “	less,	<i>moins</i> .

## EXERCISE ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Charity is the greatest virtue of a christian. God is infinitely merciful. Autumn is not so varied as spring, but it is richer. It is as easy to do good as to do evil. London is more populous than Paris. China is the greatest empire in the world. Your son will be taller than you. Your horses are handsomer than his. They are the handsomest of all. The simplicity of nature is more amiable than all the embellishments of art. My father is not so rich, but he is as learned as yours. You are less dutiful than your brother. You have written less than me. Your pen is better than mine, and consequently you write better than I. The life of a slave is worse than death itself. My books are worse than his, but yours are the worst of all. Pride and passion are his least defects. Of all prose writers, *Bossuet* and *Buffon* express themselves the most nobly. *Racine* and *Boileau* are the two French poets who write best. Honesty is the best policy.

Charity,	<i>la charité.</i>
Is,	<i>est.</i>
Virtue,	<i>vertu, f.</i>
Christian,	<i>chrétien, m.</i>
Infinitely,	<i>infinitement.</i>
Merciful,	<i>miséricordieux.</i>
Autumn,	<i>automne, m. or f.*</i>
Is not,	<i>n'est pas.</i>
Varied,	<i>varié.</i>
Spring,	<i>printemps, m.</i>
But,	<i>mais.</i>
It,	<i>il or elle.</i>
Rich,	<i>riche.</i>
It is,	<i>il est.</i>
Easy,	<i>aisé.</i>
To do,	<i>de faire.</i>
Good,	<i>le bien.</i>
Evil,	<i>le mal.</i>
London,	<i>Londres, m.</i>
Populous,	<i>peuplé.</i>
Paris,	<i>Paris, m.</i>
China,	<i>la Chine.</i>
Empire,	<i>empire, m.</i>
In the,	<i>du.</i>
World,	<i>monde, m.</i>
Your,	<i>votre.</i>
Will be,	<i>sera.</i>
You,	<i>vous.</i>
Your,	<i>vos.</i>
Are,	<i>sont.</i>
His,	<i>les siens.</i>
They,	<i>ils.</i>
Are,	<i>sont.</i>
All,	<i>tous.</i>
Nature,	<i>la nature.</i>
Amiable,	<i>aimable.</i>
All,	<i>tous.</i>
Embellishments,	<i>embellissements, m.</i>
Of art,	<i>de l'art.</i>

My,	<i>mon.</i>
Rich,	<i>riche.</i>
Learned,	<i>instruit.</i>
Yours,	<i>le vôtre.</i>
Dutiful,	<i>obéissant.</i>
You have,	<i>vous avez.</i>
Written,	<i>écrit.</i>
Me,	<i>moi.</i>
Pen,	<i>plume, f.</i>
Mine,	<i>la mienne.</i>
And,	<i>et.</i>
Consequently,	<i>conséquemment.</i>
You write,	<i>vous écrivez.</i>
I,	<i>moi.</i>
Life,	<i>vie, f.</i>
Slave,	<i>esclave, m.</i>
Death	<i>la mort.</i>
Itself,	<i>même.</i>
My,	<i>mes.</i>
Books,	<i>livres.</i>
His,	<i>les siens.</i>
But,	<i>mais.</i>
Yours,	<i>les vôtres.</i>
All,	<i>tous.</i>
Pride,	<i>l'orgueil, m.</i>
Passion,	<i>la colère, f.</i>
Are,	<i>sont,</i>
His,	<i>ses.</i>
Defects,	<i>défauts, m.</i>
Prose writers,	<i>les écrivains en prose.</i>
Express themselves,	<i>s'expriment.</i>
Nobly,	<i>noblement.</i>
Two,	<i>deux.</i>
French poets,	<i>poètes Français.</i>
Who,	<i>qui.</i>
Write,	<i>écrivent.</i>
Honesty,	<i>l'honnêteté.</i>
Policy,	<i>politique, f.</i>

\* *Automne* is of both genders.

## OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.\*

The possessive adjectives are :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural for both genders.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		
my,	<i>mon,</i>	<i>ma.</i>	<i>mes,</i>	} relating to one person.
thy,	<i>ton,</i>	<i>ta.</i>	<i>tes,</i>	
his, her, its,	<i>son,</i>	<i>sa.</i>	<i>ses,</i>	
<i>Singular for both genders.</i>			<i>Plural for both genders.</i>	
our,	<i>notre.</i>		<i>nos,</i>	} relating to more than one person.
your,	<i>votre.</i>		<i>vos,</i>	
their,	<i>leur.</i>		<i>leurs.</i>	

Possessive adjectives are repeated in French before every noun which they specify, and they agree with it in gender and number.

## EXAMPLES :

*My father, mother, and sisters are in London,*      *MON père, MA mère, et MES sœurs sont à Londres.*

The possessive adjective always agrees in French with the thing possessed, and not, as in English, with the possessor.

## EXAMPLES :

*He loves his wife,*      *il aime SA femme.*  
*She loves her husband,*      *elle aime SON mari.*

OBSERVE.—We use *mon, ton, son,* instead of *ma, ta, sa,* before nouns feminine beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute. This is done to avoid the hiatus caused by the meeting of two vowels ; thus we say :

*MON ame,*      instead of      *ma ame.*  
*SON humeur,*      instead of      *sa humeur.*

---

\* These words, which are real adjectives, are usually, but improperly, classed among pronouns.

## EXERCISE ON THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

My friend. Of his duty. To our pleasure. Of your room. To their honesty. From her country. Thy relations. To my neighbours. Of his clothes. Her gloves. Their letters. Her modesty. I have seen your father, mother, and sisters. Her affection for him is false. His horses and carriages are very beautiful. Give him his dictionary and grammar. She received those presents from her uncle and aunt. Have you seen her husband? Her friendship is constant. Her grand-father is dead. His grandmother is very aged. His ambition is the only cause of his imprudence. Her hope is ill-grounded. His shame is great. Thy history is interesting. Here are your paper, pens, and books. Imitate his patience and gentleness. They owe their success less to his protection, than to their perseverance and their application to their studies. All admire his piety, his humanity, and his excellent conduct. That respect is the reward of his merit and morals.

Friend,	<i>ami, m.</i>
Duty,	<i>devoir, m.</i>
Pleasure,	<i>plaisir, m.</i>
Room,	<i>chambre, f.</i>
Honesty,	<i>honnêteté.</i>
Country,	<i>pays, m.</i>
Relations,	<i>parents, m.</i>
Neighbours,	<i>voisins, m.</i>
Clothes,	<i>habits, m.</i>
Gloves,	<i>gants, m.</i>
Letters,	<i>lettres, f.</i>
Modesty,	<i>modestie, f.</i>
I have seen,	<i>j'ai vu.</i>
Affection,	<i>affection, f.</i>
For him,	<i>pour lui.</i>
False,	<i>fausse.</i>
Horses,	<i>chevaux, m.</i>
Carriages,	<i>voitures, f.</i>
Very,	<i>très.</i>
Beautiful,	<i>beaux.</i>
Give him,	<i>donnez-lui.</i>
Dictionary,	<i>dictionnaire, m.</i>
Grammar,	<i>grammaire, f.</i>
Received,	<i>reçut.</i>
Presents,	<i>présents, m.</i>
Uncle,	<i>oncle.</i>
Aunt,	<i>tante.</i>
Have you seen,	<i>avez-vous vu.</i>
Husband,	<i>mari.</i>
Friendship,	<i>amitié, f.</i>
Constant,	<i>constants.</i>
Grand-father,	<i>grand père.</i>

Dead,	<i>mort.</i>
Grand-mother,	<i>grand-mère.</i>
Aged,	<i>agée or vieille.</i>
Ambition,	<i>ambition, f.</i>
Only cause,	<i>seule cause, f.</i>
Imprudence,	<i>imprudence, f.</i>
Hope,	<i>espérance, f.</i>
Ill-grounded,	<i>mal fondée.</i>
Shame,	<i>honte, f. (h aspi.)</i>
History,	<i>histoire, f. (h mute.)</i>
Interesting,	<i>intéressante.</i>
Here are,	<i>voici.</i>
Paper,	<i>papier, m.</i>
Pens,	<i>plumes, f.</i>
Books,	<i>livres, m.</i>
Imitate,	<i>imiter.</i>
Patience,	<i>patience, f.</i>
Gentleness,	<i>douceur, f.</i>
Owe,	<i>doivent.</i>
Success,	<i>succès.</i>
Perseverance,	<i>persévérance, f.</i>
Application,	<i>application, f.</i>
Studies,	<i>études.</i>
All,	<i>tout le monde.</i>
Admire,	<i>admire.</i>
Piety,	<i>piété, f.</i>
Humanity,	<i>humanité, f.</i>
Conduct,	<i>conduite, f.</i>
Respect,	<i>respect, m.</i>
Reward,	<i>récompense, f.</i>
Merit,	<i>mérite, m.</i>
Morals,	<i>mœurs.</i>

## OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

The demonstrative adjectives are so called because they specify the objects spoken of, and distinguish them from others. They are: *this* and *that* for the singular; *these* and *those* for the plural.

*This* and *that* are expressed in French by *ce*, before a noun masculine singular beginning with a consonant, or an *h* aspirated.

## EXAMPLES :

<i>This</i> or <i>that</i> gentleman,	<i>CE monsieur.</i>
<i>This</i> or <i>that</i> picture,	<i>CE tableau.</i>
<i>This</i> or <i>that</i> hero,	<i>CE héros.</i>

To avoid the meeting of two vowels, a *t* is added to the dem. adj. *ce* before a noun masculine singular beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

## EXAMPLES :

<i>This</i> or <i>that</i> man,	<i>CET homme.</i>
<i>This</i> or <i>that</i> child,	<i>CET enfant.</i>
<i>This</i> or <i>that</i> tree,	<i>CET arbre.</i>

*Ce* makes *cette* in the feminine, before vowels as well as before consonants.

## EXAMPLES :

<i>This</i> or <i>that</i> lady,	<i>CETTE dame.</i>
<i>This</i> or <i>that</i> study,	<i>CETTE étude.</i>

*These* and *those* are always translated by *ces* before all sorts of nouns: as these boys, *ces garçons*; those girls, *ces filles*; those trees, *ces arbres*; these honours, *ces honneurs*.

The French often add the adverbs *ci* and *là*, *here* and *there*; to the noun, to indicate persons or things more particularly, or to express the distinction observed between the English words *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, in pointing out their proximity or distance.

## EXAMPLES :

Read <i>that</i> fable,	<i>lisez cette fable-LÀ.</i>
Is it in <i>this</i> book?	<i>est-elle dans ce livre-CI ?</i>

## EXERCISE ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

That teacher is learned. This scholar is studious. That servant is honest. That maid-servant is attached to her masters. This fish is fresh. These apples are ripe. That cream is warm. These plates are cold. Those bottles are empty. These flowers come from that garden. That parlour is as large as this drawing-room. Are they not in this drawer? What is there in that box? What box? This box? I have read this work; but I have not read those novels. These arms are for those soldiers. This umbrella is yours. Give me that chair. My papers are in that desk. That steeple is higher than this tower. This man, that woman, and those children, are foreigners. Those kings, that army, that gold, that splendour, dazzled me. The verses of that writer are not better than his prose. These books, this library, those pictures, in short, the whole of this furniture, belongs to that gentleman.

Teacher,	<i>maître.</i>
Learned,	<i>instruit.</i>
Scholar,	<i>écolier, m.</i>
Studious,	<i>studieux.</i>
Servant,	<i>domestique.</i>
Honest,	<i>honnête.</i>
Maid-servant,	<i>servante.</i>
Attached,	<i>attachée.</i>
Masters,	<i>maîtres.</i>
Fish,	<i>poisson, m.</i>
Fresh,	<i>frais.</i>
Apples,	<i>pommes, f.</i>
Ripe,	<i>mûres.</i>
Cream,	<i>crème, f.</i>
Warm,	<i>chaude.</i>
Plates,	<i>assiettes, f.</i>
Cold,	<i>froides.</i>
Bottles,	<i>bouteilles, f.</i>
Empty,	<i>vides.</i>
Flowers,	<i>fleurs, f.</i>
Come,	<i>viennent.</i>
Garden,	<i>jardin, m.</i>
Parlour,	<i>salle, f.</i>
Large,	<i>grande.</i>
Drawing-room,	<i>salon, m.</i>
Are they not,	<i>ne sont-ils pas.</i>
Drawer,	<i> tiroir, m.</i>
What is there,	<i>qu'y a-t-il.</i>
Box,	<i>boîte, f.</i>
What,	<i>quelle.</i>
I have read,	<i>j'ai lu.</i>

Work,	<i>ouvrage, m.</i>
But,	<i>mais.</i>
I have not read,	<i>je n'ai pas lu.</i>
Novels,	<i>romans, m.</i>
Arms,	<i>armes, f.</i>
Are for,	<i>sont pour.</i>
Soldiers,	<i>soldats.</i>
Umbrella,	<i>parapluie, m.</i>
Yours,	<i>à vous.</i>
Give me,	<i>donnez-moi.</i>
Chair,	<i>chaise, f.</i>
Papers,	<i>papiers, m.</i>
In,	<i>dans.</i>
Desk,	<i>pupitre, m.</i>
Steeple,	<i>clocher, m.</i>
High,	<i>haut.</i>
Tower,	<i>tour, f.</i>
Foreigners,	<i>étrangers, m.</i>
Kings,	<i>rois.</i>
Army,	<i>armée, f.</i>
Gold,	<i>or, m.</i>
Splendour,	<i>éclat, m.</i>
Dazzled me,	<i>m' éblouirent.</i>
Books,	<i>livres.</i>
Library,	<i>bibliothèque, f.</i>
Pictures,	<i>tableaux.</i>
In short,	<i>en un mot.</i>
The whole of,	<i>tout.</i>
Furniture,	<i>ameublement, m.</i>
Belongs,	<i>appartient.</i>
Gentleman,	<i>monsieur.</i>

## OF INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

These adjectives are called indefinite, because they present to the mind the idea of persons or things used in an indefinite and general manner.

The indefinite adjectives are :

<i>Aucun, nul, pas un,</i>	none, no one, no, not one, not any.
<i>Autre,</i>	other, another.
<i>Certain,</i>	certain, some, some one.
<i>Chaque,</i>	each, every.
<i>Maint,</i>	many, many a one.
<i>Même,</i>	same, self, like, alike.
<i>Plusieurs,</i>	several, many.
<i>Quel,</i>	what, which.
<i>Quelconque,</i>	whatever, whatsoever.
<i>Quelque,</i>	some, some other.
<i>Quelque, que, } Quel, que, } Tout,</i>	whatever, how great or little so-ever. any, any one.

*Nul, aucun, pas un*, take *ne* before the verb ; they are almost indifferently used. Ex. :

He has no motive,

*{ il n'a nul motif.  
il n'a aucun motif.  
il n'a pas un motif.*

N.B.—Rules and exercises on these adjectives will be found in the syntax.

## OF THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

There are two sorts of numeral adjectives, or nouns of number, the *cardinal* and the *ordinal*.

The *cardinal* numbers, so called from being the root of the others, express the *number* of persons or things.

The *ordinal*, as the word implies, express the *order* in which persons or things are to be considered.

### OF CARDINAL NUMBERS.

The cardinal numbers are :



1 <i>Un, m. une, f.</i>	one.
2 <i>Deux,</i>	two.
3 <i>Trois,</i>	three.
4 <i>Quatre,</i>	four.
5 <i>Cinq,</i>	five.
6 <i>Six,</i>	six.
7 <i>Sept,</i>	seven.
8 <i>Huit,</i>	eight.
9 <i>Neuf,</i>	nine.
10 <i>Dix,</i>	ten.
11 <i>Onze,</i>	eleven.
12 <i>Douze,</i>	twelve.
13 <i>Treize,</i>	thirteen.
14 <i>Quatorze,</i>	fourteen.
15 <i>Quinze,</i>	fifteen.
16 <i>Seize,</i>	sixteen.
17 <i>Dix-sept,</i>	seventeen.
18 <i>Dix-huit,</i>	eighteen.
19 <i>Dix-neuf,</i>	nineteen.
20 <i>Vingt,</i>	twenty.
21 <i>Vingt et un,*</i>	twenty-one.
22 <i>Vingt-deux,</i>	twenty-two.
23 <i>Vingt-trois,</i>	twenty-three.
24 <i>Vingt-quatre,</i>	twenty-four.
25 <i>Vingt-cinq,</i>	twenty-five.
26 <i>Vingt-six,</i>	twenty-six.
27 <i>Vingt-sept,</i>	twenty-seven.
28 <i>Vingt-huit,</i>	twenty-eight.
29 <i>Vingt-neuf,</i>	twenty-nine.
30 <i>Trente,</i>	thirty.
31 <i>Trente et un,</i>	thirty-one.
32 <i>Trente-deux,</i>	thirty-two.
33 <i>Trente-trois,</i>	thirty-three.
34 <i>Trente-quatre,</i>	thirty-four.
35 <i>Trente-cinq,</i>	thirty-five.
36 <i>Trente-six,</i>	thirty-six.
37 <i>Trente-sept,</i>	thirty-seven.
38 <i>Trente-huit,</i>	thirty-eight.
39 <i>Trente-neuf,</i>	thirty-nine.
40 <i>Quarante,</i>	forty.
41 <i>Quarante et un,</i>	forty-one.
42 <i>Quarante-deux,</i>	forty-two.
43 <i>Quarante-trois,</i>	forty-three.
44 <i>Quarante-quatre,</i>	forty-four.
45 <i>Quarante-cinq,</i>	forty-five.
46 <i>Quarante-six,</i>	forty-six.
47 <i>Quarante-sept,</i>	forty-seven.
48 <i>Quarante-huit,</i>	forty-eight.
49 <i>Quarante-neuf,</i>	forty-nine.

---

\* From *twenty* to *sixty* the conjunction *et* may or may not be used before *un*.

50 <i>Cinquante,</i>	fifty.
51 <i>Cinquante et un,</i>	fifty-one.
52 <i>Cinquante-deux,</i>	fifty-two.
53 <i>Cinquante-trois,</i>	fifty-three.
54 <i>Cinquante-quatre,</i>	fifty-four.
55 <i>Cinquante-cinq,</i>	fifty-five.
56 <i>Cinquante-six,</i>	fifty-six.
57 <i>Cinquante-sept,</i>	fifty-seven.
58 <i>Cinquant-huit,</i>	fifty-eight.
59 <i>Cinquante-neuf,</i>	fifty-nine.
60 <i>Soixante,</i>	sixty.*
61 <i>Soixante et un,</i>	sixty-one.
62 <i>Soixante-deux,</i>	sixty-two.
63 <i>Soixante-trois,</i>	sixty-three.
64 <i>Soixante-quatre,</i>	sixty-four.
65 <i>Soixante-cinq,</i>	sixty-five.
66 <i>Soixante-six,</i>	sixty-six.
67 <i>Soixante-sept,</i>	sixty-seven.
68 <i>Soixante-huit,</i>	sixty-eight.
69 <i>Soixante-neuf,</i>	sixty-nine.
70 <i>Soixante-dix,</i>	seventy.
71 <i>Soixante et onze,</i>	seventy-one.
72 <i>Soixante-douze,</i>	seventy-two.
73 <i>Soixante-treize,</i>	seventy-three.
74 <i>Soixante-quatorze,</i>	seventy-four.
75 <i>Soixante-quinze,</i>	seventy-five.
76 <i>Soixante-seize,</i>	seventy-six.
77 <i>Soixante-dix-sept,</i>	seventy-seven.
78 <i>Soixante-dix-huit,</i>	seventy-eight.
79 <i>Soixante-dix-neuf,</i>	seventy-nine.
80 <i>Quatre-vingt,</i>	eighty.
81 <i>Quatre-vingt-un,</i>	eighty-one.
82 <i>Quatre-vingt-deux,</i>	eighty-two.
83 <i>Quatre-vingt-trois,</i>	eighty-three.
84 <i>Quatre-vingt-quatre,</i>	eighty-four.
85 <i>Quatre-vingt-cinq,</i>	eighty-five.
86 <i>Quatre-vingt-six,</i>	eighty-six.
87 <i>Quatre-vingt-sept,</i>	eighty-seven.
88 <i>Quatre-vingt-huit,</i>	eighty-eight.
89 <i>Quatre-vingt-neuf,</i>	eighty-nine.
90 <i>Quatre-vingt-dix,</i>	ninety.
91 <i>Quatre-vingt-onze,</i>	ninety-one.
92 <i>Quatre-vingt-douze,</i>	ninety-two.
93 <i>Quatre-vingt-treize,</i>	ninety-three.
94 <i>Quatre-vingt-quatorze,</i>	ninety-four.
95 <i>Quatre-vingt-quinze,</i>	ninety-five.
96 <i>Quatre-vingt-seize,</i>	ninety-six.
97 <i>Quatre-vingt-dix-sept,</i>	ninety-seven.

\* In the whole series, from *sixty* to *eighty*, the *et* may or may not be used; thus we say *soixante et un* or *soixante-un*, *soixante et deux* or *soixante-deux*, &c.

98 <i>Quatre-vingt-dix-huit</i> ,	ninety-eight.
99 <i>Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf</i> ,	ninety-nine.
100 <i>Cent</i> ,	one hundred.
101 <i>Cent un</i> ,	one hundred and one.
200 <i>Deux cents</i> ,	two hundred, &c.
1000 <i>Mille</i> ,*	one thousand, &c.
100,000 <i>Cent mille</i> ,	one hundred thousand, &c.
1,000,000 <i>Un million</i> ,	one million, &c.

REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF SOME CARDINAL  
NUMBERS.

The last consonant of *cing*, *six*, *sept*, *huit*, *neuf*, and *dix*, must be pronounced, 1st, in reckoning; 2ndly, at the end of a sentence; and, 3rdly, before a vowel or *h* mute. *Sept* then sounds like the English word *set*; *neuf* sounds *nuff* at the end of a sentence, and the *f* sounds like a *v* before a vowel: the *x* in *dix* sounds like *dis* in distance, when nothing follows, and like a *z* before a vowel.

The *x* of *dix* is pronounced also in *dix-sept*, *dix-huit*, *dix-neuf*.

The *t* of *vingt* is pronounced before a vowel or *h* mute, and in the series from *vingt* to *trente*, as: *vingt-deux*, *vingt-trois*, etc.

OF ORDINAL NUMBERS.

The ordinal numbers are :

Mas.	Fem.	M. & F.	
1 <sup>er</sup> . <i>Premier</i> , <i>première</i> , <i>unième</i> ,			first.
2 <sup>d</sup> . <i>Second</i> , <i>seconde</i> , <i>deuxième</i> .			second.
3 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Troisième</i> ,			third.
4 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quatrième</i> ,			fourth,
5 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Cinquième</i> ,			fifth.
6 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Sixième</i> ,			sixth.
7 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Septième</i> ,			seventh.
8 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Huitième</i> ,			eighth.
9 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Neuvième</i> ,			ninth.
10 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Dixième</i> ,			tenth.
11 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Onzième</i> ,			eleventh.
12 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Douzième</i> ,			twelfth.

\* Observe that the word *a* or *one* by which the numbers *hundred* and *thousand* are preceded in English, are not expressed in French.

13 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Treizième,</i>	thirteenth.
14 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quatorzième,</i>	fourteenth.
15 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quinzième,</i>	fifteenth.
16 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Seizième,</i>	sixteenth.
17 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Dix-septième,</i>	seventeenth.
18 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Dix-huitième,</i>	eighteenth.
19 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Dix-neuvième,</i>	nineteenth.
20 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Vingtième,</i>	twentieth.
21 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Vingt-et-unième,</i>	twenty-first.
22 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Vingt-deuxième, etc.</i>	twenty-second, &c.
30 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Trentième,</i>	thirtieth.
31 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Trente-et-unième,</i>	thirty-first.
32 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Trente-deuxième, etc.</i>	thirty-second, &c.
40 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quarantième,</i>	fortieth.
41 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quarante-et-unième,</i>	forty-first.
42 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quarante-deuxième, etc.</i>	forty-second, &c.
50 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Cinquantième,</i>	fiftieth.
51 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Cinquante-et-unième,</i>	fifty-first.
52 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Cinquante-deuxième, etc.</i>	fifty-second, &c.
60 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Soixantième,</i>	sixtieth.
61 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Soixante-et-unième,</i>	sixty-first.
62 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Soixante-deuxième, etc.</i>	sixty-second, &c.
70 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Soixante-dixième,</i>	seventieth.
71 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Soixante-et-onzième, etc.</i>	seventy-first, &c.
80 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quatre-vingtième,</i>	eightieth.
81 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quatre-vingt-unième,</i>	eighty-first.
82 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quatre-vingt-deuxième, etc.</i>	eighty-second, &c.
90 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quatre-vingt-dixième,</i>	ninety.
91 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Quatre-vingt-onzième, etc.</i>	ninety-first, &c.
100 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Centième,</i>	hundredth.
101 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Cent-unième,</i>	hundred and first.
102 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Cent-deuxième, etc.</i>	hundred and second, &c.
1000 <sup>e</sup> . <i>Millième, etc.</i>	thousandth, &c.

Besides the numeral adjectives, above mentioned, there are substantives expressive of numbers, such as the *collective*, which express a collected number; as, a dozen, *une douzaine*; etc. The *distributive*, which express a part of a number, as: the fourth, *le quart*; the half, *la moitié*; etc. and the *proportional*, which expresses a multiplication of the number; as double, *le double*, etc.

N.B.—Rules and exercises on the numeral adjectives will be given in the syntax.

## CHAPTER IV.

## OF PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are words which are used instead of nouns, to avoid repetition.

There are, in French, five different sorts of pronouns; The *personal*, the *possessive*, the *demonstrative*, the *relative*, and the *indefinite*.

## OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are used to represent the names of persons or things. The French have *two* distinct sorts of personal pronouns, viz.: the *conjunctive*, so called from their being immediately united with verbs, *which they always precede*,\* and the *disjunctive* which are put in the same place in French, as they are in English.

## THE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS ARE:

<i>Nominative.</i>		<i>Genitive.</i>	
I,	<i>je.</i>	of me,	<i>en.</i>
thou,	<i>tu.</i>	of thee,	<i>en.</i>
he, she it,	<i>il, elle.</i>	of him, her, it,	<i>en.</i>
we,	<i>nous.</i>	of us,	<i>en.</i>
you or ye,	<i>vous.</i>	of you, ye,	<i>en.</i>
they,	<i>ils, elles.</i>	of them.	<i>en.</i>
<i>Dative.</i>		<i>Accusative.</i>	
to me,	<i>me.</i>	me,	<i>me.</i>
to thee,	<i>te.</i>	thee,	<i>te.</i>
to him, her,	<i>lui.</i>	him, her, it,	<i>le, la.</i>
to us,	<i>nous.</i>	us,	<i>nous.</i>
to you,	<i>vous.</i>	you,	<i>vous.</i>
to them,	<i>leur.</i>	them,	<i>les.</i>

The personal conjunctive pronouns are all placed, in French, before the verb in a simple tense, or before the auxiliary in a compound one.

\* Except in the imperative affirmative.

## EXAMPLES :

I speak to you,	<i>je vous parle.</i>
I have spoken to you,	<i>je vous ai parlé.</i>
I see them,	<i>je les vois.</i>
I have seen them,	<i>je les ai vus.</i>

In the imperative of verbs, used *affirmatively*, the pronouns go after the verb.\*

## EXAMPLES :

Give it,	<i>donne-LE.</i>
Let us give it,	<i>donnons-LE.</i>
Give it,	<i>donnez-LE.</i>

But if the imperative be used *negatively*, the pronouns follow the general rule, that is, precede the verb, as :

Do not give it,	<i>ne LE donne pas.</i>
Let us not give it,	<i>ne LE donnons pas.</i>
Do not give it,	<i>ne LE donnez pas.</i>

## THE DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS ARE :

<i>Nominative.</i>		<i>Genitive.</i>	
I,	<i>moi.</i>	of me,	<i>de moi.</i>
thou,	<i>toi.</i>	of thee,	<i>de toi.</i>
he, she,	<i>lui, elle.</i>	of him, her,	<i>de lui, d'elle.</i>
we,	<i>nous.</i>	of us,	<i>de nous.</i>
you or ye,	<i>vous.</i>	of you,	<i>de vous.</i>
they,	<i>eux, elles.</i>	of them,	<i>d'eux, d'elles.</i>
<i>Dative.</i>		<i>Accusative.</i>	
to me,	<i>à moi.</i>	me,	<i>moi.</i>
to thee,	<i>à toi.</i>	thee,	<i>toi.</i>
to him, her,	<i>à lui, à elle.</i>	him, her,	<i>lui, elle.</i>
to us,	<i>à nous.</i>	us,	<i>nous.</i>
to you,	<i>à vous.</i>	you,	<i>vous.</i>
to them,	<i>à eux, à elles.</i>	them,	<i>eux, elles.</i>

There is a personal indeterminate pronoun of the third person which in the conjunctive makes *se* and in the disjunctive *soi*.

*Se* is used in reflexive verbs for *one's-self*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*, *each other*, *one another*.

---

\* This difference in the place of personal pronouns with an *imperative affirmative* is not observed with the verb in the third person *singular* or *plural*.

## EXAMPLES.

To flatter <i>oneself</i> ,	<i>se flatter.</i>
He flatters <i>himself</i> ,	<i>il se flatte.</i>
They flatter <i>themselves</i> ,	<i>ils se flattent.</i>

*Soi* is used after a verb, being preceded by a preposition.

One often sees but <i>oneself</i> ,	<i>souvent on ne voit que soi.</i>
The loadstone attracts iron to <i>itself</i> ,	<i>l'aimant attire le fer à soi.</i>

N.B.—See the syntax for further rules and exercises on the conjunctive and disjunctive personal pronouns.

## OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.\*

The possessive pronouns are used instead of a substantive before mentioned, denoting at the same time *possession*.

## THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS ARE :

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
mine,	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>les miens ;</i>		<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miennes.</i>
thine,	<i>le tien,</i>	<i>les tiens ;</i>		<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiennes.</i>
his, hers, its,	<i>le sien,</i>	<i>les siens ;</i>		<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siennes.</i>
ours,	<i>le nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres ;</i>		<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres.</i>
yours,	<i>le vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>		<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres.</i>
theirs,	<i>le leur,</i>	<i>les leurs ;</i>		<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs.</i>

These pronouns always agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they relate.

## EXAMPLES :

My father and <i>yours</i> ,	<i>mon père et LE VÔTRE.</i>
My mother and <i>yours</i> ,	<i>ma mère et LA VÔTRE.</i>
Your brothers and <i>hers</i> ,	<i>vos frères et LES SIENS.</i>
Your sisters and <i>hers</i> ,	<i>vos sœurs et LES SIENNES.</i>

OBSERVE.—These pronouns always agree as in the two last examples above given, with the person or object *possessed*, and not, as in English, with the *possessor*.

In the genitive and dative cases, the contraction takes place according to the rules on the articles.

\* Some Grammairiens place *le mien*, *le tien*, &c., &c., among possessive adjectives—our classification, if not, analytically, the most correct, being, however, the most simple for the English student, has appeared to us preferable.

## EXAMPLES :

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
Of mine, DU <i>mien</i> ,	DES <i>miens</i> ;		DE LA <i>mienn</i> e,	DES <i>miennes</i> .
Of thine, DU <i>tien</i> ,	DES <i>tiens</i> ;		DE LA <i>tienn</i> e,	DES <i>tiennes</i> .
Of his, DU <i>sien</i> ,	DES <i>siens</i> ;		DE LA <i>sien</i> ne,	DES <i>siennes</i> .

and so on with *of ours*, *of yours*, *of theirs*.

To mine, AU <i>mien</i> ,	AUX <i>miens</i> ;	À LA <i>mienn</i> e,	AUX <i>miennes</i> .
To thine, AU <i>tien</i> ,	AUX <i>tiens</i> ;	À LA <i>tienn</i> e,	AUX <i>tiennes</i> .
To his, AU <i>sien</i> ,	AUX <i>siens</i> ;	À LA <i>sien</i> ne,	AUX <i>siennes</i> .

and so on with *to ours*, *to yours*, *to theirs*.

N.B. The possessive adjectives *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your*, *their*, must not be confounded in the following examples with the pronouns *mine*, *thine*, &c. (see for the former, p. 35).

## EXERCISE ON THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.\*

My father, thine, hers, and theirs. Their mother, his, yours, and mine. Her brothers, thine, ours, and theirs. Our sisters, his, yours, and theirs. From my father, from thine, from hers, from yours, and from theirs. Of their mother, of his, of yours, and of mine. Of her brothers, of thine, of ours, and of theirs. From our sisters, from his, from yours, and from theirs. To my father, to thine, to hers, to yours, and to theirs. To their mother, to his, to yours, and to mine. To her brothers, to thine, to ours, and to theirs. To our sisters, to his, to yours, and to theirs. My uncle and his. His cousins and mine. Of his parents and of thine. Of thy friends and of hers. Our house and yours. Your money and his. Of my profession and of his. Of your observations and of theirs. To their charity and to thine. To their virtues and to yours. To your health and to theirs. My reasons and his are good ; yours and theirs are better.

## OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns are so called from their

---

\* No French is given under this exercise, as the nouns used in it are already known to the learner, or alike in both languages.



pointing out, as it were, the persons or things which they represent. They are the following :

1. This or that, *CE* *indeclinable*.

Before the verb *être*, to be, *ce* is used for *the person*, or *the thing*.

EXAMPLES :

. *It* is not you, *CE n'est pas vous.*

As much as to say *the person* is not you.

Who is *it*? *qui est-ce?*

That is, who is *the person*, etc.

*It* (the thing) is not possible, *CE n'est pas possible.*  
*It* is his first trial, *c'est son coup d'essai.*

Before the words *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *à quoi*, the pronoun *ce* is used for *the thing which*.

EXAMPLES :

*What* (the thing which) you say *CE que vous dites est raisonnable.*  
 is reasonable,

*What* he speaks of, is known, *CE dont il parle est connu.*

*What* the miser thinks least of, *CE à quoi l'avare pense le moins,*  
 is, etc. *etc.*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

m.

f.

m.

f.

2. *Celui*, *celle*, that; *ceux*, *celles*, those.

Which are always followed by *de* expressing possession, or by the *relative pronouns*, *qui*, *que*, expressed or understood.

EXAMPLES.

Your watch is good; *that* of my brother is better, *votre montre est bonne; CELLE de mon frère est meilleure.*

Here are your new gloves, and *those* which you had lost, *voici vos gants neufs, et CEUX que vous aviez perdus.*

OBSERVE.—We have said page 37, that *ci* and *là* are often united to the substantive when we wish to indicate more particularly persons and things, as :

*This* is the book I want, *c'est ce livre-ci qu'il me faut.*  
 It is useless to learn *that* lesson. *il est inutile d'apprendre cette*  
*leçon là.*

Those same particles are placed after *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, for the same purpose, and also to denote among two or more persons or things, the nearest or farthest in point of time or place, sometimes answering to the English expression *the former, the latter, this, that*.

## EXAMPLES :

Of these two books, which do you choose? *this* or *that*? *de ces deux livres, lequel choisissez-vous ? CELUI-CI ou CELUI-LÀ ?*

Here are my horses : I shall sell *this* one, but not *that*, *voici mes chevaux ; je vendrai CELUI-CI, mais pas CELUI-LÀ.*

3. *Ceci*, *this* ; *cela*, *that*.

These pronouns mean *this thing, that thing* ; they have no plural, are both masculine, and do not, like *celui, celle*, hold the place of a noun already mentioned.

## EXAMPLES :

*This* is good and *that* is bad, *CECI est bon et CELA est mauvais.*  
 What does *this* mean? *que veut dire CECI ?*  
 Bring me *that*, *apportez-moi CELA.*

As much as to say, *this thing* is good, what does *that thing* mean? bring me *that thing*.

## EXERCISE ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The sight of the mind is more extensive than that of the body. Which of these two horses have you bought; *this* or *that*? The term of life is short, that of beauty is still more so. These two watches are good; but *this* costs more than *that*. *That* is good to eat. You always ask why *this*, and why *that*? The state of the brute is very different from that of man; *the former*\* is clothed and armed by nature; *the latter* is not; *that* soon attains its vigour and perfection, *this* continues long in infancy. It is a great misfortune for them. It was a great pleasure to me. The faults of Henry IV.,

\* In translating the words given in italics, in this sentence, bear in mind the observation made above on the use of *ci* and *là*, after the pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles*.

were those of an amiable<sup>2</sup> man,<sup>1</sup> and his virtues those of a great man. Vice and virtue have contrary effects; the *former* renders man unhappy, the *latter* makes him happy. The eloquence of Massillon moves the heart of sinners, that of Bossuet frightens them. Let us divide the shares: take this one; that one is for me, and let us leave those which remain for the absent members.

Sight,	<i>vue, f.</i>	Continues,	<i>reste.</i>
Mind,	<i>esprit, m.</i>	Long,	<i>long-temps.</i>
Extensive,	<i>étendue</i>	In,	<i>dans.</i>
Body,	<i>corps, m</i>	Infancy,	<i>l'enfance, f.</i>
Which,	<i>lequel.</i>	Misfortune,	<i>malheur, m.</i>
Horses,	<i>chevaux, m.</i>	For them,	<i>pour eux.</i>
Have you,	<i>avez-vous.</i>	Was,	<i>fût.</i>
Bought,	<i>acheté.</i>	Pleasure,	<i>plaisir, m.</i>
Term,	<i>temps, m.</i>	To me,	<i>pour moi.</i>
Life,	<i>la vie.</i>	Faults,	<i>défauts, m.</i>
Short,	<i>court.</i>	Henry the fourth,	<i>Henri quatre.</i>
Beauty,	<i>la beauté.</i>	Were,	<i>étaient.</i>
Is still more,	<i>l'est encore.</i>	Amiable,	<i>aimable.</i>
So,	<i>davantage.</i>	Virtues,	<i>vertus, f.</i>
Watches,	<i>montres, f.</i>	Great,	<i>grand.</i>
Costs,	<i>coûte.</i>	Vice,	<i>le vice, m.</i>
To,	<i>à.</i>	Have,	<i>ont.</i>
Eat,	<i>Manger.</i>	Contrary effects,	<i>des effets contraires.</i>
Always ask,	<i>demandez toujours.</i>	Renders,	<i>rend.</i>
Why,	<i>pourquoi.</i>	Man,	<i>l'homme.</i>
State,	<i>état, m.</i>	Unhappy,	<i>malheureux.</i>
Brute,	<i>brute, f.</i>	Makes him,	<i>le rend.</i>
Is very,	<i>est très.</i>	Happy,	<i>heureux.</i>
Different,	<i>différent.</i>	Moves,	<i>émeut.</i>
Of man,	<i>de l'homme.</i>	Heart,	<i>cœur, m.</i>
Is,	<i>est.</i>	Sinner,	<i>pécheur.</i>
Clothed,	<i>vêtu.</i>	Frighten them,	<i>les épouvante.</i>
And,	<i>et.</i>	Let us divide,	<i>divisons.</i>
Armed,	<i>armé.</i>	Shares,	<i>parts.</i>
By,	<i>par.</i>	Take,	<i>prenez.</i>
Nature,	<i>la nature.</i>	For me,	<i>pour moi,</i>
Is not,	<i>ne l'est pas.</i>	Let us leave,	<i>laissons.</i>
Soon attains,	<i>atteint bientôt.</i>	Remain,	<i>restent.</i>
Vigour,	<i>vigueur, f.</i>	Members,	<i>membres.</i>
And perfection,	<i>et sa perfection.</i>		

## OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns are those which relate to a substantive or pronoun antecedent.

<i>Qui,</i>	who	} which or that.
<i>Que,</i>	whom	
<i>Lequel,</i>	which.	

<i>Dont,</i>	whose, of whom.
<i>Quoi,</i>	what.
<i>Où,</i>	where, in which.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE ABOVE PRONOUNS.

## QUI, QUE.

*Qui* and *que* relate to persons and things ; the former is the *subject*, and the latter the *object*\* of the verb.

## EXAMPLES :

The gentleman <i>who</i> is speaking,	<i>le monsieur QUI parle.</i>
The letter <i>which</i> is upon the table,	<i>la lettre QUI est sur la table.</i>
God <i>whom</i> we adore,	<i>Dieu QUE nous adorons.</i>
The laws <i>which</i> we observe,	<i>les lois QUE nous observons.</i>

*Qui* and *que* are of both genders and numbers.

## LEQUEL.

*Lequel* with an antecedent,† is used instead of *qui* and *que*.

It changes according to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates, and is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle.</i>	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles.</i>
<i>duquel,</i>	<i>de laquelle.</i>	<i>desquels,</i>	<i>desquelles.</i>
<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle.</i>	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles.</i>

*Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, with an antecedent, are only used for *qui* and *que* to avoid ambiguity.‡

With a preposition in speaking of *persons*, they are almost synonymous, though *duquel*, etc. is generally preferred to *de qui*, *auquel*, etc. to *à qui*.

When applied to *things*, *duquel*, *auquel*, etc. must alone be used for *of which*, *to which*, as *de qui*, *à qui*, apply to persons only.

\* *Qui* or *que* without any noun understood before, may be the object as well as the subject of the verb. This will be explained in the syntax on relative pronouns.

† The *antecedent* is the noun which precedes the relative pronoun. A relative pronoun without an *antecedent* is called *absolute*.

‡ This will be explained more fully in the syntax.

## EXAMPLES :

The men with *whom* you were,    *les hommes avec LESQUELS (or qui) vous étiez.*  
 The money on *which* I depend,    *l'argent sur LEQUEL je compte.*

## DONT.

*Dont*, is nearly synonymous with *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*, and with *de qui* (in speaking of persons), when these pronouns come immediately after the substantive to which they relate.

## EXAMPLES :

The child of *whom* you complain,    *l'enfant DONT, or DUQUEL vous vous plaignez.*  
 Nature *whose* secrets are un-    *la nature DONT nous ignorons les known to us,    secrets.*

## QUOI.

*Quoi* is chiefly used in interrogative sentences, and to express admiration, in which cases the object to which it relates is not named.

Of *what* do you accuse him?    *DE QUOI l'accusez-vous?*  
*What* can be more agreeable?    *QUOI de plus agréable?*

## où.

*Où* is a relative pronoun when it has an antecedent; it always relates to inanimate objects, and is thus declined :

<i>Où,</i>	where, in which, to which,
<i>D'où,</i>	from which.
<i>Par où,</i>	by or through which.

## EXAMPLES :

Avoid the faults *into which* I have    *évitex les fautes où (or dans fallen,    lesquelles) je suis tombé.*  
 This is the house *in which* he    *voilà la maison où il demeure.* lives,

N.B.—The relative pronouns *whom, that, and which*, are frequently understood in English; but *que, dont, à qui, etc.*, must always be expressed in French, as :

The man you see,	<i>l'homme QUE vous voyez.</i>
The book I read,	<i>le livre QUE je lis.</i>

## EXERCISE ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The flowers which you have gathered are faded. Children who are obedient are loved by every body. I have read the letters you have<sup>s</sup> written<sup>s</sup> to them.<sup>1</sup> The gentleman of whom you speak is my friend. In what has he neglected to fulfil his duty? You see the lady of whom I spoke to you. This is the picture he has bought. Where is the umbrella I had brought? Who will go with them? What will they say? The lady he was to marry is dead. The man whom you seek is there. I have read the work of which you speak. The chair upon which you are sitting is broken. Tell me where you are going. Name the towns through which you went. The glasses I had bought are all broken. Where are those which were given to you? I have been in the place from which you brought this. What do they sell? What do they speak of? What can be more unfortunate? The room in which he sleeps, is damp.

Flowers,	<i>fleurs, f.</i>	Brought,	<i>apporté.</i>
Have gathered,	<i>avec cueillies.</i>	Will go,	<i>ira.</i>
Are faded,	<i>sont flétries.</i>	With them,	<i>avec eux.</i>
Children,	<i>les enfants, m.</i>	Will they say,	<i>ditons-ils.</i>
Obedient,	<i>obéissants.</i>	Was to marry,	<i>devait épouser.</i>
Loved,	<i>aimés.</i>	Dead,	<i>morte.</i>
By,	<i>de.</i>	Seek,	<i>cherchez.</i>
Every body,	<i>tout le monde.</i>	There,	<i>là.</i>
I have read,	<i>j'ai lu.</i>	Work,	<i>ouvrage, m.</i>
Letters,	<i>lettres, f.</i>	Speak,	<i>parlez.</i>
Have,	<i>avec.</i>	Chair,	<i>chaise, f.</i>
Written,	<i>écrites.</i>	Upon,	<i>sur.</i>
Gentleman,	<i>monsieur.</i>	You are,	<i>vous êtes.</i>
You speak,	<i>vous parlez.</i>	Sitting,	<i>assis.</i>
Friend,	<i>ami, m.</i>	Broken,	<i>cassé.</i>
Has he,	<i>a-t-il.</i>	Tell me,	<i>dites-moi.</i>
Neglected,	<i>négligé.</i>	Are going,	<i>allez.</i>
To fulfil,	<i>de remplir.</i>	Name,	<i>nommez.</i>
Duty,	<i>devoir, m.</i>	Towns,	<i>villes, f.</i>
You see,	<i>vous voyez.</i>	Went,	<i>avez passé.</i>
Lady,	<i>dame.</i>	Glasses,	<i>verres, m.</i>
I spoke to you,	<i>je vous ai parlé.</i>	Where,	<i>où.</i>
This is,	<i>voici.</i>	Place,	<i>endroit, m.</i>
Picture,	<i>tableau, m.</i>	Sell,	<i>vendent.</i>
Has,	<i>a.</i>	Unfortunate,	<i>malheureux.</i>
Bought,	<i>acheté.</i>	Room,	<i>chambre, f.</i>
Umbrella,	<i>parapluie, m.</i>	Sleeps,	<i>couche.</i>
I had,	<i>j'avais.</i>	Damp,	<i>humide.</i>

## OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns are words which only denote persons and things in a vague and indefinite manner. It

is because of this want of precision in their manner of designating them, that they are called indefinite.

These pronouns are :

<i>On,</i>	one, they, we, people.
<i>Quiconque,</i>	whoever, whosoever, any one who, any body who.
<i>Quelqu'un,</i>	somebody, some one, any body, any one.
<i>Chacun,</i>	each, every one.
<i>Autrui,</i>	others, other people.
<i>Personne,</i>	no one, no body, not any one.
<i>L'un l'autre,</i>	one another, each other.
<i>Tel,</i>	such a one, such a man, such a woman, he or she who.

N.B.—Observations on the above pronouns, with examples, and an exercise, will be found in the syntax.

## CHAPTER V.

### OF VERBS.

The verb is a word chiefly used to express affirmation.

#### EXAMPLES :

God is merciful,	<i>Dieu est miséricordieux.</i>
The world is not eternal,	<i>le monde n'est pas éternel.</i>

In the first instance, I affirm that the quality *merciful*, belongs to *God*; in the second, that that of *eternity* does not belong to the *world*. The word *is*, which in both sentences expresses the *affirmation*, is a verb: *God* and *world*, are the *subjects* of the verb, *merciful* and *eternal*, the *objects* or *attribute*.

There are six kinds of verbs :

The auxiliary, *les verbes auxiliaires*.

The active, *les verbes actifs*.

The passive, *les verbes passifs*.

The neuter, *les verbes neutres*.

The pronominal, *les verbes pronominaux*.

The unipersonal, *les verbes unipersonnels*.

The auxiliary verbs which are : to have, *avoir* ; and to

be, *être*; are so called because they serve in conjugating all the other verbs.

The active verb expresses an action done by an agent called the *nominative* or *subject*, and has, or may have, a direct object.

#### EXAMPLES:

The law protects all citizens, *la loi protège tous les citoyens.*  
Every body respects your father, *tout le monde respecte votre père.*

The passive verb is the contrary of the active; it expresses an action received or suffered by the subject of the verb, and performed by another.

#### EXAMPLES:

All citizens are protected by the law, *tous les citoyens sont protégés par la loi.*  
Your father is respected by every body, *votre père est respecté de tout le monde.*

Thus every active verb may be converted into a passive, and *vice versa*.\* The passive verb, however, is not much used by the French; they prefer using the active.

The neuter verb so called because it is neither active nor passive, merely expresses a state, or the acting, but not doing anything to another, as he sleeps, *il dort*; I walk, *je marche*; or an action directing itself toward its object by the help of a preposition; as,

To come from town, *Venir de la ville.*  
He injures your character, *Il nuit à votre réputation.*

Thus, *to sleep, walk, come, injure*, are neuter verbs, because, either the action performed by the subject of the verb cannot be received nor suffered by any object, or because it can only be so by the help of a preposition. A verb therefore is neuter that does not admit the words *quelqu'un, quelque chose*, after it.

Pronominal verbs are those which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, thus:—

\* The active verb *avoir*, and the passive verb *obéir*, are exceptions; for we cannot convert them and say *il est eu*, nor *j'obéis quelqu'un*.



*je me,*  
*tu te,*  
*il se,*

*nous nous.*  
*vous vous.*  
*ils se.*

They are invariably preceded in the present of the infinitive by the pronoun *se*, oneself.

There are three sorts of pronominal verbs.

1. The pronominal which indicates only a state, a disposition of the subject, as : to repent, *se repentir* ; to abstain, *s'abstenir*.

2. The reflexive verb which expresses an action reflected upon him who does it.

#### EXAMPLES :

I hurt myself,  
He dresses himself,

*je me fais mal.*  
*il s'habille.*

3. The reciprocal verb which expresses *reciprocity* between two or more subjects, and which consequently, has no singular.

#### EXAMPLES :

We quarrel,  
They fight,

*nous nous querellons.*  
*ils se battent.*

The *unipersonal\* verb* is that which is never used but in the third person singular. The word *il*, which precedes it, never represents any noun.

#### EXAMPLES :

It is necessary,  
It rains,  
It happens,

*il faut.*  
*il pleut.*  
*il arrive.*

Verbs have *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

### OF MOODS.

Moods are the different manners of using verbs.

---

\* Usually but improperly called *impersonal*.

There are in the French language five moods. They are :

The infinitive, *l'infinitif*.

The indicative, *l'indicatif*.

The conditional, *le conditionnel*.

The imperative, *l'impératif*.

The subjunctive, *le subjonctif*.

The infinitive mood affirms in an indefinite and indeterminate manner without any relation to number or person, as :

To give,	<i>donner.</i>
To have loved,	<i>avoir aimé.</i>

The indicative expresses affirmation in a direct and positive manner, as :

I see,	<i>je vois.</i>
He was laughing,	<i>il riait.</i>
We shall sing,	<i>nous chanterons.</i>

The conditional expresses affirmation with a condition, as :

I should read if I had books,	<i>je lirais si j'avais des livres.</i>
-------------------------------	---

The imperative is the manner of denoting in verbs, the action of *commanding, entreating, permitting, exhorting, forbidding, advising.*

#### EXAMPLES :

Love God,	<i> aimez Dieu.</i>
Serve him faithfully,	<i> servez-le fidèlement.</i>
Stop !	<i> Arrêtez.</i>
Let us look,	<i> regardons.</i>

The subjunctive mood expresses affirmation in a subordinate manner, and as dependent on another verb, to which it is always united by a conjunction.

I wish that you may succeed,	<i> je désire que vous RÉUSSISSIEZ.</i>
He must go there,	<i> il faut qu'il y AILLE.</i>

---

## OF TENSES, NUMBERS, AND PERSONS.

There are, strictly speaking, but three tenses in verbs, as :

The past or preterit,	<i>le passé ou prétérít.</i>
The present,	<i>le présent.</i>
The future,	<i>le futur.</i>

But as these are not sufficient to mark with accuracy incidental circumstances, the French have divided them.

The tenses of verbs are divided into *simple* and *compound*. Simple tenses consist of a simple word.

To work,	<i>travailler.</i>
He goes out,	<i>il sort.</i>
We knew,	<i>nous savions.</i>
They will hear,	<i>ils entendront.</i>

Compound tenses are formed with a tense of the verb *to have* or *to be*, and the participle past of any other. Ex :—

I have worked,	<i>j'ai TRAVAILLÉ.</i>
I had gone out,	<i>j'étais SORTI.</i>
If he had known,	<i>s'il avait SU.</i>
They would have heard,	<i>ils auraient ENTENDU.</i>

All the tenses will be given in the conjugations.

---

 OF NUMBERS.

There are in verbs, as well as in nouns, two numbers, the singular and the plural.

## OF PERSONS.

Each number has three persons.  
The first person is that who speaks.

Singular.			Plural.	
I,	<i>je,</i>		we,	<i>nous.</i>

The second is the person spoken to.

Singular.			Plural.	
thou,	<i>tu,</i>		you or ye,	<i>vous.*</i>
The third is that spoken of.				
Singular.			Plural.	
he, she,	<i>il, elle,</i>		they,	<i>ils, elles.</i>

## OF THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

To conjugate a verb is to give it different terminations according to its *moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.*

There are, in French, four† conjugations; they are distinguished by the termination of the present of the infinitive.

The	first	ends in	ER,	as <i>donner, travailler, porter.</i>
	second		IR,	„ <i>punir, avertir, bâtir.</i>
	third		OIR,	„ <i>recevoir, concevoir, décevoir.</i>
	fourth		RE,	„ <i>perdre, rendre, fondre.</i>

In each of these conjugations there are *regular, irregular, and defective* verbs.

A verb is *regular* when it coincides in all its tenses or forms with one of the four conjugations.

It is *irregular* when in some of its tenses or forms, it deviates from the rules by which regular verbs are conjugated.

Finally a verb is said to be *defective* when it wants some of its moods or tenses, or even when one of its tenses has not the usual number of persons.

The auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être* are irregular, and therefore should naturally be placed among the irregular

\* Politeness requires that we should say *vous* instead of *tu* in speaking to one person: *tu* in French is used only in addressing relations, intimate friends, or persons greatly inferior to ourselves. In high style. It is generally preferred to *vous*.

† Grammarians who have published *French Grammars* for the use of the English, do not agree as to the number of conjugations in French, which differs in their works according to their method of arranging them; for, the difference is in the arrangement only: we have given four conjugations, having invariably found by experience that it is, if not the best method, at least the most *easy* for the students at large, and altogether the best adapted to classes.

verbs ; but as they serve to form the compound tenses of all other verbs, their conjugation is generally and properly given first.

## CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB TO HAVE, *Avoir*.\*

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### *Simple Tenses.*

##### PRESENT.

To have,  
*Avoir.*

#### *Compound Tenses.*

##### PRETERIT.

To have had,  
*Avoir eu.*

##### PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Having,  
*Ayant.*

##### COMPOUND PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Having had,  
*Ayant eu.*

##### PAST PARTICIPLE.

Had,  
†*Eu, eue ; eus, eues.*

##### PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to have,  
*Devant avoir.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT.

I have,  
*J'ai.*  
Thou hast,  
*Tu as.*  
He has,  
*Il a.*  
She has,  
*Elle a.*  
We have,  
*Nous avons.*

##### PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have had,  
*J'ai eu.*  
Thou hast had,  
*Tu as eu.*  
He has had,  
*Il a eu.*  
She has had,  
*Elle a eu.*  
We have had,  
*Nous avons eu.*

\* In conjugating Verbs, the English should *always* be said, and said as it is here, *before* the French. The advantage of making the students repeat the Verbs in the manner in which they *naturally* present themselves to their minds, when they begin to speak, must be obvious.

† *Eu* in the *participle* and *preterit* of *avoir* sounds like a single French *u* ; but in every other instance *eu* is pronounced nearly (only rather *longer*) like the French syllables *pe, re*, which, together, might serve as an example giving the figurative pronunciation of the word *peureux* (timorous).

You have,  
*Vous avez.*

They have,  
*Ils or elles ont.*

## IMPERFECT.

I had,  
*J'avais.\**

Thou hadst,  
*Tu avais.*

He had,  
*Il avait.*

She had,  
*Elle avait.*

We had,  
*Nous avions.*

You had,  
*Vous aviez.*

They had,  
*Ils or elles avaient*

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I had,  
*J'eus.*

Thou hadst,  
*Tu eus.*

He had,  
*Il eut.*

She had,  
*Elle eut,*

We had,  
*Nous eûmes.†*

You had,  
*Vous eûtes.*

They had,  
*Ils or elles eurent.*

You have had,  
*Vous avez eu.*

They have had,  
*Ils or elles ont eu.*

## PLUPERFECT.

I had had,  
*J'avais eu.*

Thou hadst had,  
*Tu avais eu.*

He had had,  
*Il avait eu.*

She had had,  
*Elle avait eu.*

We had had,  
*Nous avions eu.*

You had had,  
*Vous aviez eu.*

They had had,  
*Ils or elles avaient eu.*

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had had,  
*J'eus eu.*

Thou hadst had,  
*Tu eus eu.*

He had had,  
*Il eut eu.*

She had had,  
*Elle eut eu.*

We had had,  
*Nous eûmes eu.*

You had had,  
*Vous eûtes eu.*

They had had,  
*Ils or elles eurent eu.*

\* Some authors still write the imperfect of French verbs with an *o*; but most Grammarians, as well as the *Academy* have adopted Voltaire's orthography, who substituted the *a* for the *o*.

† A circumflex accent (ˆ) is required over the last vowel of the last syllable but one, in the first and second persons plural of the preterit of the indicative in all verbs, as above.

## FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall *or* will have,  
*J'aurai.*

Thou wilt have,  
*Tu auras.*

He will have,  
*Il aura.*

She will have,  
*Elle aura.*

We shall *or* will have,  
*Nous aurons.*

You will have,  
*Vous aurez.*

They will have,  
*Ils or elles auront.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall *or* will have had,  
*J'aurai eu.*

Thou wilt have had,  
*Tu auras eu.*

He will have had,  
*Il aura eu.*

She will have had,  
*Elle aura eu.*

We shall *or* will have had,  
*Nous aurons eu.*

You will have had,  
*Vous aurez eu.*

They will have had,  
*Ils or elles auront eu.*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## PRESENT.

I should *or* would have,  
*J'aurais.*

Thou wouldst have,  
*Tu aurais.*

He would have,  
*Il aurait.*

She would have,  
*Elle aurait.*

We should *or* would have,  
*Nous aurions.*

You would have,  
*Vous auriez.*

They would have,  
*Ils or elles auraient.*

## PAST.

I should *or* would have had,  
*J'aurais eu.*

Thou wouldst have had,  
*Tu aurais eu.*

He would have had,  
*Il aurait eu.*

She would have had,  
*Elle aurait eu.*

We should *or* would have had,  
*Nous aurions eu.*

You would have had,  
*Vous auriez eu.*

They would have had,  
*Ils or elles auraient eu.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT OR FUTURE.

*No First Person in the Singular.*

Have (thou),  
Let him have,  
Let her have,  
Let us have,  
Have (ye or you),  
Let them have,

*Aie.*  
*Qu'il ait.*  
*Qu'elle ait.*  
*Ayez.*  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles aient.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

That I may have,  
*Que j'aie.*

That thou mayst have,  
*Que tu aies.*

That he may have,  
*Qu'il ait.\**

That she may have,  
*Qu'elle ait.*

That we may have,  
*Que nous ayons.*

That you may have,  
*Que vous ayez.*

That they may have,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles aient.*

## PRETERIT.

That I may have had,  
*Que j'aie eu.*

That thou mayst have had,  
*Que tu aies eu.*

That he may have had,  
*Qu'il ait eu.*

That she may have had,  
*Qu'elle ait eu.*

That we may have had,  
*Que nous ayons eu.*

That you may have had,  
*Que vous ayez eu.*

That they may have had,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles aient eu.*

## IMPERFECT

That I might have,  
*Que j'eusse.*

That thou mightst have,  
*Que tu eusses.*

That he might have,  
*Qu'il eût.†*

That she might have,  
*Qu'elle eût.*

That we might have,  
*Que nous eussions.*

That you might have,  
*Que vous eussiez.*

That they might have,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles eussent.*

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might have had,  
*Que j'eusse eu.*

That thou mightst have had,  
*Que tu eusses eu.*

That he might have had,  
*Qu'il eût eu.*

That she might have had,  
*Qu'elle eût eu.*

That we might have had,  
*Que nous eussions eu.*

That you might have had,  
*Que vous eussiez eu.*

That they might have had,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles eussent eu.*

\* We write *qu'il ait*, and not *qu'il aie*, and in the verb to be, the same person is written *qu'il soit* : these are the only exceptions to the general rule which requires the third person singular of the imperative, and that of the present of the subjunctive, to be terminated with *e* mute, in all verbs.

† A circumflex accent (ˆ) is required over the last vowel which comes before the *t* final, in the third person singular, of the imperfect of the subjunctive in all verbs.



## OF THE NEGATION AND INTERROGATION WITH VERBS.

The negation *no* or *not*, is commonly expressed in French by *ne* before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after it.\*

The interrogation is formed by inverting the order of the verb and pronoun, the latter being joined to the former by a hyphen.

## EXAMPLES.

We speak,	<i>nous parlons.</i>
We speak not, or do not speak,	<i>nous NE parlons PAS, or POINT.</i>
Do we speak?	<i>parlons-nous ?</i>
Do we not speak?	<i>NE parlons-nous PAS ?</i>

And in compound tenses thus :

We did speak, or have spoken,	<i>nous avons parlé.</i>
We did not speak, or have not spoken,	<i>nous N'AVONS PAS parlé.</i>
Did we speak, or have we spoken?	<i>avons-nous parlé ?</i>
Did we not speak, or have we not spoken?	<i>N'AVONS-nous PAS parlé ?</i>

OBSERVE.—In negative sentences *some*, *any*, *no*, or *a*, preceding nouns used as objects to a verb, must be rendered by *DE*, instead of *du*, *de*, *la*, *des*, or *un*, except in the cases mentioned in the note, on Rule XI. (See Syntax).

## EXAMPLES :

I have not <i>any</i> pencils,	<i>je n'ai pas DE crayons.</i>
He has <i>no</i> horse,	<i>il n'a pas DE cheval.</i>
We have not got <i>a</i> boat,	<i>nous n'avons pas DE bateau.</i>

EXERCISE ON THE VERB *avoir*.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.—I have a seal. Thou hast a chain. She has a necklace. We have some plate. You have a watch. They have rings.

*Negatively.*

I have not a seal. Thou hast no chain: She has no necklace. We have no plate. You have no watch. They have no rings.

*Interrogatively.*

Have I a seal? Hast thou a chain? Has she a necklace? Have we any plate? Have you a watch? Have they rings?

---

\* Except in the infinitive, where the negative *ne pas* or *ne point*, etc. precedes the verb, as : *ne pas parler*, *ne point entendre*.

*Interrogatively and Negatively.*

Have I not a seal? Hast thou not a chain? Has she not a necklace? Have we not some plate? Have you not a watch? Have they not rings?

Seal,	<i>cachet, m.</i>	Plate,	<i>argenterie, f.</i>
Chain,	<i>chaîne, f.</i>	Watch,	<i>montre, f.</i>
Necklace,	<i>collier, m.</i>	Rings,	<i>bagues, f.</i>

IMPERFECT.\*—I had a parlour. Thou hadst not a ware-house. The house had two staircases. His wife had a closet, and they had two drawing-rooms. Had you no cellar? The workmen had a better work-shop. They had a larger pantry.

Parlour,	<i>salle, f.</i>	Drawing-rooms,	<i>salons, m.</i>
Warehouse,	<i>magasin, m.</i>	Cellar,	<i>cave, f.</i>
House,	<i>maison, f.</i>	Workmen,	<i>ouvriers, m.</i>
Staircases,	<i>escaliers, m.</i>	Work-shop,	<i>atelier, m.</i>
Wife,	<i>épouse, femme.</i>	Larger,	<i>plus grand.</i>
A lady's closet,	<i>boudoir, m.</i>	Pantry,	<i>office, m.</i>
A gentleman's closet,	<i>cabinet, m.</i>		

PRETERIT.—His partner had one of the stables. After all, hadst thou the dressing-room? Who had his father's shop? We had all the materials. At last you had your reward. The poor woman had many sorrows.

Partner,	<i>associé, m.</i>	Materials,	<i>matériaux, m.</i>
Stables,	<i>écuries, f.</i>	At last,	<i>enfin.</i>
After all,	<i>après tout.</i>	Reward,	<i>récompense, f.</i>
Dressing-room,	<i>cabinet de toilette, m.</i>	Woman,	<i>femme.</i>
Shop,	<i>boutique, f.</i>	Many,	<i>bien des, beaucoup de.</i>
All,	<i>tous.</i>	Sorrows,	<i>chagrins, m.</i>

FUTURE.—I shall have a nosegay. Thou shalt have an opera-glass. Your cousin will have that † walking-stick. We shall not have all these pencils. Shall you have scissors? You shall have a pocket-book like this. They (m.) shall not have any money. Will they (f.) have needles and pins.

Nosegay,	<i>bouquet, m.</i>	Pocket-book,	<i>porte-feuille, m.</i>
Opera-glass,	<i>lorgnette, f.</i>	Like,	<i>semblable à.</i>
Walking-stick,	<i>canne, f.</i>	Money,	<i>argent, m.</i>
Pencil,	<i>crayon, m.</i>	Needles,	<i>aiguilles, f.</i>
Scissors,	<i>ciseaux, m.</i>	Pins,	<i>épingles, f.</i>

\* Negative and interrogative sentences will henceforth be intermixed.

† See page 37 what is said on the use of *ci* and *là* with *adjectives démonstratifs*.

**CONDITIONAL.**—I should not have the same purse. Wouldst thou have some snuff? Would he not have a snuff-box? Your sister would have a finer veil. We would have a chandelier in the room that<sup>e</sup> evening. You would not have a new sword. Would they (*m.*) have a coach-house? Would they (*f.*) not have a carriage.

Same,	<i>même.</i>	Chandelier,	<i>lustre, m.</i>
Purse,	<i>bourse, f.</i>	Sword,	<i>épée, f.</i>
Snuff,	<i>tabac, m.</i>	Coach-house,	<i>remise, f.</i>
Snuff-box,	<i>tabatière, f.</i>	Carriage,	<i>voiture, f.</i>
Veil,	<i>voile, m.</i>		

**IMPERATIVE.**—Have (thou) patience. Have no caprices. Let us have a little charity. Let us have no quarrels. Have (ye) better reasons to give. Have (ye) respect for his age.

Patience,	<i>patience, f.</i>	To give,	<i>à donner.</i>
Caprice,	<i>caprice, m.</i>	Respect,	<i>respect, m.</i>
Charity,	<i>charité, f.</i>	For,	<i>pour.</i>
Quarrel,	<i>querelle, f.</i>	Age,	<i>âge, m.</i>
Reasons,	<i>raisons, f.</i>		

**SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.**—I must have another pair of pumps. In order that thou mayst have thy gaiters. Before ye may have the cloth. In case she may not have some cambric. Although we may not have linen-cloth enough. For fear you may have trouble. Until they (*m.*) may have the whole of the second story. Provided they (*f.*) have prudence.

I must,	<i>il faut que je.</i>	Although,	<i>quoique.</i>
Another pair,	<i>une autre paire.</i>	Linen cloth enough,	<i>assez de linge, m.</i>
Pumps,	<i>escarpins, m.</i>	For fear,	<i>de crainte que.†</i>
In order,	<i>afin que.</i>	Trouble,	<i>peine.</i>
Gaiters,	<i>guêtres, f.</i>	Until,	<i>jusqu'à ce que.</i>
Before,	<i>avant que.</i>	The whole of,	<i>tout.</i>
Cloth,	<i>drap, m.</i>	Second story,	<i>second étage, m.</i>
In case,	<i>en cas que.</i>	Provided,	<i>pourvu que.</i>
Cambric,	<i>batiste, f.</i>	Prudence,	<i>prudence, f.</i>

**IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.**—I was obliged to have the key. Thou must have had many friends. Let us suppose that he had their talents. Whether we had the means or not. You must have had courage. Until they had a house. Though they (*f.*) had leave.

I was obliged,	<i>il fallait que je.</i>	Means or not,	<i>moyens ou non.</i>
Key,	<i>cléf, f.</i>	You must,	<i>il fallait que vous.</i>
Thou must,	<i>il fallait que tu.</i>	Courage,	<i>courage, m.</i>
Many friends,	<i>beaucoup d'amis.</i>	Until,	<i>jusqu'à ce que.</i>
Let us suppose that,	<i>supposons que.</i>	House,	<i>maison, f.</i>
Talent,	<i>talent, m.</i>	Though,	<i>quoique.</i>
Whether,	<i>soit que.</i>	Leave,	<i>permission, f.</i>

\* See page 37, the remarks on *et* and *là*.

† This conjunction requires *ne* before the following verb.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES OF *avoir*.

I have had a mill. Thou hadst not had English razors. Will he have had the cart? Will she not have had enough wax-lights? We would have had a gig. Ye would not have had the other medal. Would they have had the prints? He would have had a larger library. He has not had the same glasses as you. She had had already three dozen napkins. Would he not have had all the workmen? Has Mrs. B—\* had all the patterns? Has not her grandfather had the gout? For fear she may have had no rest. Until they might have had their freedom. In case you should not have had time. Although they had had money.

Mill,	<i>moulin, m.</i>	As you,	<i>que vous.</i>
English razors,	<i>rasoirs anglais, m.</i>	Dosen,	<i>doussaines.</i>
Cart,	<i>charette, f.</i>	Napkins,	<i>serviettes, f.</i>
Enough,	<i>assez de.</i>	Workmen,	<i>ouvriers, m.</i>
Wax-lights,	<i>bougies, f.</i>	Patterns,	<i>échantillons, m.</i>
Gig,	<i>cabriolet, m.</i>	Gout,	<i>goutte, f.</i>
Medal,	<i>médaille, f.</i>	Rest,	<i>repos, m.</i>
Prints,	<i>estampes, f.</i>	Freedom,	<i>liberté, f.</i>
Library,	<i>bibliothèque, f.</i>	Time,	<i>le temps.</i>
Glasses,	<i>verres, m.</i>	Money,	<i>argent, m.</i>

## CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB TO BE.—*ETRE*.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### *Simple Tenses.*

#### *Compound Tenses.*

##### PRESENT.

##### PRETERIT.

To be,  
*Etre,*

To have been.  
*Avoir été.*

##### PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

##### COMPOUND PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Being,  
*Etant,*

Having been.  
*Ayant été.*

---

\* Whenever an interrogative sentence begins with a noun, the noun is placed first, and a corresponding pronoun, as in the examples already given, immediately after the verb, as: is Mr. B... generous? *M. B... est-il généreux?* Observe, also, that if the third person of a verb used interrogatively ends with a vowel, *-t-* is placed between the verb and the pronoun which follows it, thus: has your brother done? *voire frère a-t-il fini?*

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

Been,  
*Été.\**

## PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

About to be,  
*Devant être.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

I am,  
*Je suis.*

Thou art,  
*Tu es.*

He is,  
*Il est.*

She is,  
*Elle est.*

We are,  
*Nous sommes.*

You are,  
*Vous êtes.*

They are,  
*Ils or elles sont.*

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have been,  
*J'ai été.*

Thou hast been,  
*Tu as été.*

He has been,  
*Il a été.*

She has been,  
*Elle a été.*

We have been,  
*Nous avons été.*

You have been,  
*Vous avez été.*

They have been,  
*Ils or elles ont été.*

## IMPERFECT.

I was,  
*J'étais.*

Thou wast,  
*Tu étais.*

He was,  
*Il était.*

She was,  
*Elle était.*

We were,  
*Nous étions.*

You were,  
*Vous étiez.*

They were,  
*Ils or elles étaient.*

## PLUPERFECT.

I had been,  
*J'avais été.*

Thou hadst been,  
*Tu avais été.*

He had been,  
*Il avait été.*

She had been,  
*Elle avait été.*

We had been,  
*Nous avions été.*

You had been,  
*Vous aviez été.*

They had been,  
*Ils or elles avaient été.*

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I was,  
*Je fus.*

Thou wast,  
*Tu fus.*

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had been,  
*J'eus été.*

Thou hadst been,  
*Tu eus été.*

---

\* The past participle *été* never changes its termination, whether it be used with reference to a substantive masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

He was,  
*Il fut.*

She was,  
*Elle fut.*

We were,  
*Nous fûmes.*

You were,  
*Vous fûtes.*

They were,  
*Ils or elles furent.*

He had been,  
*Il eut été.*

She had been,  
*Elle eut été.*

We had been,  
*Nous eûmes été.*

You had been,  
*Vous eûtes été.*

They had been,  
*Ils or elles eurent été.*

#### FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall or will be,  
*Je serai.*

Thou wilt be,  
*Tu seras.*

He will be,  
*Il sera.*

She will be,  
*Elle sera.*

We shall or will be,  
*Nous serons.*

You will be,  
*Vous serez.*

They will be,  
*Ils or elles seront.*

#### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall or will have been,  
*J'aurai été.*

Thou wilt have been,  
*Tu auras été.*

He will have been,  
*Il aura été.*

She will have been,  
*Elle aura été.*

We shall or will have been,  
*Nous aurons été.*

You will have been,  
*Vous aurez été.*

They will have been,  
*Ils or elles auront été.*

### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

I should or would be,  
*Je serais.*

Thou wouldst be,  
*Tu serais.*

He would be,  
*Il serait.*

She would be,  
*Elle serait.*

We should or would be,  
*Nous serions.*

You would be,  
*Vous seriez.*

They would be,  
*Ils or elles seraient.*

#### PAST.

I should or would have been,  
*J'aurais or j'eusse été.*

Thou wouldst have been,  
*Tu aurais or tu eusses été.*

He would have been,  
*Il aurait or il eût été.*

She would have been,  
*Elle aurait or elle eût été.*

We should or would have been,  
*Nous aurions or nous eussions été.*

You would have been,  
*Vous auriez or vous eussiez été.*

They would have been,  
*Ils or elles auraient, or ils or elles eussent été.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT AND FUTURE.

Be (thou),	<i>Sois.</i>
Let him be,	<i>Qu'il soit.</i>
Let her be,	<i>Qu'elle soit.</i>
Let us be,	<i>Soyons.</i>
Be (ye or you),	<i>Soyez.</i>
Let them be,	<i>Qu'ils or qu'elles soient.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

That I may be,
<i>Que je sois.</i>
That thou mayst be,
<i>Que tu sois.</i>
That he may be,
<i>Qu'il soit.</i>
That she may be,
<i>Qu'elle soit.</i>
That we may be,
<i>Que nous soyons.</i>
That you may be,
<i>Que vous soyez.</i>
That they may be,
<i>Qu'ils or qu'elles soient.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

That I might be,
<i>Que je fusse.</i>
That thou mightst be,
<i>Que tu fusses.</i>
That he might be,
<i>Qu'il fût.</i>
That she might be,
<i>Qu'elle fût.</i>
That we might be,
<i>Que nous fussions.</i>
That you might be,
<i>Que vous fussiez.</i>
That they might be,
<i>Qu'ils or qu'elles fussent.</i>

## PRETERIT.

That I may have been,
<i>Que j'aie été.</i>
That thou mayst have been,
<i>Que tu aies été.</i>
That he may have been,
<i>Qu'il ait été.</i>
That she may have been,
<i>Qu'elle ait été.</i>
That we may have been,
<i>Que nous ayons été.</i>
That you may have been,
<i>Que vous ayez été.</i>
That they may have been,
<i>Qu'ils or qu'elles aient été.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might have been,
<i>Que j'eusse été.</i>
That thou mightst have been,
<i>Que tu eusses été.</i>
That he might have been,
<i>Qu'il eût été.</i>
That she might have been,
<i>Qu'elle eût été.</i>
That we might have been,
<i>Que nous eussions été.</i>
That you might have been,
<i>Que vous eussiez été.</i>
That they might have been,
<i>Qu'ils or qu'elles eussent été.</i>

EXERCISE ON THE VERB *être*.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.—I am not ill. Thou art sad. Is he quiet? Is she not fearful? We are rash. Ye are not serious. Are these clothes dry? Are they not thoughtful? Is his uncle generous? Is not your sister married?

Ill,	<i>malade.</i>	Clothes,	<i>vêtements, m.</i>
Sad,	<i>triste.</i>	Dry,	<i>secs, p.</i>
Quiet,	<i>tranquille.</i>	Thoughtful,	<i>pensifs, p.</i>
Fearful,	<i>crainctif.</i>	Generous,	<i>généreux.</i>
Rash,	<i>sévéraires, p.</i>	Married,	<i>mariés, f.</i>
Serious,	<i>sérieux.</i>		

IMPERFECT.—I was not heavy. He was wise. We were not prodigal. Were you obedient? Were they not pious? She was little. Were they (*f*) not unhappy? His brother was more gentle. Was yours as passionate?

Heavy,	<i>pesant.</i>	Unhappy,	<i>malheureuxes, f. p.</i>
Wise,	<i>sage.</i>	More,	<i>plus.</i>
Prodigal,	<i>prodigues, p.</i>	Gentle,	<i>doux.</i>
Obedient,	<i>obéissant.</i>	As,	<i>aussi.</i>
Pious,	<i>pieux.</i>	Passionate,	<i>coléreux.</i>
Little,	<i>petite, f.</i>		

PRETERIT.—I was uneasy. My father was rewarded for his services to the state. Was she bled? Was not your cousin ashamed? We were delighted. Ye were not industrious. They were troublesome. Were his servants honest?

Uneasy,	<i>inquiet.</i>	Ashamed,	<i>honteux.</i>
Rewarded for,	<i>récompensé de.</i>	Delighted,	<i>charmés.</i>
Services,	<i>services, m.</i>	Industrious,	<i>diligent.</i>
State,	<i>état.</i>	Troublesome,	<i>importuns.</i>
Bled,	<i>saignée, f.</i>	Honest,	<i>honnêtes.</i>

FUTURE.—I shall be faithful. Thou shalt not be punished. Will he be just? Will she not be useless? Will Mr. A be satisfied? Shall we not be hoarse? You will be tired. They will not be envious. That will be tedious.

Faithful,	<i>fidèle.</i>	Hoarse,	<i>enroués, p.</i>
Punished,	<i>puni.</i>	Tired,	<i>fatigués.</i>
Just,	<i>juste.</i>	Envious,	<i>envieux.</i>
Useless,	<i>inutile.</i>	Tedious,	<i>ennuyeux.</i>
Satisfied,	<i>content.</i>		

CONDITIONAL.—I should be unjust. Wouldst thou be so weak. He would be more courteous. Would she not be very glad? That would be doubtful. You would not be bold enough. Would you



not be too slow? Would they not be ungrateful? This room would be too large; that one too small; and neither would be high enough.

Unjust,	<i>injuste.</i>	Slow,	<i>lent.</i>
Weak,	<i>faible.</i>	Ungrateful,	<i>ingratis, p.</i>
Courteous,	<i>affable.</i>	Large,	<i>grande, f.</i>
Very glad,	<i>bien aise.</i>	Small,	<i>petite, f.</i>
Doubtful,	<i>douteux.</i>	Neither,	<i>ni l'une ni l'autre ne.</i>
Bold enough,	<i>assez hardi.</i>	High enough,	<i>assez haute.</i>

IMPERATIVE.—Be (thou) humane. Be not greedy. Let us be charitable. Let us not be avaricious. Be (ye) prudent. Do not be unpolite.

Humane,	<i>humain.</i>	Avaricious,	<i>avares.</i>
Greedy,	<i>gourmand.</i>	Prudent,	<i>prudents, p.</i>
Charitable,	<i>charitables, p.</i>	Unpolite,	<i>malthonnête.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.—In order that I may be received. Before thou art gone. In case he may be arrived.—Unless\* she is gone. Though Mr. A. is stronger. Until we are settled.—Provided you are here in time. Without their being seen. Suppose your friends are present.

In order that,	<i>afin que.</i>	Until,	<i>jusqu'à ce que.</i>
Received,	<i>reçu.</i>	Settled,	<i>établi, p.</i>
Before,	<i>avant que.</i>	Provided,	<i>pourvu que.</i>
Gone,	<i>parti.</i>	Here in time,	<i>ici à temps.</i>
In case,	<i>en cas que.</i>	Without their,	<i>sans qu'ils,</i>
Arrived,	<i>arrivé.</i>	Seen,	<i>vus.</i>
Though,	<i>quoique.</i>	Suppose,	<i>supposé que.</i>
Strong,	<i>fort.</i>	Present,	<i>présents, m.p.</i>

IMPERFECT.—I must have been mad. Thou must have been absent. It was necessary that he should be examined. She must have been very weak. It was necessary we should be together. Though you were better prepared. They must have been guilty.

I must,	<i>il fallait que je.</i>	Weak,	<i>faible.</i>
Mad,	<i>fou, m.</i>	Together,	<i>ensemble.</i>
Thou must,	<i>il fallait que tu.</i>	Though,	<i>quoique.</i>
Absent,	<i>absent.</i>	Prepared,	<i>préparé.</i>
It was necessary,	<i>il fallait.</i>	They must,	<i>il fallait qu'ils.</i>
Examined,	<i>examiné.</i>	Guilty,	<i>coupables, p.</i>
She must,	<i>il fallait qu'elle.</i>		

\* The conjunction *à moins que*, (unless,) requires *ne* before the following verb.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON THE COMPOUND TENSES OF *être*.

I have been a soldier. Has he been pleased? We had not been paid. Had they been reprimanded? He will have been detained. Will she not have been surprised? Will they have been invited? Would he have been punished? Would you not have been the first? We should have been twelve. Would they have been understood? Would not Mr. D. have been taken in? Would your father have been appointed? In case he has been ill. Before he has been taken. Although she has been warned. Suppose they had been killed. Before you had been heard.

A soldier,	<i>soldat.</i>	Appointed,	<i>nommé.</i>
Pleased,	<i>content.</i>	Ill,	<i>malade.</i>
Paid,	<i>payés, p.</i>	Taken,	<i>pris.</i>
Reprimanded,	<i>réprimandés, p.</i>	Although,	<i>quoique.</i>
Detained,	<i>détenu.</i>	Warned,	<i>avertie, f.</i>
Surprised,	<i>surpris, f.</i>	Suppose,	<i>supposé.</i>
Invited,	<i>invités, p.</i>	Killed,	<i>tué, p.</i>
Punished,	<i>puni.</i>	Before,	<i>avant.</i>
Understood,	<i>compris.</i>	Heard,	<i>entendu.</i>
Taken in,	<i>trompé.</i>		

The verb *avoir* serves to conjugate :

1. Its own compound tenses.
2. Those of the verb *être*.
3. Those of all active, unipersonal, and of upwards of 550 (out of 600) neuter verbs.

The verb *être* serves to conjugate :

1. All passive verbs through all their tenses.
2. The compound tenses of all pronominal verbs.
3. Those of some neuter verbs, a list of which will be given in the general remarks on verbs at the end of the four conjugations.

## OF REGULAR VERBS.

We have already explained that there are, in French, four conjugations. ER, IR, EVOIR, and RE, are the only variable letters in regular verbs ; the syllable, or syllables preceding, being the *radical*, or the *root* of the verb, that part remains invariable throughout the different conjugations.

## PARADIGM,

OR MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION IN *er*TO SPEAK, *PARLER*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## INFINITIVE.

To speak, *parler.*

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Speaking, *parlant.*

## PARTICIPLE PAST.

Spoken, *parlé.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.\*

## IMPERFECT.

I speak, do speak, *or* am speaking,  
*Je parle.*I was speaking,  
*Je parlais.*Thou speakest, dost speak, *or* art  
speaking,  
*Tu parles.*Thou wast speaking,  
*Tu parlais.*Hespeaks, does speak, *or* is speak-  
ing,  
*Il parle.*He was speaking,  
*Il parlait.*She speaks, does speak, *is*  
speaking.  
*Elle parle.*She was speaking,  
*Elle parlait.*We speak, do speak, *or* are speak-  
ing.  
*Nous parlons.*We were speaking,  
*Nous parlions.*You speak, do speak, *or* are speak-  
ing.  
*Vous parlez.*You, *or* ye were speaking.  
*Vous parliez.*They speak, do speak, *or* are  
speaking.  
*Ils or Elles parlent.*They were speaking,  
*Ils or Elles parlaient.*


---

\* The auxiliary *do* or *does*, which the English use in affirmative, negative, and interrogative sentences, is not expressed in French.

## PRÆTERIT INDEFINITE.

have spoken,  
*J'ai parlé, etc.*

## PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

I spoke,  
*Je parlai.*

Thou spakest,  
*Tu parlas.*

He spoke.  
*Il parla.*

She spoke,  
*Elle parla.*

We spoke,  
*Nous parlâmes.*

You spoke,  
*Vous parlâtes.*

They spoke,  
*Ils or Elles parlèrent.*

## PRÆTERIT ANTERIOR.

I had spoken,  
*J'eus parlé, etc.*

## PLUPERFECT.

I had spoken,  
*J'avais parlé, etc.*

## FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall or will speak,  
*Je parlerai.*

Thou wilt speak,  
*Tu parleras.*

He will speak,  
*Il parlera.*

She will speak,  
*Elle parlera.*

We shall or will speak,  
*Nous parlerons.*

You will speak,  
*Vous parlerez.*

They will speak,  
*Ils or Elles parleront.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have spoken,  
*J'aurai parlé, etc.*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## PRESENT.

I should or would speak,  
Thou wouldst speak,  
He would speak,  
She would speak,  
We should or would speak,  
You would speak,  
They would speak,

*Je parlerais.*  
*Tu parlerais.*  
*Il parlerait.*  
*Elle parlerait.*  
*Nous parlerions.*  
*Vous parleriez.*  
*Ils or Elles parleraient.*

## PAST.

I should have spoken,

*J'aurais, or j'eusse parlé, etc.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Speak (thou),  
Let him speak,  
Let her speak,  
Let us speak,  
Speak (ye) or you,  
Let them speak,

*Parle.*  
*Qu'il parle.*  
*Qu'elle parle.*  
*Parlons.*  
*Parlez.*  
*Qu'ils or Qu'elles parlent!*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

That I may speak,  
*Que je parle.*

That thou mayst speak,  
*Que tu parles.*

That he may speak,  
*Qu'il parle.*

That she may speak,  
*Qu'elle parle.*

That we may speak.  
*Que nous parlions.*

That you may speak,  
*Que vous parliez.*

That they may speak,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles parlent.*

## IMPERFECT.

That I might speak,  
*Que je parlasse.*

That thou mightst speak,  
*Que tu parlasses.*

That he might speak,  
*Qu'il parlât.*

That she might speak,  
*Qu'elle parlât.*

That we might speak,  
*Que nous parlussions.*

That you might speak,  
*Que vous parlassiez.*

That they might speak,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles parlissent.*

## PRETERIT.

That I may have spoken,  
*Que j'aie parlé, etc.*

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might have spoken.  
*Que j'eusse parlé, etc.*

## REMARKS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF THE VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

In order to preserve to the *c* the soft sound of *s*, in verbs ending in *cer*, as *avancer*, *annoncer*, etc., the *c* takes a cedilla (*ç*) when coming immediately before the vowels *a* or *o*, as *nous avançons*, *vous annonçons*.

For a similar reason, in verbs ending in *ger*, as *changer*, the *e* is not dropped before *a* or *o*. Write, therefore, *changeons*, *jugea*, not *changons*, *juga*.

In verbs in *eler*, *eter*, the *l* and *t* are doubled when followed by *e*, *es*, *ent*, as *je jette*, *tu appelles*, *ils étincellent*. Except the following: *bourreler*, *congeler*, *déceler*, *geler*, *harceler*, *peler*, *réceler*, *acheter*, *colleter*, *coqueter*, *décolleter*, *étiqueter*, *trompeter*, which take a grave accent (') over the *e* preceding the *l* or *t*, as *il pèle*, he peels; *qu'ils achètent*, let them buy.

The principles of harmony require the *e* short (*é*), which in the infinitive of some verbs of the first conjugation precedes the final syllable, should be changed into *e* long (*è*) when there is an *e* mute in the syllable which follows. The terminations which suffer that change are :

<i>ébrer</i>	as	<i>célébrer,</i>	Ex :	<i>je célèbre.</i>
<i>écor</i>	,,	<i>raplécor,</i>	,,	<i>tu raplécor.</i>
<i>écher</i>	,,	<i>sécher,</i>	,,	<i>il sèche.</i>
<i>éder</i>	,,	<i>posséder,</i>	,,	<i>qu'elle possède.</i>
<i>égler</i>	,,	<i>régler,</i>	,,	<i>régle.</i>
<i>éguer</i>	,,	<i>régner,</i>	,,	<i>il règne.</i>
<i>égrer</i>	,,	<i>réintégrer,</i>	,,	<i>il réintégrera.</i>
<i>éguer</i>	,,	<i>léguer,</i>	,,	<i>je léguerai.</i>
<i>éler</i>	,,	<i>céler,</i>	,,	<i>elle célera.</i>
<i>équer</i>	,,	<i>hypothéquer,</i>	,,	<i>il hypothéque.</i>
<i>éter</i>	,,	<i>différer,</i>	,,	<i>que tu diffères.</i>
<i>éler</i>	,,	<i>répéter,</i>	,,	<i>il répètera.</i>
<i>étrer</i>	,,	<i>pénétrer,</i>	,,	<i>tu pénétreras.</i>

## TO WHICH MAY BE ADDED

<i>emer</i>	as	<i>semer</i>	Ex :	<i>qu'elle sème.</i>
<i>ener</i>	,,	<i>mener,</i>	,,	<i>je mènerai.</i>

The *y*, which in some verbs of the first conjugation, precedes *er*, is changed into *i* when it comes immediately before *e* mute.

## EXAMPLES.

*Payer, je paie, nous paierons.*  
*Employer, j'emploie, nous emploierions.*

OBSERVE.—All verbs of which the participle present ends in *yant* suffer the same change when *ant*, is turned into *e*, *es*, *ent*, as : *croyant, qu'ils croient.*

## EXERCISE ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.—I adore God. What dost thou ask? Does he not blame your conduct? She does not dance well. Your friend prefers pleasure to study. We do not ask too much. You neglect nothing. They approve your project. The children are looking at your picture. Her sisters are singing.

To adore,	<i>adorer.</i>	To study,	<i>à l'étude.</i>
What,	<i>que.</i>	Too much,	<i>trop.</i>
To ask,	<i>demander.</i>	To neglect nothing,	<i>ne négliger rien.</i>
To blame,	<i>blamer.</i>	To approve,	<i>approuver.</i>
Conduct,	<i>conduite, f.</i>	Project,	<i>projet, m.</i>
To dance,	<i>danser.</i>	To look at,	<i>regarder.</i>
To prefer,	<i>préférer.</i>	Picture,	<i>portrait, m.</i>
Pleasure,	<i>le plaisir.</i>	To sing,	<i>chanter.</i>

IMPERFECT.—I was shutting the door. He was speaking of France. Wast thou not crying? Was he studying his lesson? Mrs. B. was scolding her children. We were not playing at that time. Were you not correcting your mistakes while he was speaking? The bees were sucking the cups of the flowers. Your friends were sealing their letters. The maid was sweeping the room. The Romans respected old age.

To shut,	<i>fermer.</i>
Door,	<i>porte, f.</i>
Of France,	<i>de la France.</i>
To cry,	<i>pleurer.</i>
To study,	<i>étudier.</i>
Lesson,	<i>leçon, f.</i>
Mrs.	<i>Madame.</i>
To scold,	<i>gronder.</i>
Children,	<i>enfants, p.</i>
To play,	<i>jouer.</i>
At that time,	<i>alors.</i>
To correct,	<i>corriger.</i>
Mistakes,	<i>fautes, f.</i>

While,	<i>pendant que.</i>
Bees,	<i>abeilles, f.</i>
To suck,	<i>sucer.</i>
Cups,	<i>calices, m.</i>
Flowers,	<i>fleurs, f.</i>
To seal,	<i>cacheter.</i>
Letters,	<i>lettres, f.</i>
Maid,	<i>servante or fille.</i>
To sweep,	<i>balayer.</i>
Romans,	<i>Romains.</i>
To respect,	<i>respecter.</i>
Old age,	<i>la vieillesse.</i>

**PRÆTERIT**—I breakfasted with him. I requested Mr. A. to repeat his verses. The gardener watered his plants yesterday. We began on that day at six in the morning. You forgot an essential circumstance. They imitated their ancestors. The Dutch rejected our proposals. We neglected his friendship. You began too soon.

To breakfast,	<i>déjeuner.</i>
With him,	<i>avec lui.</i>
To request,	<i>prier.</i>
To repeat,	<i>de réciter.</i>
Verses,	<i>vers, m.</i>
Gardener,	<i>jardinier, m.</i>
To water,	<i>arroser.</i>
Plants,	<i>plantes, f.</i>
Yesterday,	<i>hier.</i>
To begin,	<i>commencer.</i>
On that day,	<i>ce jour là.</i>
Six in the morning,	<i>Six heures du matin.</i>

To forget,	<i>oublier.</i>
Essential	<i>circum-</i>
stance,	<i>circonstance essen-</i>
To imitate,	<i>imiter.</i>
Ancestor,	<i>aïeul.</i>
Dutch,	<i>Hollandais.</i>
To reject,	<i>rejeter.</i>
Proposals,	<i>propositions, f.</i>
To neglect,	<i>négliger.</i>
Friendship,	<i>amitié, f.</i>
To begin,	<i>commencer.</i>
Too soon,	<i>trop tôt.</i>

**FUTURE**.—I will humble his pride. Wilt thou buy that watch? He will astonish his hearers. We shall not prefer pleasure to glory, and riches to honour. We shall publish all the particulars of this affair. Will you not comfort that afflicted family? They will decide the question. The French will declare war. My letter will undeceive that gentleman. What shall we give to that lady?

To humble,	<i>humilier.</i>
Pride,	<i>orgueil, m.</i>
To buy,	<i>acheter.</i>
Watch,	<i>montre, f.</i>
To astonish,	<i>étonner.</i>
Hearers,	<i>auditeurs, m.</i>
To prefer,	<i>préférer.</i>
Pleasure,	<i>le plaisir.</i>
Glory,	<i>la gloire.</i>
Riches,	<i>richesses, f.</i>
Honour,	<i>honneur, m.</i>

To publish,	<i>publier.</i>
Particulars,	<i>détails, m.</i>
To comfort,	<i>consoler.</i>
Afflicted family,	<i>famille affligée.</i>
To decide,	<i>décider.</i>
French,	<i>Français.</i>
To declare war,	<i>déclarer la guerre.</i>
To undeceive,	<i>déromper.</i>
Gentleman,	<i>monsieur.</i>
To give,	<i>donner.</i>
Lady,	<i>dame.</i>

**CONDITIONAL**.—I would reward his merit. Would he bring some money? He would fly to your assistance. Would you reform your conduct? Would they not finish this book in time? Their master would gladly praise their good conduct. Would the judge condemn all the prisoners?

To reward,	<i>récompenser.</i>
Merit,	<i>mérite, m.</i>
To bring,	<i>apporter.</i>
Money,	<i>argent, m.</i>
To fly,	<i>voler.</i>
Assistance,	<i>secours, m.</i>
To reform,	<i>réformer.</i>
Conduct,	<i>conduite, f.</i>

To finish,	<i>achever.</i>
In time,	<i>à temps.</i>
Master,	<i>maître.</i>
Gladly to praise,	<i>louer avec plaisir.</i>
Judge,	<i>juge, m.</i>
To condemn,	<i>condamner.</i>
Prisoners,	<i>prisonniers, m.</i>

IMPERATIVE.\*—Sacrifice thy interest to the public good. Let us love justice, peace, and virtue. Let us not advance. Appease your anger. Let him give up that ridiculous project. Give a chair to that young lady. Let them not come up, for I am engaged. Do not shut the shutters.

To sacrifice,	<i>sacrifier.</i>
Interest,	<i>intérêt, m.</i>
Public good,	<i>bien public.</i>
Peace,	<i>paix, f.</i>
Virtue,	<i>vertu, f.</i>
To advance,	<i>avancer.</i>
To appease,	<i>apaiser.</i>
Anger,	<i>colère, f.</i>
To give up,	<i>renoncer à.</i>

Ridiculous project,	<i>projet ridicule, m.</i>
Chair,	<i>chaise, f.</i>
Young lady,	<i>demoiselle.</i>
To come up,	<i>monter.</i>
For,	<i>car.</i>
To be engaged,	<i>être occupé.</i>
To shut,	<i>fermer.</i>
Shutters,	<i>volets, m.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.—Before I give this rose to my sister. In order that thou mayest admire the beauty of that landscape. Provided you do not forget to show them to Mr. A. We must thank your father-in-law. Until you may find your key. Suppose he does not propose a more salutary advice? Unless you avoid his company. Whether you pay or not.

Before,	<i>avant que.</i>
Rose,	<i>rose, f.</i>
In order,	<i>afin que.</i>
To admire,	<i>admirer.</i>
Landscape,	<i>paysage, m.</i>
Provided,	<i>pourvu que.</i>
To forget,	<i>oublier.</i>
To show them,	<i>de les montrer.</i>
We must,	<i>il faut que.</i>
To thank,	<i>remercier.</i>
Father-in-law,	<i>beau-père.</i>

Until,	<i>jusqu'à ce que.</i>
To find,	<i>trouver.</i>
Key,	<i>clef, f.</i>
Suppose,	<i>supposé que.</i>
To propose,	<i>proposer.</i>
More salutary advice,	<i>avis plus salutaire.</i>
Unless,	<i>à moins que.*</i>
To avoid,	<i>éviter.</i>
Whether,	<i>soit que.</i>

IMPERFECT.—Unless I gave up those perfidious friends. In case thou mightest change thy opinion. For fear he should fall into their hands. Although they should exercise their talents. In order that they might not speak at random. Provided they did not listen. Before they surmounted the obstacles. In case they did not respect the laws of their country.

---

\* When the second person singular of the imperative of a verb ends in *e* mute an *s* with two hyphens (*-s*) is added before *en* and *y*, as: *donne-s-en à ton ami*, give some to thy friend; *mène-s-y ton frère*, take thy brother thither.



Unless,	<i>à moins que.*</i>	Talents,	<i>talents, m.</i>
To give up,	<i>abandonner.</i>	In order,	<i>afin que.</i>
Perfidious friends,	<i>amis perfides, m.</i>	At random,	<i>à tort et à travers.</i>
In case,	<i>en cas que.</i>	Listen,	<i>écouter.</i>
To change,	<i>changer.</i>	To surmount,	<i>surmonter.</i>
For fear,	<i>de crainte que.*</i>	Obstacles,	<i>obstacles, m.</i>
To fall,	<i>tomber.</i>	To respect,	<i>respecter.</i>
Into their hands,	<i>dans leurs mains.</i>	Laws,	<i>lois, f.</i>
Although,	<i>quoique.</i>	Country,	<i>pays, m.</i>
To exercise,	<i>exercer.</i>		

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES OF THE VERBS IN *cr.*

I have already studied Italian. Hadst thou brought thy account? Did he gain his cause? Did you not forget your gloves? Had your master corrected your exercise? Stay here till we have dined. Would he have assisted his companions? Shall you soon have counted your change? Had not the servant lighted the lamp? Whether you have accepted his offers or not. In case he should have denied the fact. Until he has triumphed over his enemies. Has the postman brought any letters? Suppose he has added something. In case he should have burnt his papers.

Already,	<i>déjà.</i>	To count,	<i>compter.</i>
To study,	<i>étudier.</i>	Change,	<i>monnaie, f.</i>
Italian,	<i>l'Italien or la langue Italienne.</i>	To light,	<i>allumer.</i>
To bring,	<i>apporter.</i>	Lamp,	<i>lampe, f.</i>
Account,	<i>compte, mémoire, m.</i>	Whether,	<i>soit que.†</i>
To gain,	<i>gagner.</i>	To accept,	<i>accepter.</i>
Cause,	<i>cause, f.</i>	Offers,	<i>offres, f.</i>
To forget,	<i>oublier.</i>	Or not,	<i>ou non.</i>
Gloves,	<i>gants, m.</i>	In case,	<i>en cas que.†</i>
To correct,	<i>corriger.</i>	To deny,	<i>nier.</i>
Exercise,	<i>thème, m.</i>	Fact,	<i>fait, m.</i>
To stay,	<i>rester.</i>	Until,	<i>jusqu'à ce que.†</i>
Here,	<i>ici.</i>	To triumph,	<i>triompher.</i>
Till,	<i>jusqu'à ce que.†</i>	Over,	<i>de.</i>
To dine,	<i>dîner.</i>	Enemies,	<i>ennemis, m.</i>
To assist,	<i>aider.</i>	Postman,	<i>facteur.</i>
Companions,	<i>compagnons, m.</i>	Suppose,	<i>supposé que.†</i>
Soon,	<i>bientôt.</i>	To add,	<i>ajouter.</i>
		Something,	<i>quelque chose.</i>
		To burn,	<i>brûler.</i>

\* The conjunctions marked \* require *ne* before the verb.

† The conjunctions marked † require the subjunctive mood.

PARADIGM OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN *ir*.TO FINISH, *FINIR*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

To finish,

*Finir.*

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Finishing,

*Finissant.*

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

Finished,

*Fini, ie ; is, ies.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

I finish,  
*Je finis.*Thou finishest,  
*Tu finis.*He finishes,  
*Il finit.*She finishes,  
*Elle finit.*We finish,  
*Nous finissons.*You finish,  
*Vous finissez.*They finish,  
*Ils or elles finissent.*

## IMPERFECT.

I was finishing,  
*Je finissais.*Thou wast finishing,  
*Tu finissais.*He was finishing,  
*Il finissait.*She was finishing,  
*Elle finissait.*We were finishing,  
*Nous finissions.*You were finishing,  
*Vous finissiez.*They were finishing,  
*Ils or elles finissaient.*

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have finished,  
*J'ai fini, etc.*

## PLUPERFECT.

I had finished,  
*J'avais fini, etc.*

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I finished,  
*Je finis.*Thou finishedst,  
*Tu finis.*He finished,  
*Il finit.*She finished,  
*Elle finit.*

## FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall or will finish,  
*Je finirai.*Thou wilt finish,  
*Tu finiras.*He will finish,  
*Il finira.*She will finish,  
*Elle finira.*

We finished,  
*Nous finîmes.*

You finished,  
*Vous finîtes.*

They finished,  
*Ils or elles finirent.*

We shall *or* will finish,  
*Nous finirons.*

You will finish,  
*Vous finirez.*

They will finish,  
*Ils or elles finiront.*

#### PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

I had finished,  
*J'eus fini, etc.*

#### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall *or* will have finished,  
*J'aurai fini, etc.*

### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

I should *or* would finish,

Thou wouldst finish,

He would finish,

She would finish,

We should *or* would finish,

You would finish,

They would finish,

*Je finirais.*

*Tu finirais.*

*Il finirait.*

*Elle finirait.*

*Nous finirions.*

*Vous finiriez.*

*Ils or elles finiraient.*

#### PAST.

I should *or* would have finished, *J'aurais or j'eusse fini, etc.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

Finish (thou),

Let him finish,

Let her finish,

Let us finish,

Finish (ye or you),

Let them finish,

*Finis.*

*Qu'il finisse.*

*Qu'elle finisse.*

*Finissons.*

*Finissez.*

*Qu'ils or qu'elles finissent.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

That I may finish,  
*Que je finisse.*

That thou mayst finish,  
*Que tu finisses.*

That he may finish,  
*Qu'il finisse.*

That she may finish,  
*Qu'elle finisse*

That we may finish,  
*Que nous finissions.*

#### IMPERFECT.

That I might finish,  
*Que je finisse.*

That thou mightst finish,  
*Que tu finisses.*

That he might finish,  
*Qu'il finit.*

That she might finish,  
*Qu'elle finit*

That we might finish,  
*Que nous finissions.*

That you may finish,  
*Que vous finissiez.*

That they may finish,  
*Qu'ils or-qu'elles finissent.*

PRÆTERIT.

That I may have finished,  
*Que j'aie fini, etc.*

That you might finish,  
*Que vous finissiez.*

That they might finish,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles finissent,*

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have finished,  
*Que j'eusse fini, etc.*

EXERCISE.

PRESENT.—I am reflecting on those events, Why doest thou furnish arms against thyself? He punishes his child too severely. She feeds her little birds. How does he define that word? Physicians cure the diseases of the body and not those of the mind. Do they fulfil their obligations? They are demolishing that house. My father enlarges his estate.

To reflect,	<i>réfléchir.</i>
On,	<i>sur.</i>
Events,	<i>événements, m.</i>
Why,	<i>pourquoi.</i>
To furnish,	<i>fournir.</i>
Arms,	<i>des armes, f.</i>
Against,	<i>contre.</i>
Thyself,	<i>toi-même.</i>
Punish,	<i>punir.</i>
Severely,	<i>sévèrement.</i>
To feed,	<i>nourrir.</i>
Birds,	<i>oiseaux, m.</i>

To define,	<i>définir.</i>
Physicians,	<i>les médecins.</i>
To cure,	<i>guérir.</i>
Diseases,	<i>maladies, f.</i>
Body,	<i>corps, m.</i>
Not,	<i>non.</i>
Mind,	<i>esprit, m.</i>
To fulfil,	<i>remplir.</i>
Obligations,	<i>obligations, f.</i>
To demolish,	<i>démolir.</i>
To enlarge,	<i>agrandir.</i>
Estate,	<i>bien, m.</i>

IMPERFECT.—I was finishing my speech when he came in. Wast thou not building a cottage? He was not acting kindly towards you. By little and little I softened the roughness of his manners. The mountains were resounding with their cries. They used to enslave all the vanquished nations.

To finish,	<i>finir.</i>
Speech,	<i>discours, m.</i>
When,	<i>quand.</i>
To come in,	<i>entrer.</i>
To build,	<i>bâtir.</i>
Cottage,	<i>chaumière, f.</i>
To act,	<i>agir.</i>
Kindly,	<i>avec bonté.</i>
Towards,	<i>envers.</i>

By little and little,	<i>peu à peu.</i>
To soften,	<i>attendrir.</i>
Roughness,	<i>rudesse, f.</i>
Manners,	<i>mœurs, f.</i>
Mountains,	<i>montagnes, f.</i>
To resound with,	<i>résonner de.</i>
Cries,	<i>cri, m.</i>
To enslave,	<i>asservir.</i>
Vanquished nations,	<i>nations vaincues.</i>

PRÆTERIT.—I leaped over the ditch and seized the man. Did he furnish the money? All the spectators applauded. Did your master finish in time? Who performed the duties of his office during his illness? At last we softened our tyrant. Henry disobeyed his master. Vauban constructed the fortifications of that town.

To leap over,	<i>franchir.</i>	During,	<i>pendant.</i>
Ditch,	<i>fossé, m.</i>	Illness,	<i>maladie, f.</i>
To seize,	<i>saisir.</i>	At last,	<i>enfin.</i>
To furnish,	<i>fournir.</i>	To soften,	<i>adoucir.</i>
Spectators,	<i>spectateurs, m.</i>	Tyrant,	<i>tyran, m.</i>
To applaud,	<i>applaudir.</i>	Henry,	<i>Henri.</i>
In time,	<i>à temps.</i>	Disobey,	<i>désobéir a.</i>
To perform,	<i>remplir.</i>	Construct,	<i> bâtir.</i>
Duties,	<i>devoirs, m.</i>	Fortifications,	<i>fortifications, f.</i>
Office,	<i>place, f.</i>	Town,	<i>ville, f.</i>

**FUTURE.**—Shall I not enjoy that pleasure soon? When shalt thou banish all these thoughts from thy mind? They will establish wise and just laws. This tree will soon blossom. Will not your father furnish this house before next winter? His brother will not succeed in his undertaking. I will warn his father of it.

To enjoy,	<i>jouir de.</i>	Tree,	<i>arbre, m.</i>
Soon,	<i>bientôt.</i>	To blossom,	<i>fleurir.</i>
To banish,	<i>bannir.</i>	To furnish,	<i>garnir.</i>
All,	<i>toutes.</i>	Before,	<i>avant.</i>
Thoughts,	<i>pensées, f.</i>	Next winter,	<i>l'hiver prochain.</i>
Mind,	<i>esprit, m.</i>	To succeed,	<i>réussir.</i>
To establish,	<i>établir.</i>	In,	<i>dans.</i>
Wise laws,	<i>lois sages, f.</i>	Undertaking,	<i>entreprise, f.</i>
Just,	<i>justes.</i>	Warn,	<i>avertir.</i>

**CONDITIONAL.**—I should convert the impious. Wouldst thou betray my interest? That would weaken your party. He would furnish the materials. Would you not select the best? Would they not sympathize with our sorrows? They would enrich their family.

To convert,	<i>convertir.</i>	To furnish,	<i>fournir.</i>
The impious,	<i>les impies.</i>	Materials,	<i>matériaux, m.</i>
To betray,	<i>trahir.</i>	To select,	<i>choisir.</i>
Interest,	<i>intérêt, m.</i>	To sympathize with,	<i>compâtrir a.</i>
To weaken,	<i>affaiblir.</i>	To enrich,	<i>enrichir.</i>
Party,	<i>parti, m.</i>	Family,	<i>famille, f.</i>

**IMPERATIVE.**—Fill thy glass. Let him blush at his conduct. Polish those spoons. Let us choose now. Level that ground. Let us support the poor of the parish. Let us not languish in misery.

To fill,	<i>remplir.</i>	To level,	<i>aplanir.</i>
Glass,	<i>verre, m.</i>	Ground,	<i>terrain, m.</i>
To blush at,	<i>rougir de.</i>	To support,	<i>nourrir.</i>
Conduct,	<i>conduite, f.</i>	The poor,	<i>les pauvres.</i>
To polish,	<i>polir.</i>	Parish,	<i>paroisse, f.</i>
Spoon,	<i>cullier, f.</i>	To languish,	<i>languir.</i>
To choose,	<i>choisir.</i>	In misery,	<i>dans la misère.</i>
Now,	<i>maintenant.</i>		

**SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.**—Before I embellish my country seat. For fear he should blemish his reputation. In order that she may not perish. We wish you may succeed. In case they should not warn us. Though they may fulfil that vow. Provided your sisters do not grow tall.

To embellish,	<i>embellir.</i>
Country-seat,	<i>maison de campagne, f.</i>
For fear,	<i>de crainte que.*</i>
To blemish,	<i>ternir.</i>
To perish,	<i>périr.</i>

To wish,	<i>désirer.</i>
To warn,	<i>avertir.</i>
To fulfil,	<i>accomplir.</i>
Vow,	<i>vœu, m.</i>
To grow tall,	<i>grandir.</i>

IMPERFECT.—He read it again in order that I might refresh my memory. He was obliged to fulfil his promise. We trembled for fear he should betray your secret. It was necessary that they should frank their letters. We gave it to Mr. A. before he finished.

I read it again,	<i>je le relus.</i>
To refresh,	<i>rafratchir.</i>
Memory,	<i>mémoire, f.</i>
He was obliged,	<i>il fallut qu'il.</i>
To fulfil,	<i>remplir.</i>
Promise,	<i>promesse, f.</i>
We trembled,	<i>nous tremblions.</i>

To betray,	<i>trahir.</i>
Secret,	<i>secret, m.</i>
It was necessary,	<i>il fallait.</i>
To frank,	<i>affranchir.</i>
Letter,	<i>lettre, f.</i>
We gave it,	<i>nous le donnâmes.</i>
To finish,	<i>finir.</i>

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES OF THE VERBS IN *ir*.

I have weakened his hopes. He had languished a long while. Had we not defined the question? Would Mrs. A. have acted thus? The pride of Alexander has sullied his glory. When shall he have built his house? Though they have adorned their shop to dazzle the public, they have not succeeded. In case they should have warned their friends.

To weaken,	<i>affaiblir.</i>
Hopes,	<i>espérances, f.</i>
To languish,	<i>languir.</i>
A long while,	<i>long-temps.</i>
To define,	<i>définir.</i>
Question,	<i>question, f.</i>
To act,	<i>agir.</i>
Thus,	<i>ainsi.</i>
Pride,	<i>orgueil, m.</i>
Alexander,	<i>Alexandre.</i>

To sully,	<i>ternir.</i>
Glory,	<i>gloire, f.</i>
To build,	<i>bâtir.</i>
Though,	<i>quoique.</i>
To adorn,	<i>embellir.</i>
Shop,	<i>boutique, f.</i>
To dazzle,	<i>pour éblouir.</i>
Public,	<i>public, m.</i>
To succeed,	<i>réussir.</i>
To warn,	<i>avertir.</i>

\* This conjunction requires *ne* before the verb.

PARADIGM OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION, IN *oir*.TO RECEIVE, *RECEVOIR*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

To receive, *Recevoir.*

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Receiving, *Recevant.*

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

Received, *Reçu, ue ; us ; ues.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

I receive,  
*Je reçois.*

Thou receivest,  
*Tu reçois.*

He receives,  
*Il reçoit.*

She receives,  
*Elle reçoit.*

We receive,  
*Nous recevons.*

You receive,  
*Vous recevez.*

They receive,  
*Ils or elles reçoivent.*

## IMPERFECT.

I was receiving,  
*Je recevais.*

Thou wast receiving,  
*Tu recevais.*

He was receiving,  
*Il recevait.*

She was receiving,  
*Elle recevait.*

We were receiving,  
*Nous recevions.*

You were receiving,  
*Vous receviez.*

They were receiving,  
*Ils or elles recevaient.*

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have received,  
*J'ai reçu, etc.*

## PLUPERFECT.

I had received,  
*J'avais reçu, etc.*

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I received,  
*Je reçus.*

Thou receivedst,  
*Tu reçus.*

He received,  
*Il reçut.*

She received,  
*Elle reçut.*

## FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall or will receive,  
*Je recevrai.*

Thou wilt receive,  
*Tu recevras.*

He will receive,  
*Il recevra.*

She will receive,  
*Elle recevra.*

We received,  
*Nous reçûmes.*

You received,  
*Vous reçûtes.*

They received,  
*Ils or elles reçurent.*

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

I had received,  
*J'eus reçu, etc.*

We shall or will receive.  
*Nous recevrons.*

You will receive,  
*Vous recevrez.*

They will receive,  
*Ils or elles recevront.*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall or will have received,  
*J'aurai reçu, etc.*

### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should or would receive,  
Thou wouldst receive,  
He would receive,  
She would receive,  
We should or would receive,  
You would receive,  
They would receive,

*Je recevrais.*  
*Tu recevrais.*  
*Il recevrait.*  
*Elle recevrait.*  
*Nous recevriions.*  
*Vous recevriez.*  
*Ils or elles recevraient.*

PAST.

I should or would have received, *J'aurais or j'eusse reçu, etc.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Receive (thou),  
Let him receive,  
Let her receive,  
Let us receive,  
Receive (ye or you),  
Let them receive,

*Reçois.*  
*Qu'il reçoive.*  
*Qu'elle reçoive.*  
*Recevons.*  
*Recevez.*  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles reçoivent.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may receive,  
*Que je reçoive.*  
That thou mayst receive,  
*Que tu reçoives.*  
That he may receive,  
*Qu'il reçoive.*  
That she may receive,  
*Qu'elle reçoive.*  
That we may receive,  
*Que nous recevions.*  
That you may receive,  
*Que vous receviez.*

IMPERFECT.

That I might receive,  
*Que je reçusse.*  
That thou mightst receive,  
*Que tu reçusses.*  
That he might receive,  
*Qu'il reçût.*  
That she might receive,  
*Qu'elle reçût.*  
That we might receive,  
*Que nous reçussions.*  
That you might receive,  
*Que vous reçussiez.*



That they may receive,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles reçoivent.*

## PRETERIT.

That I may have received,  
*Que j'aie reçu, etc.*

That they might receive,  
*Qu'ils or quelles reçussent.*

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might have received,  
*Que j'eusse reçu, etc.*

## EXERCISE.

PRESENT.—I receive your offers. Doest thou not perceive the snare? We owe gratitude to our parents. Do you not perceive his intention? Men commonly<sup>2</sup> owe<sup>1</sup> their virtues or vices to education as much as to nature. My friends perceive the danger. My father does not conceive how that has happened.

To receive,	<i>recevoir.</i>	Commonly,	<i>ordinairement.</i>
Offers,	<i>offres, f.</i>	Virtues,	<i>vertus, f.</i>
To perceive,	<i>apercevoir.</i>	Vices,	<i>vices, m.</i>
Snare,	<i>piège, m.</i>	Education,	<i>l'éducation, f.</i>
To owe,	<i>devoir.</i>	As much as,	<i>autant que.</i>
Gratitude,	<i>de la reconnaissance.</i>	Nature,	<i>la nature.</i>
Parents,	<i>parents, m.</i>	To conceive,	<i>concevoir.</i>
Intention,	<i>intention, f.</i>	How that has,	<i>comment cela est.</i>
Men,	<i>les hommes.</i>	Happened,	<i>arrivé.</i>

IMPERFECT.—I owed more than you then. Thou wast already<sup>2</sup> conceiving<sup>1</sup> great hopes. We received the newspapers every day. His father was owing two thousand pounds when he died. We frequently<sup>2</sup> received<sup>1</sup> from them urgent<sup>2</sup> invitations<sup>1</sup>. Did they perceive the steeple of the parish at such a distance? Every time he came to our house, he received presents.

To owe,	<i>devoir.</i>	From them,	<i>d'eux.</i>
More than,	<i>plus que.</i>	Invitation,	<i>invitation, f.</i>
Then,	<i>alors.</i>	Urgent,	<i>urgent.</i>
To conceive,	<i>concevoir.</i>	Steeple,	<i>clocher, m.</i>
Already,	<i>déjà.</i>	Parish,	<i>paroisse, f.</i>
Hope,	<i>espérance, f.</i>	At such a,	<i>à cette.</i>
News-paper,	<i>journal, m.</i>	Distance,	<i>distance, f.</i>
Every day,	<i>tous les jours.</i>	Every time,	<i>toutes les fois que.</i>
Pound,	<i>livre, f.</i>	He came,	<i>il venait.</i>
When he died,	<i>quand il mourut.</i>	To our house,	<i>chez nous.</i>
Frequently,	<i>fréquemment.</i>	Presents,	<i>présents, m.</i>

PRETERIT.—I received last week a visit from Sir Henry. She received there the news of his death. The minister conceived the depth of my brother's plan. Did they perceive their errors? At break of day we discovered the ships. Fortunately the captain perceived the danger.

Last week,	<i>la semaine dernière.</i>	Errors,	<i>erreurs, f.</i>
Visit,	<i>visite, f.</i>	At,	<i>au.</i>
Sir Henry,	<i>Sir Henri.</i>	Break of day,	<i>point du jour, m.</i>
The news,	<i>la nouvelle.</i>	To discover,	<i>apercevoir.</i>
Death,	<i>mort, f.</i>	Ships,	<i>vaisseaux, m.</i>
Minister,	<i>ministre, m.</i>	Fortunately,	<i>heureusement.</i>
To conceive,	<i>concevoir.</i>	Captain,	<i>capitaine.</i>
Depth,	<i>profondeur, f.</i>	Danger,	<i>danger, m.</i>
Plan,	<i>plan, m.</i>		

**FUTURE.**—I shall receive the parcel by the mail. He will receive my note and yours the day after to-morrow. The jury will easily<sup>2</sup> perceive<sup>1</sup> if she be guilty. They will entertain a bad opinion of you. Will men ever owe their misfortunes to their extravagance? Will those people conceive the propriety of his conduct?

Parcel,	<i>paquet, m.</i>
Mail,	<i>maille, f.</i>
Note,	<i>billet, m.</i>
The day after to-morrow,	<i>après demain.</i>
Jury,	<i>jury, m.</i>
To perceive,	<i>s'apercevoir.</i>
Easily,	<i>aisément.</i>
If she be,	<i>si elle est.</i>
Guilty,	<i>coupable.</i>

To entertain,	<i>concevoir.</i>
Opinion,	<i>opinion, f.</i>
Men,	<i>les hommes.</i>
Ever,	<i>toujours.</i>
Misfortunes,	<i>malheurs, m.</i>
Extravagance,	<i>extravagance, f.</i>
People,	<i>gens, m.</i>
Propriety,	<i>convenance, f. ou bienséance, f.</i>
Conduct,	<i>conduite, f.</i>

**CONDITIONAL.**—Would his father receive<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> with the same tenderness? I should perceive if he said the truth. You should<sup>\*</sup> not neglect that study. They would receive<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> with joy. He should answer his father's letter. Children should learn every day something by heart.

Him,	<i>le.</i>
With,	<i>avec.</i>
Same,	<i>même.</i>
Tenderness,	<i>tendresse, f.</i>
If he said,	<i>s'il a dit.</i>
Truth,	<i>vérité, f.</i>
Should,*	<i>devoir.</i>
Neglect,	<i>négliger.</i>
Study,	<i>étude, f.</i>

With joy,	<i>avec joie.</i>
Answer,	<i>répondre à.</i>
Letter,	<i>lettre, f.</i>
Children,	<i>les enfants, m.</i>
Learn,	<i>apprendre.</i>
Every day,	<i>tous les jours.</i>
Something,	<i>quelque chose.</i>
By heart,	<i>par cœur.</i>

**IMPERATIVE.**—Conceive the horror of her situation. Let him collect the taxes. Let us conceive the importance of our duties. Receive that stranger with affection. Do not receive that mark of confidence with indifference. Let them conceive how far their imprudence will lead them.

Horror,	<i>horreur, f.</i>
Situation,	<i>situation, f.</i>
To collect,	<i>percevoir.</i>
Taxes,	<i>impôts, m.</i>
Importance,	<i>importance, f.</i>
Duties,	<i>devoirs, m.</i>
Stranger,	<i>étranger, m.</i>

Affection,	<i>affection, f.</i>
Mark,	<i>preuve, f.</i>
Confidence,	<i>confiance, f.</i>
Indifference,	<i>indifférence, f.</i>
How far,	<i>jusqu'où.</i>
Imprudence,	<i>imprudence, f.</i>
Will lead them,	<i>les mènera.</i>

**SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.**—Until I receive assistance. In order that you may receive consolations. Though I perceive the ship. For fear she may conceive a bad opinion of me. Though he owes more than he possesses. In case they owe still a trifle.

---

\* When the word *should* is used in English as a verb, it must be rendered in French by the conditional present of the verb *devoir*; *ought* is translated in the same manner.

Until,	<i>jusqu'à ce que.</i>	Of me,	<i>de moi.</i>
Assistance,	<i>des secours, m.</i>	To owe,	<i>devoir.</i>
In order that,	<i>afin que.</i>	More than he,	<i>plus qu'il ne.</i>
Consolations,	<i>consolations, f.</i>	To possess,	<i>posséder.</i>
Though,	<i>quoique.</i>	In case,	<i>en cas que.</i>
Ship,	<i>vaisseau, m.</i>	To owe still,	<i>redevoir.</i>
For fear,	<i>de peur que.</i>	Trifle,	<i>bagatelle, f.</i>

**IMPERFECT.**—I wrote to him by post that he might receive my letter in time. Before she received the news of his arrival, Did you wish him to conceive so difficult a rule? I wished them to receive my brother as a friend.

I wrote to him,	<i>je lui écrivis.</i>	Arrival,	<i>arrivée.</i>
By post,	<i>par la poste.</i>	Did you wish him,	<i>voulez-vous qu'il.</i>
That,	<i>afin que.</i>	So difficult a rule,	<i>une règle si difficile.</i>
In time,	<i>à temps.</i>	I wished them,	<i>je voulais qu'ils.</i>
Before,	<i>avant que.</i>	As a friend,	<i>en ami.</i>
The news,	<i>la nouvelle.</i>		

#### EXERCISE ON THE COMPOUND TENSES OF THE VERBS IN *oir*.

I have received his apology. You should\* have obliged the bearer to wait. We had entertained great hopes of his recovery. They ought not to have made<sup>2</sup> us<sup>1</sup> wait so long. They should have sold their house. They would not have perceived the castle at so great a distance. He would have owed more if he had lived longer. You ought to have employed your<sup>2</sup> time<sup>3</sup> better.<sup>1</sup> Mr. A. has not perceived your signal. Your sisters ought to have come back sooner.

His apology,	<i>ses excuses.</i>	Sold,	<i>vendre.</i>
Should,	<i>devoir.</i>	Castle,	<i>château, m.</i>
Obliged,	<i>obliger.</i>	At so great a distance,	<i>de si loin.</i>
Bearer,	<i>porteur.</i>	To owe,	<i>devoir.</i>
To wait,	<i>à attendre.</i>	More,	<i>plus.</i>
To entertain,	<i>concevoir.</i>	If he had,	<i>s'il avait.</i>
Hopes,	<i>espérances, f.</i>	Lived,	<i>vécu.</i>
Recovery,	<i>rétablissement, m.</i>	Employed,	<i>employé.</i>
Ought,	<i>devoir.</i>	Time,	<i>temps, m.</i>
Made,	<i>faire.</i>	Signal,	<i>signal, m.</i>
Wait,	<i>attendre.</i>	Come back,	<i>revenir.</i>
So long,	<i>si long-temps.</i>	Sooner,	<i>plus tôt.</i>
Should,	<i>devoir.</i>		

\* In the compound tenses of all such sentences *should* or *ought* must be rendered in French by the compound of the conditional of the verb *devoir*, the verb *to have*, of the English sentence being omitted and the participle past which follows, being turned into the present of the infinitive.

#### EXAMPLE :

You should have obliged, etc., etc. *Vous auriez dû obliger, etc., etc.*

Observe that the *u* in the participle past of *devoir* takes a circumflex (*û*); this is not the case in other verbs.

PARADIGM OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION IN *re*.TO RENDER—*RENDRE*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

To render, *Rendre.*

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Rendering, *Rendant.*

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

Rendered, *Rendu, ue ; us, ues.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

I render,  
*Je rends.*

Thou renderest,  
*Tu rends.*

He renders,  
*Il rend.*

She renders,  
*Elle rend.*

We render,  
*Nous rendons.*

You render,  
*Vous rendez.*

They render,  
*Ils or elles rendent.*

## IMPERFECT.

I was rendering.  
*Je rendais.*

Thou wast rendering,  
*Tu rendais.*

He was rendering,  
*Il rendait.*

She was rendering,  
*Elle rendait.*

We were rendering,  
*Nous rendions.*

You were rendering,  
*Vous rendiez.*

They were rendering,  
*Ils or e'les rendaient.*

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have rendered,  
*J'ai rendu, etc.*

## PLUPERFECT.

I had rendered,  
*J'avais rendu, etc.*

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I rendered,  
*Je rendis.*

Thou renderedst,  
*Tu rendis.*

He rendered,  
*Il rendit.*

She rendered,  
*Elle rendit.*

We rendered,  
*Nous rendimes.*

## FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall or will render,  
*Je rendrai.*

Thou wilt render,  
*Tu rendras.*

He will render,  
*Il rendra.*

She will render,  
*Elle rendra.*

We shall or will render,  
*Nous rendrons.*

You rendered,  
*Vous rendîtes.*  
 They rendered,  
*Ils or elles rendirent.*

You will render,  
*Vous rendrez.*  
 They will render,  
*Ils or elles rendront.*

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.  
 I had rendered,  
*J'eus rendu, etc.*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.  
 I shall or will have rendered,  
*J'aurai rendu, etc.*

### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

I should or would render,	<i>Je rendrais.</i>
Thou wouldst render,	<i>Tu rendrais.</i>
He would render,	<i>Il rendrait.</i>
She would render,	<i>Elle rendrait.</i>
We should or would render,	<i>Nous rendrions.</i>
You would render,	<i>Vous rendriez.</i>
They would render,	<i>Ils or elles rendraient.</i>

#### PAST.

I should or would have rendered, *J'aurais or j'eusse rendu, etc.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

Render (thou),	<i>Rends.</i>
Let him render,	<i>Qu'il rende.</i>
Let her render,	<i>Qu'elle rende.</i>
Let us render,	<i>Rendons.</i>
Render (ye or you),	<i>Rendez.</i>
Let them render,	<i>Qu'ils or qu'elles rendent.</i>

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

That I may render,  
*Que je rende.*  
 That thou mayst render,  
*Que tu rendes.*  
 That he may render,  
*Qu'il rende.*  
 That she may render,  
*Qu'elle rende.*  
 That we may render,  
*Que nous rendions.*  
 That you may render,  
*Que vous rendiez.*  
 That they may render,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles rendent.*

#### IMPERFECT.

That I might render,  
*Que je rendisse.*  
 That thou mightst render,  
*Que tu rendisses.*  
 That he might render,  
*Qu'il rendit.*  
 That she might render,  
*Qu'elle rendit.*  
 That we might render,  
*Que nous rendissions.*  
 That you might render,  
*Que vous rendissiez.*  
 That they might render,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles rendissent.*

## PRÆTERIT.

That I may have rendered,  
*Que j'ai rendu, etc.*

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might have rendered,  
*Que j'eusse rendu, etc.*

## EXERCISE.

PRESENT.—I do not waste my time. Dost thou not hear some noise? The servant is waiting? My father expects company this evening. Your mother is coming down. They sell bad cloth. Their sentiments correspond with mine. They are spreading terror every where.

To waste, *perdre.*  
 Time, *temps, m.*  
 To hear, *entendre.*  
 Noise, *bruit, m.*  
 Servant, *domestique.*  
 To wait, expect, *attendre.*  
 Company, *compagnie, f.*  
 This evening, *ce soir.*

To come down, *descendre.*  
 To sell, *vendre.*  
 Cloth, *drap, m.*  
 To correspond, *correspondre.*  
 With mine, *aux miens.*  
 To spread, *répandre.*  
 Terror, *terreur, f.*  
 Every where, *partout.*

IMPERFECT.—I was spreading my nets. That dog was biting every body. Your sister was melting into tears when you arrived. We were coming down the hill. You were<sup>2</sup> defending him<sup>1</sup> in vain. The workmen were melting some lead in the yard. Somebody was waiting in the parlour.

To spread, *tendre.*  
 Nets, *filets, m.*  
 Dog, *chien, m.*  
 To bite, *mordre.*  
 Every body, *tous le monde.*  
 To melt, *fondre.*  
 Into tears, *en larmes.*  
 When, *quand.*  
 To arrive, *arriver.*

To come down, *descendre.*  
 Hill, *colline, f.*  
 To defend, *défendre.*  
 In vain, *en vain.*  
 Workmen, *ouvriers, m.*  
 Lead, *plomb, m.*  
 Yard, *cour, f.*  
 Somebody, *quelqu'un.*  
 Parlour, *salle, f.*

PRÆTERIT.—I sold my horse last year. He returned the books, but not the pictures. She heard<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>. Did Mrs. A. answer his questions? The servant spilled all the wine. We did not wait the arrival of the mail. They did not condescend to my desires. They spread the news all over the town in less than an hour. The Judges suspended their judgment.

Last year, *l'année dernière.*  
 To return, *rendre.*  
 Picture, *tableau, m.*  
 To answer, *répondre à.*  
 Questions, *questions, f.*  
 To spill, *répandre.*  
 Wine, *vin, m.*  
 Arrival, *arrivée, f.*  
 Mail, *malle, f.*  
 To condescend, *condescendre.*

Desires, *désirs, m.*  
 To spread, *répandre.*  
 News, *nouvelle, f.*  
 All over, *par toute.*  
 Town, *ville, f.*  
 In less than an, *en moins d'une.*  
 Hour, *heure, f.*  
 Judge, *juge.*  
 To suspend, *suspendre.*  
 Judgment, *jugement, m.*

FUTURE.—I will answer in a few words. Thou wilt lose thy umbrella. She will not hear that gentleman. Shall we not lose if we play? They will shear their flock in the month of May. That will soon<sup>2</sup> melt<sup>1</sup>. Will not those gentlemen sell their country-house?

To answer,	<i>répondre.</i>
A few words,	<i>peu de mots.</i>
To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>
Umbrella,	<i>parapluie, m.</i>
To hear,	<i>entendre.</i>
Gentleman,	<i>monseigneur.</i>
To play,	<i>jouer.</i>
To shear,	<i>tondre.</i>
Flock,	<i>troupeau, m.</i>

In the,	<i>au.</i>
Month,	<i>mois, m.</i>
May,	<i>mai.</i>
That,	<i>cela.</i>
To melt,	<i>fondre.</i>
Soon,	<i>bientôt.</i>
Gentleman,	<i>messieurs.</i>
Country-house,	<i>maison de campagne, f.</i>

CONDITIONAL.—I should expect a favourable<sup>2</sup> answer<sup>1</sup>. Wouldst thou not render<sup>2</sup> them<sup>1</sup> justice? He would defend<sup>2</sup> her<sup>1</sup> at the peril of his life. Would he not interrupt<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>? They would enlarge the bounds of their dominions. They would hang the rebels. They would confound his pride.

To expect,	<i>attendre.</i>
Answer,	<i>réponse, f.</i>
Favourable,	<i>favorable.</i>
Them,	<i>leur.</i>
To render,	<i>rendre.</i>
Justice,	<i>justice, f.</i>
Her,	<i>la.</i>
To defend,	<i>défendre.</i>
At the peril,	<i>au péril.</i>

Life,	<i>vie, f.</i>
To interrupt,	<i>interrompre.</i>
To enlarge,	<i>étendre.</i>
Bounds,	<i>limites, f.</i>
Dominions,	<i>états, m.</i>
To hang,	<i>pendre.</i>
Rebel,	<i>rebelle, m.</i>
To confound,	<i>confondre.</i>
Pride,	<i>orgueil, m.</i>

IMPERATIVE.—Come down directly. Let her not answer that letter. Let him return those prints. Let us wait for the result of that conference. Let us not lose his direction. Give in your accounts faithfully. Let them suspend their judgment. Let the young ladies come down.

To come down,	<i>descendre.</i>
Directly,	<i>sur-le-champ.</i>
To return,	<i>rendre.</i>
Prints,	<i>gravures, f.</i>
To wait for,	<i>attendre.</i>
Result,	<i>résultat, m.</i>
Conference,	<i>conférence, f.</i>

Direction,	<i>adresse, f.</i>
To give in,	<i>rendre.</i>
Accounts,	<i>comptes, m.</i>
Faithfully,	<i>fidèlement.</i>
To suspend,	<i>suspendre.</i>
Judgment,	<i>jugement, m.</i>
Young ladies,	<i>demoiselles.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.—Until I hear his justification. In order that she may not waste her time about trifles. He plays with a knife though you forbid<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> to do so. Speak louder that we may hear what you say. They must untwist that rope.

Until,	<i>jusqu' à ce que.</i>
To hear,	<i>entendre.</i>
In order that,	<i>afin que.</i>
To waste,	<i>perdre.</i>
Time,	<i>temps, m.</i>
About trifles,	<i>à des bagatelles, f.</i>
To play,	<i>jouer.</i>
With,	<i>avec.</i>
Knife,	<i>couteau, m.</i>
Though,	<i>quoique.</i>

Him,	<i>lui.</i>
To forbid,	<i>défendre.</i>
To do so,	<i>de le faire.</i>
Loud,	<i>haut.</i>
That,	<i>afin que.</i>
What,	<i>ce que.</i>
You say,	<i>vous dites.</i>
They must,	<i>il faut qu'ils.</i>
To untwist,	<i>détordre.</i>
Rope,	<i>corde, f.</i>

IMPERFECT.—I wished that he should not answer. He made room that we might stretch out our legs. We were afraid you should lose your way. The king wrote that they should defend their position to the last. We were obliged to wait the whole day.

I wished that,	<i>je désirais que.</i>	Way,	<i>chemin, m.</i>
To answer,	<i>répondre.</i>	King,	<i>roi.</i>
Made,	<i>fit.</i>	Wrote,	<i>écrivit.</i>
Room,	<i>place, f.</i>	To defend,	<i>défendre.</i>
To stretch out,	<i>étendre.</i>	To the last,	<i>jusqu'à l'extrémité.</i>
Legs,	<i>jambes, f.</i>	We were obliged,	<i>il fallut que nous.</i>
We were afraid,	<i>nous craignons</i>	To wait,	<i>attendre.</i>
	<i>que.</i>	The whole day,	<i>toute la journée.</i>
To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>		

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES OF THE VERBS IN *re*.

I have lost something. He had intended to have that at our own cost. Have you heard the thunder? They had not melted the whole. They had been waiting for their luggage. Had you not corresponded with your friends? I (shall have returned)<sup>2</sup> them<sup>1</sup> before. You will have answered his letter. She would not have condescended to your prayer. He would have defended my cause. They must have come down this way. In case he may have nibbled at the bait. That was before he had given in his accounts. They must have waited longer.

To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>	To condescend,	<i>condescendre.</i>
Something,	<i>quelque chose.</i>	Prayer,	<i>prière, f.</i>
To intend,	<i>prétendre.</i>	To defend,	<i>défendre.</i>
That,	<i>cela.</i>	Cause,	<i>cause, f.</i>
At our own cost,	<i>à nos dépens, m.</i>	They must have,	<i>il a fallu qu'ils.</i>
To hear,	<i>entendre.</i>	To come down,	<i>descendre.</i>
Thunder,	<i>tonnerre, m.</i>	This way,	<i>par ici.</i>
To melt,	<i>fondre.</i>	In case,	<i>en cas que.</i>
Whole,	<i>tout.</i>	To nibble,	<i>mordre.</i>
To wait for,	<i>attendre.</i>	Bait,	<i>hameçon, m.</i>
Luggage,	<i>bagage, m.</i>	That was,	<i>ce fut.</i>
To correspond,	<i>correspondre.</i>	Before he,	<i>avant qu'il.</i>
With,	<i>avec.</i>	To give in,	<i>rendre.</i>
Them,	<i>les.</i>	Accounts,	<i>comptes, m.</i>
To return,	<i>rendre.</i>	They must have,	<i>il eut fallu qu'ils.</i>
Before,	<i>avant.</i>	To wait,	<i>attendre.</i>
To answer,	<i>répondre à.</i>	Long,	<i>long-temps.</i>
Letter,	<i>lettre, f.</i>		

## GENERAL REMARKS ON THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

OF VERBS CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY.

The *preterit anterior*, the *imperative*, and the tenses of the subjunctive are not used interrogatively.

The verbs *rendre*, and all others which have but one syllable in the first person of the present of the indicative,



are not used interrogatively; so that we cannot say : *prends-je? vends-je? tais-je? mens-je? sers-je? &c.* Another turn is given to the sentence, and we say : *est-ce que je prends? est-ce que je vends? est-ce que je sers?* Usage, however, allows to say : *fais-je? dis-je? dois-je? vois-je? ai-je? suis-je? vais-je?*

The pronoun is connected to the verb by a hyphen, in *simple tenses* : *finissais-je? rendis-je?* and with the auxiliary verb in *compound tenses* : *ai-je rendu? aurait-il fini?*

And when the verb ends in a vowel, it is parted from the pronoun *il, elle, on*, by the euphonic letter *t*, with two hyphens : *aime-t-il? aime-t-elle? aime-t-on?*

The *e* mute when it terminates the verb, takes an *acute accent* before the pronoun *je*, as : *aimé-je? do I love? eussé-je-aimé? should I have loved?*

---

#### OF THE FORMATION OF TENSES.

The tenses of verbs are divided into *primitive* and *derivative*.

The *primitive tenses* are those which serve to form all the others. They are :

The Present of the Infinitive.	The Present Participle.	The Past Participle.	The Present of the Indicative.	The Preterit Definite.
--------------------------------------	-------------------------------	----------------------------	--------------------------------------	------------------------------

TABLE OF THE PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

Conj. 1	parler	parlant	parlé	je parle	je parlai
2	finir	finissant	fini	je finis	je finis
3	recevoir	recevant	reçu	je reçois	je reçus
4	rendre	rendant	rendu	je rends	je rendis.

## FORMATION OF THE DERIVATIVE TENSES.

From the Pres. of the Infinitive.	From the Present Participle.	From the Past Participle.	From the Pres. of the Indicative.	From the Preterit Definite.
<p>From the Infinitive are formed two tenses.</p> <p>1st. the <i>Future</i> by changing <i>r, oir, re</i>, into <i>rai</i>, &amp;c.</p> <p>EXAMPLES :</p> <p>Parler je parlerai</p> <p>Finir je finirai</p> <p>Recevoir je recevrai</p> <p>Rendre je rendrai</p> <p>2d. The <i>Conditional</i> by changing the <i>rai</i> of the future into <i>rais</i>, thus :</p> <p>je parlerai je parlerais</p> <p>je finirai je finirais</p> <p>je recevrai je recevrais</p> <p>je rendrai je rendrais</p>	<p>From the Present Participle three tenses are formed.</p> <p>1st. The three persons plural of the Indicative Present by changing <i>ant</i> into <i>ons, ez, ent</i>.</p> <p>EXAMPLES :</p> <p>Parlant { n. parlons           { v. parlez           { Ils parlent and so on with the others.</p> <p>2d. The Imperfect of the indicative by changing <i>ant</i> into <i>ais</i> ;</p> <p>EXAMPLE :</p> <p>finissant je finissais and so forth.</p> <p>3d. The Present of the Subjunctive by changing <i>ant</i> into <i>e</i> mute ;*</p> <p>EXAMPLE :</p> <p>rendant que je rende.</p>	<p>From the Past Participle all compound tenses are formed by means of the auxiliary verbs <i>avoir</i> or <i>être</i>.</p> <p>EXAMPLES :</p> <p>j'ai parlé je serai reçu &amp;c.</p>	<p>From the Indicative Present the Imperative is formed by the suppression of the personal pronoun.†</p> <p>EXAMPLES :</p> <p>je parle‡ parle nous parlons parlons. vous parlez parlez.</p>	<p>From the Preterit Definite the Imperfect of the Subjunctive is formed by adding <i>se</i> to the second person singular.</p> <p>EXAMPLES :</p> <p>tu donnas que je donnasse tu finis que je finisse. and so with the others.</p>

\* In verbs of the third conjugation *evant* change into *oive, oives, oive, evions, eviez, otvent* ; as *recevant*, que je *reçoive*.

† This rule is not applicable to the third persons singular and plural, which, in all verbs are like the third persons of the *subjunctive present*.

‡ Observe that it is the first person of the indicative which forms the second of the imperative.

N.B. Instead of unnecessarily learning *every tense* of any regular verb, the student who understands clearly the above table, has only to learn the five *primitive tenses* in order to be able to conjugate it throughout, thus saving himself considerable time and trouble.

---

TABULAR VIEW OF THE TERMINATIONS OF FRENCH  
REGULAR VERBS.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
1. —er.	—ant	—é
2. —ir.	—issant.	—i.
3. —oir.	—ant.	—u.
4. —re.	—ant.	—u.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1. —e,	—es,	—e ;	} —ons,	—ez,	—ent.†
2. —is,	—is,	—it ;			
3. —ois,	—ois,	—oit ;			
4. —ds,	—ds,	—d ;*			

IMPERFECT.

—ais,	—ais,	—ait ;	—ions,	—iez,	—aient.
-------	-------	--------	--------	-------	---------

PRETERIT.

1. —ai,	—as,	—a ;	—âmes,	—âtes,	—èrent.
2. —is,	—is,	—it ;	—îmes,	—îtes,	—irent.
3. —us,	—us,	—ut ;	—ûmes,	—ûtes,	—urent.
4. —is,	—is,	—it ;	—îmes,	—îtes,	—irent.

FUTURE.

—rai,	—ras,	—ra ;	—rons,	—rez,	—ront.
-------	-------	-------	--------	-------	--------

CONDITIONAL.

—rais,	—rais,	—rait ;	—rions,	—riez,	—raient.
--------	--------	---------	---------	--------	----------

---

\* Among the verbs of this conjugation those in *indre*, or *oudre*, replace *ds*, *ds*, *d*, in the three persons singular of the indicative present, by *s*, *s*, *t* ; as, *je joins*, *tu joins*, *il joins* ; *fabous*, *tu absous*, *il absout*.

† In the third conjugation, *evant*, change into *olvent*, in the third person plural of this tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

## IMPERATIVE.

1. —, —e, —e ;	} —ons, —ez, —ent.	
2. —, —is, —isse ;		
3. —, —ois, —oive ;		
4. —, —ds, —de ;		

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

1. —e, —es, —e ;	} —ions, —iez, —ent.	
2. —isse, —isses, —isse ;		
3. —oive, —oives, —oive ;		
4. —e, —es, —e ;		

## IMPERFECT.

1. —asse, —asses, —ât ;	—assions, —assiez, —assent.
2. —isse, —isses, —ît ;	—issions, —issiez, —issent.
3. —usse, —usses, —ût ;	—ussions, —ussiez, —ussent.
4. —isse, —isses, —ît ;	—issions, —issiez, —issent.

## OF PASSIVE VERBS.

The conjugation of passive verbs is not difficult. The participle past of the verb which is to be conjugated is merely to be joined to the auxiliary verb *être*. It is to be observed that in French the participle in passive verbs, like the adjective, agrees in gender and number with its nominative.

## EXAMPLES :

he is esteemed,	<i>il est estimé.</i>
she is esteemed,	<i>elle est estimée.</i>
my brothers are esteemed,	<i>mes frères sont estimés.</i>
your sisters are esteemed,	<i>vos sœurs sont estimées.</i>

This will be explained more fully in the syntax on Participles.

## OF NEUTER VERBS.

A neuter verb is that which can never have a *direct* object after it ; it may easily be known from an active verb, because we cannot add to it the words *quelqu'un*,

*quelque chose*, that is to say, no direct object can be assigned to it: for instance,

To walk,	<i>marcher.</i>
To sleep,	<i>dormir.</i>

are neuter verbs, because we cannot say :

*marcher quelque chose.*  
*dormir quelqu'un.*

As we have already said, there are about 600 neuter verbs in French, the greatest part of which are conjugated with *avoir* : the following require *être*.

<i>Aller</i> , to go.	<i>Naitre</i> , to be born.
<i>Accourir</i> , to run to.	<i>Partir</i> , to set out.
<i>Arriver</i> , to arrive.	<i>Parvenir</i> , to succeed.
<i>Choir</i> , to fall.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass by.
<i>Convenir</i> , to own.*	<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed.
<i>Déchoir</i> , to decay.	<i>Redevenir</i> , to become again.
<i>Décéder</i> , to die.	<i>Remonter</i> , to go up again.
<i>Demeurer</i> , to remain.†	<i>Rentrer</i> , to go in again.
<i>Descendre</i> , to go down.	<i>Rester</i> , to remain.
<i>Devenir</i> , to become.	<i>Retomber</i> , to fall again.
<i>Echoir</i> , to fall to.	<i>Retourner</i> , to go back.
<i>Echapper</i> , to escape.	<i>Revenir</i> , to come again.
<i>Eclore</i> , to blow open, hatch.	<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.
<i>Entrer</i> , to go in.	<i>Survenir</i> , to come unexpectedly.
<i>Intervenir</i> , to interpose.	<i>Tomber</i> , to fall,
<i>Monter</i> , to ascend.	<i>Venir</i> , to come.
<i>Mourir</i> , to die.	

Some neuter verbs such as : To disappear, *disparaître* ; To grow tall, *grandir* ; To run to, *accourir*, To set off, *partir*, etc., take sometimes *avoir*, sometimes *être*, but have, in each of these cases, a different meaning.

With *avoir*, they express an action ; with *être*, the state resulting from that action.

#### EXAMPLES :

With *avoir*.

The concert began at 10 o'clock.  
*Le concert a commencé à dix heures.*

They have escaped the danger.  
*Ils ont échappé au danger.*

With *être*.

The concert had begun when I went in.

*Le concert était commencé lorsque j'entrai.*

They have made their escape since yesterday.

*Ils sont échappés depuis hier.*

\* *Convenir* in the sense of *to suit* takes *avoir*.

† When *demeurer* means *to reside*, it takes *avoir*.

When I entered, he disappeared, *It is night, the day-light is gone.*  
*Quand j'entrai, il a disparu. Il fait nuit, le jour est disparu.*  
 My brother lived a long time in Italy. *My brother is not in France, he*  
*remains in Italy, to learn the*  
*language of that country.*  
*Mon frère a demeuré long-temps en Italie. Mon frère n'est pas en France : il*  
*est demeuré en Italie, pour ap-*  
*prendre la langue de ce pays.*

## OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

In addition to what has already been stated respecting these verbs, *see p. 56*, we will here give a few essential rules.

1. All pronominal verbs are conjugated with a noun and a pronoun, or with two pronouns, in every tense and person of the indicative and subjunctive mood.

### EXAMPLES :

I warm myself,	JE ME chauffe.
Thou warmest thyself,	TU TE chauffes.
He warms himself,	IL SE chauffe.
She warms herself,	ELLE se chauffe.
My father warms himself,	Mon père se chauffe.
My mother warms herself,	Ma mère se chauffe.
We warm ourselves,	NOUS NOUS chauffons.
You warm yourselves,	VOUS VOUS chauffez.
They warm themselves,	ILS or ELLES se chauffent.

2. All pronominal verbs, without exceptions, are conjugated, in their compound tenses, with the auxiliary *ETRE*, and the participle past must agree in gender and number with the objective pronoun, *if it be direct* ;—

### EXAMPLES :

I have warmed myself.	<i>Je me suis chauffé, f. é.</i>
Thou hast warmed thyself.	<i>Tu t'es chauffé, f. é.</i>
He has warmed himself.	<i>Il s'est chauffé.</i>
She has warmed herself,	<i>Elle s'est chauffée.</i>
My father has warmed himself,	<i>Mon père s'est chauffé.</i>
My mother has warmed herself,	<i>Ma mère s'est chauffée.</i>
We have warmed ourselves,	<i>Nous nous sommes chauffés, f.</i> <i>és.</i>
You have warmed yourselves,	<i>Vous vous êtes chauffés. f. és.</i>
They have warmed themselves,	<i>Il se sont chauffés, m.</i> <i>Elles se sont chauffées, f.</i>

3. The imperative of pronominal verbs is conjugated in a different manner, according as it is affirmative or negative. When affirmative, the pronoun (except in the third person singular and plural) follows the verb; when negative, it precedes it in all persons.

#### EXAMPLES :

##### *Affirmatively.*

Warm thyself,	<i>Chauffe-toi.*</i>
Let him warm himself,	<i>Qu'il se chauffe.</i>
Let us warm ourselves,	<i>Chauffons-nous.</i>
Warm yourself or yourselves,	<i>Chauffez-vous.</i>
Let them warm themselves.	<i>Qu'ils or qu'elles se chauffent.</i>

##### *Negatively.*

Do not warm thyself,	<i>Ne te chauffe pas.</i>
Let him not warm himself,	<i>Qu'il ne se chauffe pas.</i>
Let us not warm ourselves,	<i>Ne nous chauffons pas.</i>
Do not warm yourself or your- selves,	<i>Ne vous chauffez pas.</i>
Let them not warm themselves,	<i>Qu'ils or qu'elles ne se chauffent pas.</i>

In the above examples, the objective pronoun is *direct*, that is, in the *accusative*, because *je me suis chauffé*, is as much as to say *j'ai chauffé moi*. But in such a sentence as *nous nous sommes parlé*, it is *indirect*, because we cannot turn it like the above, without the help of a preposition, as it is as much as to say: *parlé à nous*, the preposition necessarily used, makes it *indirect*.

---

\* *Moi* and *toi*, are used instead of *me*, *te*, in the imperative affirmative.

## PARADIGM OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

TO WALK, *Se promener.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Simple Tenses.*

## PRESENT.

To walk,  
*Se promener.*

*Compound Tenses.*

## PRETERIT.

To have walked,  
*S'être promené, ou ée.*

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Walking,  
*Se promenant.*

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having walked,  
*S'étant promené, ou ée.*

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

Walked,

*Promené, ée ; és, ées.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

I walk,  
*Je me promène.*

Thou walkest,  
*Tu te promènes.*

He walks,  
*Il se promène.*

She walks,  
*Elle se promène.*

We walk,  
*Nous nous promenons.*

You walk,  
*Vous vous promenez.*

They walk,  
*Ils or elles se promènent.*

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have walked,  
*Je me suis promené, or ée.*

Thou hast walked,  
*Tu t'es promené, or ée.*

He has walked,  
*Il s'est promené.*

She has walked,  
*Elle s'est promenée.*

We have walked,  
*Nous nous sommes promenés, or ées.*

You have walked,  
*Vous vous êtes promenés, or ées.*

They have walked,  
*Ils se sont promenés, or elles se sont promenées.*

## IMPERFECT.

I was walking,  
*Je me promenais.*

## PLUPERFECT.

I had walked,  
*Je m'étais promené, or ée.*



Thou wast walking,  
*Tu te promenais.*

He was walking,  
*Il se promenait.*

She was walking,  
*Elle se promenait.*

We were walking,  
*Nous nous promenions.*

You were walking,  
*Vous vous promeniez.*

They were walking,  
*Ils or elles se promenaient.*

Thou hadst walked,  
*Tu t'étais promené or ée.*

He had walked,  
*Il s'était promené.*

She had walked,  
*Elle s'était promenée.*

We had walked,  
*Nous nous étions promenés or ées.*

You had walked,  
*Vous vous étiez promenés or ées.*

They had walked,  
*Ils s'étaient promenés, or elles s'étaient promenées.*

#### PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I walked,  
*Je me promenai.*

Thou walkedst,  
*Tu te promenast.*

He walked,  
*Il se promena.*

She walked,  
*Elle se promena.*

We walked,  
*Nous nous promenâmes.*

You walked,  
*Vous vous promenâtes.*

They walked,  
*Ils or elles promenèrent.*

#### PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

I had walked,  
*Je me fus promené or ée.*

Thou hadst walked,  
*Tu te fus promené or ée.*

He had walked,  
*Il se fut promené.*

She had walked,  
*Elle se fut promenée.*

We had walked,  
*Nous nous fûmes promenés or ées.*

You had walked,  
*Vous vous fûtes promenés or ées.*

They had walked,  
*Ils se furent promenés ou elles se furent promenées.*

#### FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall or will walk,  
*Je me promènerai.*

Thou wilt walk,  
*Tu te promèneras.*

He will walk,  
*Il se promènera.*

She will walk,  
*Elle se promènera.*

We shall or will walk,  
*Nous nous promènerons.*

#### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall or will have walked,  
*Je me serai promené or ée.*

Thou wilt have walked,  
*Tu te seras promené or ée.*

He will have walked,  
*Il se sera promené.*

She will have walked,  
*Elle se sera promenée.*

We shall or will have walked,  
*Nous nous serons promenés or ées.*

You will walk,  
*Vous vous promènerez.*  
 They will walk,  
*Ils or elles se promèneront.*

You will have walked,  
*Vous vous serez promenés or ées.*  
 They will have walked,  
*Ils se seront promenés or elles se seront promenées.*

### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

I should or would walk,  
*Je me promènerais.*  
 Thou wouldst walk,  
*Tu te promènerais.*  
 He would walk,  
*Il se promènerait.*  
 She would walk,  
*Elle se promènerait.*  
 We should or would walk,  
*Nous nous promènerions.*  
 You would walk,  
*Vous vous promèneriez.*  
 They would walk,  
*Ils or elles se promèneraient.*

#### PAST.

I should or would have walked,  
*Je me serais or je me fusse promené or ée.*  
 Thou wouldst have walked,  
*Tu te serais or tu te fusses promené or ée.*  
 He would have walked,  
*Il se serait or il se fût promené.*  
 She would have walked,  
*Elle se serait or elle se fût promenée.*  
 We should or would have walked,  
*Nous nous serions or nous nous fussions promenés or ées.*  
 You would have walked,  
*Vous vous seriez or vous vous fussiez promenés or ées.*  
 They would have walked,  
*Ils se seraient or ils se fussent promenés or elles se seraient or elles se fussent promenées.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. Affirmatively.

Walk (thou),	<i>Promène-toi.</i>
Let him walk,	<i>Qu'il se promène.</i>
Let her walk,	<i>Qu'elle se promène.</i>
Let us walk,	<i>Promenons-nous.</i>
Walk (ye or you),	<i>Promenez-vous.</i>
Let them walk,	<i>Qu'ils or qu'elles se promènent.</i>

#### 2. Negatively.

Do not walk or walk not (thou),	<i>Ne te promène pas.</i>
Let him not walk,	<i>Qu'il ne se promène pas.</i>
Let her not walk,	<i>Qu'elle ne se promène pas.</i>
Let us not walk,	<i>Ne nous promenons pas.</i>

Do not walk *or* walk not (*ye or you*), *Ne vous promenez pas.*  
 Let them not walk, *Qu'ils or qu'elles ne se promènent pas.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

That I may walk,  
*Que je me promène.*  
 That thou mayst walk,  
*Que tu te promènes.*  
 That he may walk,  
*Qu'il se promène.*  
 That she may walk,  
*Qu'elle se promène.*  
 That we may walk,  
*Que nous nous promenions.*

That you may walk,  
*Que vous vous promeniez.*

That they may walk,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles se promènent.*

## PRETERIT.

That I may have walked,  
*Que je me sois promené or ée.*  
 That thou mayst have walked,  
*Que tu te sois promené or ée.*  
 That he may have walked,  
*Qu'il se soit promené.*  
 That she may have walked,  
*Qu'elle se soit promenée.*  
 That we may have walked,  
*Que nous nous soyons promenés or ées.*

That you may have walked,  
*Que vous vous soyez promenés or ées.*

That they may have walked,  
*Qu'ils se soient promenés or qu'elles se soient promenées.*

## IMPERFECT.

That I might walk,  
*Que je me promenasse.*  
 That thou mightst walk,  
*Que tu te promenasses.*  
 That he might walk,  
*Qu'il se promenât.*  
 That she might walk,  
*Qu'elle se promenât.*  
 That we might walk,  
*Que nous nous promenassions.*

That you might walk,  
*Que vous vous promenassiez.*

That they might walk,  
*Qu'ils or qu'elles se promenassent.*

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might have walked,  
*Que je me fusse promené or ée.*  
 That thou mightst have walked,  
*Que tu te fusses promené or ée.*  
 That he might have walked,  
*Qu'il se fût promené.*  
 That she might have walked,  
*Qu'elle se fût promenée.*  
 That we might have walked,  
*Que nous nous fussions promenés or ées.*

That you might have walked,  
*Que vous vous fussiez promenés or ées.*

That they might have walked,  
*Qu'ils se fussent promenés or qu'elles se fussent promenées.*

## EXERCISE ON THE PRONOMINAL VERBS.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.—I yield to your reasons. He employs himself about trifles. The bird is flying away. We do not amuse ourselves. Are you rising? The flowers are blowing. Do they retract? Do they not stoop?

To yield,	<i>se rendre.</i>
To employ oneself,	<i>s'occuper.</i>
About,	<i>de.</i>
Bird,	<i>oiseau, m.</i>
To fly away,	<i>s'envoler.</i>

To amuse oneself,	<i>s'amuser.</i>
To rise,	<i>se lever.</i>
To blow,	<i>s'épanouir.</i>
To retract,	<i>se rétracter.</i>
To stoop,	<i>se baisser.</i>

IMPERFECT.—I was nursing myself too much. Thou wast warming thyself. The queen was walking on the terrace. Your partner was not well. They were making haste. They despaired without reason. Those gentlemen were laughing at you. They did not expect to see me.

To nurse oneself,	<i>s'écouter.</i>
Too much,	<i>trop.</i>
To warm oneself,	<i>se chauffer.</i>
To walk,	<i>se promener.</i>
Terrace,	<i>terrasse, f.</i>
Partner,	<i>associé, m.</i>

To be well,	<i>se porter bien.</i>
To make haste,	<i>se dépêcher.</i>
To despair,	<i>se désespérer.</i>
To laugh at,	<i>se moquer de.</i>
To expect,	<i>s'attendre à.</i>
See me,	<i>me voir.</i>

PRETERIT.—I distrusted that man. Did his son behave well? Mr. A. did not stop one minute. We recognised ourselves in this portrait. You fell asleep. They met at Rome.

To distrust,	<i>se méfier de.</i>
To behave,	<i>se comporter.</i>
To stop,	<i>s'arrêter.</i>
To recognise each other,	<i>se reconnaître.*</i>

In,	<i>à.</i>
To fall asleep,	<i>s'endormir.*</i>
To meet,	<i>se rencontrer.</i>

FUTURE.—I shall abstain from doing it. He will marry next year. The child will catch cold. She will perceive your design. We will go to bed early. Shall you remember his name? Will they not embark this morning.

To abstain from,	<i>s'abstenir de.*</i>
Doing it,	<i>le faire.</i>
To marry,	<i>se marier.</i>
Next year,	<i>l'année prochaine.</i>
To catch cold,	<i>s'enrhumer.</i>
To perceive,	<i>s'apercevoir de.</i>

Design,	<i>dessain, m.</i>
To go to bed,	<i>se coucher.</i>
Early,	<i>de bonne heure.</i>
To remember,	<i>se souvenir* de or</i> <i>se rappeler.</i>
To embark,	<i>s'embarquer.</i>

CONDITIONAL.—I should not yield to such reasons. Wouldst thou expose thyself to his fury? Would he not make his escape? We would not despair without reason. You would ruin yourselves. They would not retract. His friends would wonder. They would apply themselves too much to study.

---

\* The verbs marked \* in this exercise are irregular; see for their conjugation the table of irregular verbs.

To yield,	<i>se rendre.</i>
To such,	<i>à de telles.</i>
To expose oneself,	<i>s'exposer.</i>
Fury,	<i>furie, f.</i>
To make one's escape,	<i>s'échapper.</i>
To despair,	<i>se désespérer.</i>

Without,	<i>sans,</i>
To ruin oneself,	<i>se ruiner.</i>
To retract,	<i>se rétracter.</i>
To wonder,	<i>s'étonner.</i>
To apply oneself,	<i>s'appliquer.</i>
Too much,	<i>trop.</i>
To study,	<i>à l'étude.</i>

**IMPERATIVE.**—Remember that thou art mortal. Do not thou behave so ill. Let him not expose himself. Let us rest a little while. Hide yourself. Endeavour to please your parents. Let them not interfere in that business.

To remember,	<i>se souvenir que.</i>
Mortal,	<i>mortel.</i>
To behave,	<i>se comporter.</i>
To expose oneself,	<i>s'exposer.</i>
To rest,	<i>se reposer.</i>

A little while,	<i>un peu.</i>
To hide oneself,	<i>se cacher.</i>
To endeavour,	<i>s'efforcer de.</i>
To please,	<i>plaire à.*</i>
To interfere in,	<i>se mêler de.</i>

**SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.**—I must enquire after him. I wish he may be better. For fear he should fly away. In order that we may agree. Until you fall asleep. In order that you may not be proud of that advantage. Those children must behave better another time. Is it not essential that they should contain themselves?

To inquire after,	<i>s'informer de.</i>
Him,	<i>lui.</i>
To be better,	<i>se porter mieux.</i>
To fly away,	<i>s'envoler.</i>
To agree,	<i>s'accorder.</i>
To fall asleep,	<i>s'endormir.</i>
To be proud,	<i>s'enorgueillir.</i>

Advantage,	<i>avantage, m.</i>
Those children must,	<i>il faut que ces enfants.</i>
To behave,	<i>se comporter.</i>
Is it not,	<i>n'est il pas.</i>
Essential,	<i>essentièl.</i>
To contain oneself,	<i>se contenir.*</i>

**IMPERFECT.**—That I might excuse myself. He was obliged to hide himself each time. It was in order that it might take root. He sent us here that we might rest. They required that we should rise at daybreak. They wish that they should not quarrel so often. It was necessary that they should make use of that instrument.

To excuse oneself,	<i>s'excuser.</i>
To hide oneself,	<i>se cacher.</i>
It was,	<i>ce fut.</i>
To take root,	<i>s'enraciner.</i>
He sent us,	<i>il nous envoya.</i>
Here,	<i>ici.</i>
To rest,	<i>se reposer.</i>

They required,	<i>on exigeait.</i>
To rise,	<i>se lever.</i>
At break of day,	<i>au point du jour.</i>
They wish,	<i>on voudrait.</i>
To quarrel,	<i>se disputer.</i>
It was necessary,	<i>il fallait.</i>
To make use of,	<i>se servir de.*</i>

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

## ON THE COMPOUND TENSES OF THE PRONOMINAL VERBS.

I have not laughed at you. He has stolen away. Has she enquired after me? My mother has been tolerably well for some time. Did\* she not faint away? These flowers have faded away. Did they not laugh at me? I had flattered myself without foundation. Your uncle had married. We had confided too inconsiderately in him. She had not applied herself enough. We had not complained of that man. You had condemned yourself. They had hidden themselves to surprise me. I rejoiced at that news. When they had amused themselves sufficiently at his expense, they left him quiet. When I shall have walked enough, I shall return. You will have grown rich before him. I should have devoted myself entirely to the service of my country. He would have repented. We would not have meddled with their affairs. Is it possible that he should have disguised himself so cleverly? What a pity that they should have exposed themselves so rashly! It will never be believed that you have behaved so ill. Would he have wished that I should have ruined myself? We could have wished that you had extricated yourself from these difficulties.

To laugh at,	<i>se moquer de.</i>	To inconsiderately, <i>trop légèrement.</i>
To steal away,	<i>s'esquiver.</i>	Him, <i>lui.</i>
To inquire after,	<i>s'informer de.</i>	To apply oneself, <i>s'appliquer.</i>
To be tolerably well,	<i>se porter assez bien.</i>	Enough, <i>assez.</i>
For some time,	<i>depuis quelque temps.</i>	To complain, <i>se plaindre.*</i>
To faint away,	<i>s'évanouir.</i>	To condemn one- self <i>se condamner.</i>
To fade away,	<i>se flétrir.</i>	To hide oneself, <i>se cacher.</i>
to flatter oneself,	<i>se flatter.</i>	To surprise me, <i>pour me surprendre.</i>
Foundation,	<i>fondement, m.</i>	To rejoice at, <i>se réjouir de.</i>
To marry,	<i>se marier.</i>	To amuse oneself, <i>s'amuser.</i>
To confide in,	<i>se confier à.</i>	Sufficiently, <i>assez.</i>

\* The compound of the present tense must be used here. Several grammarians have fallen into a great mistake by using *did* as the proper sign in English to express generally the sense of the *imperfect* tense of French verbs. Students thus misled would translate: *did you read? did they not eat?* and such like by: *lisiez-vous? ne mangeaient-ils pas?* whereas it should be: *avez-vous lu? n'ont-ils pas mangé?* because *did* mostly represents the *auxiliary verb in the compound of the present tense*. The difference between:

<i>Lisiez-vous,</i>	which means,	were you reading?
<i>Ne mangeaient-ils pas?</i>	" "	were they not eating?
And: <i>Avez-vous lu?</i>	" "	did you read?
<i>N'ont-ils pas mangé?</i>	" "	did they not eat?

is so material that it would greatly perplex the French to understand the meaning of any one that should thus use the former expression for the latter.

Expense,	<i>dépens, m.</i>
To leave,	<i>laisser.</i>
Quiet,	<i>tranquille.</i>
I shall return,	<i>je reviendrai,</i>
To grow rich,	<i>s'enrichir.</i>
To devote oneself,	<i>se dévouer.</i>
Entirely,	<i>entièrement.</i>
Service,	<i>service, m.</i>
Country,	<i>pays, m.</i>
To repent,	<i>se repentir.*</i>
To meddle with,	<i>se mêler de.</i>
To disguise oneself,	<i>se déguiser.</i>

Cleverly,	<i>adroitement.</i>
What a pity,	<i>quel dommage.</i>
To expose oneself,	<i>s'exposer.</i>
Rashly,	<i>témérairement.</i>
It will never be be-	<i>lieved, on ne croira jamais.</i>
To behave ill,	<i>se comporter mal,</i>
To wish,	<i>vouloir.*</i>
To ruin oneself,	<i>se ruiner.</i>
To extricate oneself,	<i>se tirer.</i>
Difficulties,	<i>embarras.</i>

## OF UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

Unipersonal verbs, called by some grammarians *impersonal*, have, as it has already been observed, only one person; and though they frequently have a plural signification, they are always used in French in the third person singular and masculine of their simple and compound tenses. The pronoun *il* used in these verbs never takes the place of any noun.

Some unipersonal verbs are conjugated with *avoir* in their compound tenses; as *il a plu*, it has rained; *il aurait tonné*, it would have thundered; others with *être*, as *il est important*, it matters; *il est arrivé*, it has happened.

## PARADIGM OF UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

### TO RAIN, *Pleuvoir*.

#### INFINITIVE.

##### SIMPLE TENSES.

To rain,	<i>pleuvoir.</i>
Raining,	<i>pleuvant.</i>
Rained,	<i>plu.</i>

##### COMPOUND TENSES.

To have rained,	<i>avoir plu.</i>
Having rained,	<i>ayant plu.</i>

#### INDICATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

It rains, does rain, or is raining,	<i>il pleut.</i>
-------------------------------------	------------------

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

It has rained, *il a plu.*

## IMPERFECT.

It was raining, *il pleuvait.*

## PLUPERFECT.

It had been raining, *il avait plu.*

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

It rained, *il plut.*

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

It had rained, *il eut plu.*

## FUTURE.

It will rain, *il pleuvra.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

It will have rained, *il aurait plu.*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

It would rain, *il pleuvrait.*

## PAST.

It would have rained, *il aurait plu.*

*No imperative,*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

That it may rain, *qu'il pleuve.*

## PRETERIT.

That it may have rained, *qu'il ait plu.*

## IMPERFECT.

That it might rain, *qu'il plût.*

## PLUPERFECT.

That it might have rained, *qu'il eût plu.*



The conjugation of *y avoir*, there to be, and *falloir*, *il faut*, it must, it is necessary, will here be given, as of all unipersonal verbs they are the most used.

## THERE TO BE\*— *Y AVOIR*.

### INFINITIVE.

#### SIMPLE TENSES.

There to be, *y avoir*.  
There being, *y ayant*.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

There to have been, *y avoir eu*.  
There having been, *y ayant eu*.

### INDICATIVE.

#### PRESENT.

There is, or there are, *il y a*.

#### PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

There has been, *il y a eu*.

#### IMPERFECT.

There was, or there were, *il y avait*.

#### PLUPERFECT.

There had been, *il y avait eu*.

#### PRETERIT DEFINITE.

There was, or there were, *il y eut*.

#### PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

There had been, *il y eut eu*.

#### FUTURE.

There will be, *il y aura*.

#### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

There will have been *il y aura eu*.

### CONDITIONAL.

#### PRESENT.

There would be, *il y aurait*.

#### PAST.

There would have been, *il y aurait eu*.

*No imperative.*

---

\* This part of the English verb is explanatory rather than grammatical.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		
That there may be,		<i>qu'il y ait.</i>
PRETERIT.		
That there may have been,		<i>qu'il y ait eu.</i>
IMPERFECT.		
That there might be,		<i>qu'il y eût.</i>
PLUPERFECT.		
That there might have been,		<i>qu'il y eût eu.</i>

---

IT MUST, IT IS NECESSARY—*FALLOIR*,

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.
PRESENT.	<i>Falloir.</i>	<i>Avoir fallu.</i>
	<i>No present participle.</i>	<i>Ayant fallu.</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		
It is necessary,		<i>il faut.</i>
PRETERIT INDEFINITE.		
It has been necessary,		<i>il a fallu.</i>
IMPERFECT.		
It was necessary,		<i>il fallait.</i>
PLUPERFECT.		
It had been necessary,		<i>il avait fallu.</i>
PRETERIT DEFINITE.		
It was necessary,		<i>il fallut.</i>
PRETERIT ANTERIOR.		
It had been necessary,		<i>il eût fallu.</i>
FUTURE.		
It will be necessary,		<i>il faudra.</i>
FUTURE ANTERIOR.		
It will have been necessary,		<i>il aura fallu.</i>

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

It would be necessary, *il faudrait.*

## PAST.

It would have been necessary, *il aurait fallu.*

*No imperative.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

That it may be necessary, *qu'il faille.*

## PRETERIT.

That it may have been necessary, *qu'il ait fallu.*

## IMPERFECT.

That it might be necessary, *qu'il fallût.*

## PLUPERFECT.

That it might have been necessary, *qu'il eût fallu.*

REMARKS.—The English defective verb *must*, not being unipersonal, whereas the French verb *falloir* always is, a change of construction takes place in the translation; this is done in two ways, as the examples given here under will show.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

I must speak,  
Thou must speak,  
He must speak,  
We must speak,  
You must speak,  
They must speak,

*il faut que je parle or il me  
il faut que tu parles or il te  
il faut qu'il parle or il lui  
il faut que nous parlions or il nous  
il faut que vous parliez or il vous  
il faut qu'ils parlent or il leur*

*faut parler*

## IMPERFECT.

It was necessary for me to  
speak, etc.

*il fallait que je parlasse or il me fallait  
parler.*

## PRÆTERIT.

He was obliged to speak, *il fallut qu'il parlât* or *il lui fallut parler.*

## FUTURE.

We will be obliged to speak, *il faudra que nous parlions* or *il nous faudra parler.*

## CONDITIONAL.

It would be necessary for you *il faudrait que vous parlassiez* or *il vous faudrait parler.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

That it may be necessary to *qu'il faille parler.*  
speak,

## IMPERFECT.

That it might be necessary *qu'il fallût parler.*  
to speak,

N.B. When the verb *falloir*, being followed by the conjunction *que*, is in the *present* or the *future* of the indicative mood, it governs the next verb in the *present* of the subjunctive.

When the verb *falloir*, followed by the conjunction *que*, is in the *imperfect*, *preterit*, or *conditional present*, of the indicative mood, the verb it governs must be put in the *imperfect* of the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLES:

I must pass, *il faut que je passe.*  
I shall be obliged to pass, *il faudra que je passe.*  
It was necessary for me to speak, *il fallait que je parlasse.*  
I should be obliged to sell, *il faudrait que je vendisse.*

EXERCISE ON THE UNIPERSONAL VERBS *y avoir* AND *falloir*.

There has been a battle. There were some men in the garden. Is there any fire in the parlour? Are there coaches on the stand? There were two pretenders to the crown. You must speak to them.

You are the man I want.\* My father wants a house. They must buy horses. He was obliged to dismiss his clerk. You must set off. One must study to be a scholar. The child must repeat his lesson now. I should have been obliged to stay at home. He must get up directly. Was there not formerly a coffee house at the corner of that street? There were great rejoicings in France when peace was proclaimed.

Battle,	<i>bataille, f.</i>
Parlour,	<i>salle, f.</i>
Coach,	<i>voiture, f.</i>
Stand,	<i>place, f.</i>
Pretender,	<i>prétendant.</i>
Crown,	<i>couronne, f.</i>
Speak to them,	<i>leur parler.</i>
To buy,	<i>acheter.</i>
To dismiss,	<i>renvoyer.</i>
Clerk,	<i>commis.</i>
To set off,	<i>partir.</i>
One,	<i>on.</i>
To study,	<i>étudier.</i>
A scholar,	<i>savant.</i>
To repeat,	<i>répéter.</i>

Lesson,	<i>leçon, f.</i>
Now,	<i>maintenant.</i>
To stay,	<i>rester.</i>
At home,	<i>à la maison, or chez moi.</i>
To get up,	<i>se lever.</i>
Directly,	<i>sur-le-champ.</i>
Formerly,	<i>autrefois.</i>
Coffee-house,	<i>café, m.</i>
Corner,	<i>côté, m.</i>
Street,	<i>rue, f.</i>
Rejoicings,	<i>réjouissances, f.</i>
Peace,	<i>la paix.</i>
To proclaim,	<i>proclamer.</i>

---

\* *Want* may be turned by *avoir besoin* as well as by *falloir*; thus we say, *vous êtes l'homme qu'il me faut, or dont j'ai besoin, &c.*

## OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are irregular when the terminations are not throughout their conjugations altogether similar to the verb which serves them as a model. They are *defective* when some of their *tenses* or *persons* not admitted by use, are wanting.

## PRIMITIVE TENSES.

INFINITIVE PRESENT.		PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	PRETERIT DEFINITE.
FIR					
To go,	Allet*	Allant	Allé	Je vais	J'allai
Send,	Envoyer	Envoyant	Envoyé	J'envoie	J'envoyai

## SECO

To run,	Courir	Courant	Couru	Je cours	Je cours
Boil,	Bouillir	Bouillant	Bouilli	Je bous	Je bouillis
Gather,	Cueillir	Cueillant	Cueilli	Je cueille	Je cueillis
Fly,	Fuir	Fuyant	Fui	Je fuis	Je fuis
Flourish,	Fleurir	Florissant	Fleuri	Je fleuris	Je fleuris
Die,	Mourir	Mourant	Mort	Je meurs	Je meurs
Project,	Saillir	Saillant†	Sailli	Il saille	
Fail,	Faillir	Faillant	Failli	Je fais	Je faillis
Faint, swoon	Défaillir			Nous défaillois	Je défailis
Acquire,	Acquérir	Acquérant	Acquis	J'acquiers	J'acquis
Hate,	Hair	Haissant	Hai	Je hais	Je hais
Shudder,	Tressaillir	Tressaillant	Tressailli	Je tressaille	Je tressaillis
Clothe,	Vêtir	Vêtant	Vêtu	Je vêts	Je vêtis
Hold,	Tenir	Tenant	Tenu	Je tiens	Je tins
Hear,	Ouïr		Ouï		J'ouïs
Come,	Venir	Venant	Venu	Je viens	Je vins
Serve,	Servir	Servant	Servi	Je sers	Je servis
Set off,	Partir	Partant	Parti	Je pars	Je partis
Go out,	Sortir	Sortant	Sorti	Je sors	Je sortis
Open,	Ouvrir‡	Ouvrant	Ouvert	J'ouvre	J'ouvris
Offer,	Offrir	Offrant	Offert	J'offre	J'offris
Sleep,	Dormir	Dormant	Dormi	Je dors	Je dormis
Lie,	Mentir	Mentant	Menti	Je mens	Je mentis
Feel or smell,	Sentir	Sentant	Senti	Je sens	Je sentis
Repent,	Se repentir	Se repentant	Repenti	Je me repens	Je me repens

\* *Aller* is also conjugated as a *pronominal* verb, with *en*. To go away, *s'en aller*; I go or s going away, *je m'en vais*; go away, *va-s'en*. An euphonic *s* is used in the second person of the imperative of this verb, before *en* and *y*, as: *va-s-en chercher va-s-y de ma part*, but we say: *va prendre la mesure, va y mettre ordre*, because in this sense *en* and *y* are not the accusative of the verb *aller*.

† *Saillir*, to gush out, is regular, and makes *saillissant*.

‡ The few other verbs in *vrir* or *frir*, are conjugated like *ouvrir* or *offrir*.

## DERIVATIVE TENSES

WHICH ARE IRREGULARLY FORMED FROM THE PRIMITIVE TENSES EITHER IN THEIR WHOLE EXTENT OR IN CERTAIN PERSONS ONLY.\*

## CONJUGATION.

Pres. of the Indicative. *Je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.*—Future. *J'irai, iras, etc.*—Cond. *J'irais, tu irais, etc.*—Imperative, *Va, allons, allez*—Pres. of the Subj. *Que j'aille, que tu ailles, qu'il aille, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent.*

Future. *J'enverrai, tu enverras, etc.*—Cond. *J'enverrais, tu enverrais, etc.*

## CONJUGATION.

Fut. *Je courrai, tu courras, etc.*—Cond. *Je courrais, tu courrais, etc.*

Fut. *Je cueillerai, tu cueilleras, etc.*—Cond. *Je cueillerais, tu cueillerais, etc.*

Fut. *Je mourrai, tu mourras, etc.*—Cond. *Je mourrais, tu mourrais, etc.*—Present of the subj. *Que je meure, que tu meures, qu'il meure, que nous mourions, que vous mouriez, qu'ils meurent.*

Fut. *Je foudrai, etc.*

No singular in the present of *défaillir*.—Imperfect. *Je défailtais.*

Pres. of the ind. *J'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquièrent.*—Fut. *J'acquerrai, tu acquerras, etc.*—Cond. *J'acquerrais, tu acquerrais, etc.*—Pres. of the subj. *Que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il acquière, que nous acquérions, que vous acquériez, qu'ils acquièrent.*

Hair makes in the present of the indicative, *Je hais, tu hais, il hait; nous haïssons, vous haïssez, ils haïssent.*

Pres. of the ind. *Je tiens, tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent.*—Fut. *Je tiendrai, tu tiendras, etc.*—Cond. *Je tiendrais, tu tiendrais, etc.*—Pres. of the subj. *Que je tienne, que tu tiennes, qu'il tienne, que nous tenions, que vous teniez, qu'ils tiennent.*

Pres. of the ind. *Je viens, tu viens, il vient, nous venons, vous venez, ils viennent.*—Future, *Je viendrai, tu viendras, etc.*—Cond. *Je viendrais, tu viendrais, etc.*—Pres. of the subj. *Que je vienne, que tu viennes, qu'il vienne, que nous venions, que vous veniez, qu'ils viennent.*

\* Such persons of these tenses as are formed regularly will be put in Roman characters. Observe also, that when a primitive tense is wanting, the derivatives of that tense are wanting likewise (there are a few exceptions).



# PRIMITIVE TENSES.

INFINITIVE PRESENT.		PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	PRETER DEFINITE
TH					
<i>Decay,</i>	Déchoir		Déchu	Je déchois	Je déchus
<i>Fall to,</i>	Echoir	Echéant	Echu	J'échois	J'échus
<i>Must,</i>	Falloir		Fallu	Il faut	Il fallut
<i>Move,</i>	Mouvoir	Mouvant	Mu	Je meus	Je mus
<i>Rain, Provide,</i>	Pleuvoir Pourvoir	Pleuvant Pourvoyant	Plu Pourvu	Il pleut Je pourvois	Il plut Je pourvus
<i>Be able,</i>	Pouvoir	Pouvant	Pu	Je peux ou je puis	Je pus
<i>Know,</i>	Savoir	Sachant	Su	Je sais	Je sus
<i>Become, Sit,</i>	Seoir Seoir	Seyant Séant	Sis (situated)	Il sied	
<i>To sit,</i>	S'asseoir	S'asseyant	Assis	Je m'assieds	Je m'assis
<i>Supersede, put off,</i>	Surseoir	Sursoyant	Sursis	Je sursois	Je surais
<i>Be worth,</i>	Valoir	Valant	Valu	Je vaux	Je valus
<i>Prevail,</i>	Prévaloir	Prévalant	Prévalu	Je prévaux	Je prévalis
<i>See,</i>	Voir	Voyant	Vu	Je vois	Je vis
<i>Be willing,</i>	Vouloir	Voulant	Voulu	Je veux	Je voulus

FOUR

<i>To beat,</i>	Battre	Battant	Battu	Je bats	Je battis
<i>Drink,</i>	Boire	Buvant	Bu	Je bois	Je bus
<i>Absolve,</i>	Absoudre	Absolvant	Absous (absoute in the fem.)	J'absous	
<i>Resolve,</i>	Résoudre	Résolvant	Résous, résolu,	Je résous	Je résolus
<i>Circumcise,</i>	Circoncire	Circoncisant	Circoncis	Je circoncis	Je circoncis

## DERIVATIVE TENSES

WHICH ARE IRREGULARLY FORMED FROM THE PRIMITIVE TENSES, EITHER IN THEIR  
WHOLE EXTENT OR IN CERTAIN PERSONS ONLY

### CONJUGATION.

Present of the indicative. *Nous déchoyons, etc.*—Imperfect. *Je déchoyais; nous déchoyions, etc.*—Fut. *Je décherrai, etc.*—Condit. *Je décherrais, etc.*—Present of the subj. *Que je déchôle, que nous déchoyions.*

Fut. *J'écherrai, etc.*—Condit. *J'écherrais, etc.* Present of the subj. *Que j'échôle, etc.*

Fut. *Il faudra.*—Cond. *Il faudrait.*—Present of the subj. *Qu'il faille* (although there be no participle present).

Present of the ind. *Je meus, tu meus, il meut, nous mouvons, vous mouvez, ils meuvent.*—Present of the subj.—*Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, que nous mouvions, que vous mouviez, qu'ils meuvent.*

Fut. *Je pourvoitrai, tu pourvoitras, etc.*—Cond. *Je pourvoitrais, etc.*

Pres. of the ind.—*Je peux ou je puis, tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons vous pouvez, ils peuvent.*—Fut. *Je pourrai, tu pourras, etc.*—Cond. *Je pourrais, tu pourrais, etc.*—Pres. of the subj *Que je puisse, que tu puisses, etc.*

Pres. of the ind. *Je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent.*—Imperf. of the ind. *Je savais, tu savais, etc.*—Fut. *Je saurai, tu sauras, etc.*—Condit. *Je saurais, tu saurais, etc.* Imper. *Sache, sachez, sachez.*

Pres. of the ind. *Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied, nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'assieient.*—Fut. *Je m'assiérai, tu t'assiéras, etc.*—We say also: *je m'assiérai, tu t'assiéras, etc.*—Cond. *Je m'assiérats, tu t'assiérats, etc.*—We say also: *je m'assiérats.*

Pres. of the ind. *Je vaux, tu vaux, il vaut, nous valons, vous valez, ils valent.*—Fut. *Je vaudrai tu vaudras, etc.*—Cond. *Je vaudrais, tu vaudrais, etc.*—No imperative—Pres. of the subj. *—Que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille, que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils valient.*

*Prévaloir* is conjugated like *valoir*, except that the imperative is used, and that it makes in the subjunctive present, *que je prévale, que tu prévalues, qu'il prévale, que nous prévalions, que vous prévaliez, qu'ils prévalent.*

Fut. *Je verrai, tu verras, etc.*—Cond. *Je verrais, tu verrais, etc.*

Pres. of the ind. *Je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent.*—Fut. *Je voudrai, tu voudras, etc.*—Cond. *Je voudrais, tu voudrais, etc.*—No imperative.—Pres. of the subj. *Que je veuille, que tu veuilles, qu'il veuille, que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils veuillent.*

### CONJUGATION.

Pres. of the ind. *Je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent.*—Pres. of the subj. *Que je boive, que tu boives, qu'ils boive, que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils boivent.*

# PRIMITIVE TENSES.

INFINITIVE PRESENT.		PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	PRETERITE DEFINITE
<i>Know,</i>	Connaitre*	Connaisant	Connu	Je connais	Je connus
<i>Conclude,</i>	Conclure	Concluant	Conclu	Je conclus	Je conclus
<i>Pickle,</i>	Confire	Confisant	Confit	Je confis	Je confis
<i>Sew,</i>	Coudre	Cousant	Cousu	Je couds	Je cousis
<i>Believe,</i>	Croire	Croyant	Cru	Je crois	Je crus
<i>Say or tell,</i>	Dire	Disant	Dit	Je dis	Je dis
<i>Curse,</i>	Maudire	Maudissant	Maudit	Je maudis	Je maudis
<i>Grow,</i>	Croître	Croissant	Crû	Je crois	Je crus
<i>Write,</i>	Ecrire†	Ecrivant	Ecrit	J'écris	J'écrivis
<i>Exclude,</i>	Exclure‡	Excluant	Exclu	J'exclus	J'exclus
<i>Do or make,</i>	Faire	Faisant	Fait	Je fais	Je fis
<i>Join,</i>	Joindre§	Joignant	Joint	Je joins	Je joignis
<i>Read,</i>	Lire	Lisant	Lu	Je lis	Je lus
<i>Shine,</i>	Luire	Luisant	Lui	Je luis	
<i>Put,</i>	Mettre	Mettant	Mis	Je mets	Je mis
<i>Grind,</i>	Moudre¶	Moulant	Moulu	Je mouds	Je moulus
<i>Be born,</i>	Naître	Naissant	Né	Je nais	Je naquis
<i>Hurt, injure,</i>	Nuire	Nuisant	Nui	Je nuis	Je nuisis
<i>Lead,</i>	Conduire¶¶	Conduisant	Conduit	Je conduis	Je conduis
<i>Laugh,</i>	Rire	Riant	Ri	Je ris	Je ris
<i>Break,</i>	Rompre	Rompant	Rompu	Je romps	Je rompis
<i>Please,</i>	Plaire	Plaisant	Plu	Je plais	Je plus
<i>Take,</i>	Prendre	Prenant	Pris	Je prends	Je pris
<i>Graze,</i>	Paitre	Paissant		Il pait	
<i>Suffice</i>	Suffire	Suffisant	Suffi	Je suffis	Je suffis
<i>Follow,</i>	Suivre	Suivant	Suivi	Je suis	Je suivis
<i>Milk,</i>	Traire	Trayant	Trait	Je traite	
<i>Conquer,</i>	Vaincre	Vainquant	Vaincu	Je vains	Je vainquis
<i>Live,</i>	Vivre	Vivant	Vécu	Je vis	Je vécus
<i>Conceal,</i>	Taire	Taisant	Tû	Je tais	Je tus

\* Conjugate like *connaître*, verbs in *aitre* and *oitre*, not included in the table.

† Conjugate like *écrire*, verbs ending in *crire*.

‡ *Conclure* is conjugated like *exclure*.

§ Conjugate like *joindre* all verbs ending in *oindre*, *aindre*, and *eindre*.

¶ To grind, applied to *razors*, *knives*, &c. is translated by *émoudre*.

¶¶ All other verbs ending in *uire*, and those in *truire*, are conjugated like *conduire*.

## DERIVATIVE TENSES.

WHICH ARE IRREGULARLY FORMED FROM THE PRIMITIVE TENSES, EITHER IN THEIR WHOLE EXTENT OR IN CERTAIN PERSONS ONLY.

Pres. of the ind. Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, *vous dites*, ils disent.—Dédire, contredire, ordire, médire, prédire, *make*: vous dédisez, vous contredisez, vous médisez, vous prédisez.—Other persons and the other tenses are conjugated like *dire*.

Pres. of the ind. Je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons, *vous faites*, ils font.—Fut. Je ferai, tu feras, etc.—Cond. *je ferais*, tu ferais, etc.—Pres. of the subj. *Que je fasse*, *que tu fasses*, etc.—Entreprendre, défaire, refaire, surfaire, and satisfaire, are conjugated in the same manner.

Pres. of the ind. Je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, *ils prennent*.—Pres. of the subj. *Que je prenne*, *que tu prennes*, *qu'il prenne*, que nous prenions, que vous preniez, *ils prennent*.

Pres. of the ind. Je vains, tu vains, *il vainc*, nous vainquons, vous vainquez, ils vainquent.

ATTACHED REMARKS ON A FEW DEFECTIVE VERBS LITTLE IN USE, AND THEREFORE, OMITTED IN THE ABOVE TABLE:—

*écrire* to strike; *choir* to fall; *quérir*, to fetch; and *soudre* to solve, have only the infinitive in use. *écrire* to lie, is no longer in use; yet we say, il git; nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent. Je gisais, &c. *saisant*.

*éclore* to shut up, and *forfaire* to prevaricate, are only used in the infinitive and compound tenses, the participles past *réclus*, *forfait*.

*poindre* to dawn, has only *il point*, and *il poindra*.

*sourdre* to issue, (speaking of waters, fountains, rivers,) has only *il sourd*, *ils sourdent*.

*brayer* to bray, is only used in the infinitive, and the third persons, sing. and plur. of the present, re, and conditional.

*bruyre*, to roar, has only *bruyant* in use.

*clorre*, to close, are used only in the past participle and the present indicative.

*éclore*, to blow open, has only the past participle *éclos*, and the third persons of the indicative present,

*frir*, to fry, has only its past participle *frit*, and the three persons singular of the indicative present, *il*, *tu*, *frit*, *il frit*; in the plural, we say: nous faisons *frire*, &c. &c.

**OBSERVE.**—The *compound* of the irregular verbs contained in the preceding tables, follow the conjugation of their *simple*. Thus *convaincre*, *promettre*, *repartir*, etc. are conjugated absolutely like *vaincre*, *mettre*, *partir*.

With the assistance of these tables and the rules we have given on the formation of tenses, there is no French verb that cannot be easily conjugated.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES

### ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION.

I went to pay a visit to your aunt the day before yesterday. He went away at ten o'clock. My sister and yours went to church together. They go every other day to see their grandfather. We were going to your house. Let us go to see the review. They sent too little money. Shut the door for fear they should go into the garden. He must send back my letters. We were obliged to send some every week. Your workmen go away early, to-day. I would go to India if I could. We shall send these flowers to your mother. Let us go to the park. I used to go there every other day, they only go twice a week. Must we go now? You will be obliged to send them before they go. Send it to me without fail, the day after to-morrow. Am I to send this to him to-night? No; we will send it to him to-morrow. Let them go away. Do not go yet. The carrier is just\* gone. He had just sent the bill. We are† to go to the country. They were to go with us. We shall be late. We must go.

To go,	<i>aller.</i>
To pay a visit,	<i>faire une visite.</i>
The day before yes-	<i>avant hier.</i>
terday,	
To go away,	<i>s'en aller.</i>
Ten o'clock,	<i>dix heures.</i>
To church,	<i>à l'église.</i>
Together,	<i>ensemble.</i>
Every other day,	<i>tous les deux jours.</i>
Too little,	<i>trop peu d'</i>
To shut,	<i>fermer.</i>
To send back,	<i>renvoyer.</i>
We were obliged,	<i>il fallait que.</i>
To send some,	<i>en envoyer.</i>
Week,	<i>semaine, f.</i>
Workman,	<i>ouvrier.</i>

To go away,	<i>s'en aller.</i>
Early,	<i>de bonne heure.</i>
To India,	<i>aux Indes.</i>
Could,	<i>pouvais.</i>
Park,	<i>parc, m.</i>
Every other day,	<i>tous les deux jours.</i>
A week,	<i>par semaine.</i>
Fail,	<i>faute, f.</i>
Night,	<i>ce soir.</i>
The day after,	<i>après.</i>
Yet,	<i>encore.</i>
Carrier,	<i>commissionnaire.</i>
Bill,	<i>m<sup>e</sup>mote, compte, m.</i>
We are,	<i>nous devons.</i>
To the country,	<i>à la campagne.</i>
To be late,	<i>être en retard.</i>

\* To express an action *just* performed, the French use idiomatic tenses, thus: I have just spoken, *je viens de parler*. He had just read, *Il venait de lire*.

† The verb *to be*, followed by an infinitive, is translated in French by the verb *devoir*. Ex: I am to set off to-day, *je dois partir aujourd'hui*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

That affair requires all my attention. The fruits he gathers are not ripe. We will receive those gentlemen with kindness. It is time to throw off some clothing. Let us inquire about that event. He startled with joy. They were dying with fear. They ran away at the first appearance of danger. His father has acquired great wealth by his industry. You did not welcome him as a friend. We ran so fast that we were quite out of breath when we came. Those two travellers ran over all Europe together. Had you acted like him, you would have incurred my displeasure. We must welcome your friend better this time. His father died of grief. I had opened the windows. His actions never belie his words. Wake us, that we may set out before seven o'clock to-morrow morning. He will repent his idleness. You have made use of his name. For fear he should not keep his word. This house will belong to his daughter after his death. Agree that he is right. I shall remember it. We kept him a fortnight. I abstain from drinking wine: This meat has not boiled enough. The troops did not contain the populace. Let us avoid these flatterers. Though he came regularly. Commerce was flourishing in your country.

To require,	<i>requérir.</i>
To gather,	<i>cueillir.</i>
Ripe,	<i>mûrs, m. p.</i>
To receive,	<i>accueillir.</i>
It is time,	<i>il est temps de.</i>
To throw off clothing,	<i>se dévêtir.</i>
To enquire about,	<i>s'enquérir de.</i>
Event,	<i>événement, m.</i>
Do startle with joy,	<i>tressaillir de joie.</i>
Do be dying with fear,	<i>se mourir de peur.</i>
To run away,	<i>s'enfuir.</i>
Appearance,	<i>apparence, f.</i>
To acquire,	<i>acquérir.</i>
Wealth,	<i>des richesses.</i>
Industry,	<i>industrie, f.</i>
To welcome,	<i>accueillir.</i>
As a,	<i>en.</i>
To run,	<i>courir.</i>
Fast,	<i>vite.</i>
Out of breath,	<i>hors d'haleine.</i>
Travellers,	<i>voyageurs.</i>
To run over,	<i>parcourir.</i>
Had you,	<i>si vous aviez.</i>
To act,	<i>agir.</i>
Like him,	<i>comme lui.</i>
To incur,	<i>encourir.</i>

Displeasure,	<i>déplaisir, m.</i>
Grief,	<i>chagrin, m.</i>
To open,	<i>ouvrir.</i>
To belie,	<i>démentir.</i>
Words,	<i>paroles, f. p.</i>
To wake,	<i>éveiller.</i>
To set out,	<i>partir.</i>
To repent,	<i>se repentir de.</i>
Idleness,	<i> paresse, f.</i>
To make use of,	<i>se servir de.</i>
To keep,	<i>tenir.</i>
To belong,	<i>appartenir.</i>
To agree,	<i>convenir.</i>
To be right,	<i>avoir raison.</i>
To remember it,	<i>s'en souvenir.</i>
To keep any one,	<i>retenir.</i>
A fortnight,	<i>une quinzaine.</i>
To abstain from,	<i>s'abstenir de.</i>
Meat,	<i>v viande, f.</i>
To boil,	<i>bouillir.</i>
Enough,	<i>assez.</i>
Troops,	<i>troupes, f. p.</i>
To contain,	<i>maintenir.</i>
To avoid,	<i>fuir.</i>
Flatterers,	<i>flatteurs.</i>
Regularly,	<i>régulièrement.</i>
To flourish,	<i>fleurir.*</i>

\* Figuratively used, *fleurir* makes *florissant*, and in the imperfect *florissait*, *florissaient*.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

I sat down at the foot of a tree. We saw the comet. I cannot play this tune. Does she know that you are here? We will sit down presently. This watch is worth five-and-twenty-guineas. Could you lend me your opera-glass. Will they be able to follow us? If he foresees the danger why does he not endeavour to avoid it? They were willing to go away but your uncle made them sit down again. Shall you see them again? If you want my horse, it is at your service. She moved the heart of that unfeeling man. That bill of exchange has expired. He will know it in time. He may see them if he chooses. They were moved with fear and pity. Take an umbrella for fear it should rain. That does not become you. They are not better than their cousins. Can we be useful to you? Who will provide for his wants? Move, that I may sit upon the sofa. He must remain here till he knows his lesson. He is continually moving; let him sit down. They know that yours is worth more than theirs. I shall provide him with money in case it may be worth more than he foresees.

To sit down,	<i>s'asseoir.</i>
Foot,	<i>piéd, m.</i>
Tree,	<i>arbre, m.</i>
To see,	<i>votr.</i>
Comet,	<i>comette, f.</i>
Can,	<i>pouvoir.</i>
To play,	<i>jouer.</i>
Tune,	<i>air, m.</i>
To know,	<i>savoir.</i>
Presently,	<i>tout-à-l'heure.</i>
Watch,	<i>montre, f.</i>
To be worth,	<i>valoir.</i>
Guineas,	<i>guinées, f. p.</i>
To lend,	<i>prêter.</i>
Opera-glass,	<i>lorgnette, f.</i>
To be able,	<i>pouvoir.</i>
To follow,	<i>suivre.</i>
To foresee,	<i>prévoir.</i>
To endeavour to,	<i> tâcher de.</i>
To avoid,	<i>éviter.</i>
To be willing,	<i>vouloir.</i>
To go away,	<i>s'en aller.</i>
Made them,	<i>les fit.</i>
To sit down again,	<i>se rasseoir.</i>
To see again,	<i>revoir.</i>

To want,	<i>avoir besoin de.</i>
Service,	<i>service, m.</i>
To move,	<i>émouvoir.</i>
Unfeeling,	<i>insensible.</i>
Bill of exchange,	<i>lettre de change, f.</i>
To expire,	<i>échoir.</i>
In time,	<i>à temps.</i>
May,	<i>pouvoir.</i>
To choose,	<i>vouloir.</i>
With,	<i>de.</i>
Take,	<i>prendre.</i>
Umbrella,	<i>parapluie, m.</i>
To rain,	<i>pleuvoir.</i>
To become,	<i>devenir.</i>
To be better,	<i>valoir mieux.</i>
Useful,	<i>utile.</i>
To provide for,	<i>pourvoir à.</i>
Wants,	<i>besoins, m. p.</i>
To move,	<i>s'ôter.</i>
Sofa,	<i>canapé, sofa, m.</i>
Must,	<i>falloir.</i>
To remain,	<i>rester.</i>
To move,	<i>se mouvoir.</i>
To provide,	<i>pourvoir.</i>
To foresee,	<i>prévoir.</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I admit that principle. He does no harm. Does she fear your anger? He struggled a long while. She has learnt her fable. They extract the finest passages of that work. He is building a

ship on a new plan. The English drink much tea. Your income increases every day. The metal will soon be dissolved. Conduct the ladies to the drawing-room. Shall you preserve some fruit this year? Ask him if he is acquainted with any of these gentlemen. Ged rid of that bad habit. She mimics everybody. Let us satisfy our parents. Pay more attention. Let them put out the fire. I never transgressed the laws of my country. Join your efforts to his. He would not have believed it. I do not set a great value on riches. He was excluded from the company. Who was elected? Napoleon was born at Ajaccio in Corsica. His behaviour has not pleased us. They surprised the enemy during the night. Let us drink the health of the king. Would you have excluded them? That piece is not well sewed. She has grown much lately. Though his misfortunes increase constantly, he endures them with fortitude. Never contradict any one in public. Tell all you know. I had foretold that event. You slander everybody. Had she promised it to your sister? Did you contradict that assertion? I described to them the ceremony. I must transcribe all these letters. They never exact in that shop. The sun shines for everybody. We have not yet read this work. I have omitted the date. I must have my razors ground. The coffee is ground. Where were you born? Do not seem either too cheerful or too grave. We all laughed heartily. Everybody was silent. I shall keep silent on that condition. Have you conquered all the difficulties? They lived in the most perfect harmony. She has survived her husband. Fathers live again in their children. The sun did not shine to-day. Tell him that you never speak ill of any body. Undo this, that he may do it again before us.

To admit,	<i>admettre.</i>
Principle,	<i>principe, m.</i>
To do harm,	<i>faire du mal.</i>
To fear,	<i>craindre.</i>
Anger,	<i>colère, f.</i>
To struggle,	<i>se débattre.</i>
A long while,	<i>long-temps.</i>
To learn,	<i>apprendre.</i>
To extract,	<i>extraire.</i>
Fine,	<i>beau, m. s.</i>
Work,	<i>ouvrage, m.</i>
To build,	<i>construire.</i>
Ship,	<i>vaisseau, m.</i>
New,	<i>nouveau, m.</i>
To drink,	<i>boire.</i>
Tea,	<i>thé, m.</i>
Income,	<i>revenu, m.</i>
To increase,	<i>accroître.</i>
Metal,	<i>métal, m.</i>
To dissolve,	<i>dissoudre.</i>
To conduct,	<i>conduire.</i>
Drawing-room,	<i>salon, m.</i>
To preserve,	<i>conserver.</i>
To be acquainted with,	<i>connaître.</i>

Any,	<i>quelques-uns.</i>
To get rid of,	<i>se débarrasser de.</i>
Habit,	<i>habitude, .</i>
To mimic,	<i>contrefaire,</i>
To satisfy,	<i>satisfaire.</i>
To pay attention,	<i>faire attention.</i>
To put out,	<i>éteindre.</i>
To transgress,	<i>enfreindre.</i>
To join,	<i>joindre.</i>
To believe,	<i>croire.</i>
To set,	<i>mettre.</i>
Value,	<i>prix, m.</i>
On riches,	<i>aux richesses, f. p.</i>
To exclude,	<i>exclure.</i>
To elect,	<i>élire.</i>
To be born,	<i>naître.</i>
Corsica,	<i>Corse, f.</i>
Behaviour,	<i>conduite, f.</i>
To please,	<i>plaire.</i>
To surprise,	<i>surprendre.</i>
Enemy,	<i>l'ennemi.</i>
To drink,	<i>boire.</i>
Health,	<i>santé, f.</i>
To sew,	<i>coudre.</i>
To grow,	<i>croître.</i>



Lately,	<i>dernièrement.</i>	Razors,	<i>rasoirs, m.</i>
Misfortunes,	<i>malheurs, m.</i>	Coffee,	<i>café, m.</i>
Constantly,	<i>constamment.</i>	To be born,	<i>naître.</i>
To endure,	<i>supporter.</i>	To seem,	<i>paraître.</i>
Fortitude,	<i>courage, m.</i>	Either too,	<i>ni trop.</i>
To contradict,	<i>contredire.</i>	Cheerful,	<i>gai.</i>
To tell,	<i>dire.</i>	Grave,	<i>sérieux.</i>
To foretell,	<i>prédire.</i>	To laugh,	<i>rire.</i>
Event,	<i>événement, m.</i>	Heartily,	<i>de grand cœur.</i>
To slander,	<i>médire de.</i>	To be silent,	<i>se taire.</i>
To promise,	<i>promettre.</i>	To conquer,	<i>vaincre.</i>
To describe,	<i>décrire.</i>	Difficulties,	<i>difficultés, f. p.</i>
To transcribe,	<i>transcrire.</i>	To live,	<i>vivre.</i>
To exact,	<i>sursaire.</i>	Harmony,	<i>harmonie, f.</i>
Shop,	<i>magasin, m.</i>	Perfect,	<i>parfaite, f.</i>
To shine,	<i>luire.</i>	To survive,	<i>survivre a.</i>
To read,	<i>lire.</i>	Husband,	<i>mari.</i>
To omit,	<i>omettre.</i>	To live again,	<i>revivre.</i>
Date,	<i>date, f.</i>	To shine,	<i>luire,</i>
To have any thing	<i>faire émauder or</i>	Speak ill,	<i>médire.</i>
ground,	<i>moudre.</i>	Before,	<i>devant.</i>

## CHAPTER VI.

### OF THE ADVERB.

The adverb is an indeclinable word that is joined to a verb, an adjective, or sometimes another adverb, to express some quality or circumstance respecting it:—as you speak well, *vous parlez BIEN.*

Adverbs are simple or compound, that is, are formed of one or several words.

#### EXAMPLES :

Always,	<i>toujours.</i>
This morning,	<i>ce matin.</i>

Adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding *ment*,\* when the adjective ends in the masculine with a vowel : as, *sage, sagement ; modeste, modestement ;* and when

\* The following take an *é* before the final *ment* : *aveuglement, commodément, conformément, énormément, uniformément.*

The adjectives *beau, nouveau, fou* and *mou*, form their adverbs from their feminine, *belle, nouvelle, folle, molle*, thus, *bellement, nouvellement, etc.* *Impunit* is also an exception, and makes *impunément.*

it ends in the masculine with a consonant, the adverb is formed from the feminine termination ; thus the adjectives *fort, franc, doux, heureux*, form from their feminine *forte, franche, douce, heureuse*, the adverbs *fortement, franchement, doucement, heureusement*.\*

When the adjective ends in the masculine in *ant* or *ent*,† the adverb is formed by changing *nt* into *mment*. Thus, *éloquent, évident, constant*, make *éloquemment, évidemment, constamment*.

Three adverbs in *mment*, are derived from obsolete adjectives ; these are : *notamment, nuitamment, and sciement*.

N.B. The termination *ment*, in adverbs, comes from the latin ablative *mente*, which means *mind, manner*, Thus from *teneré mente, forti mente*, we have made *tendrement, fortement, &c.*

#### ADVERBS ARE DIVIDED INTO THE SEVERAL CLASSES ACCORDING TO THEIR MEANING.

##### ADVERBS OF TIME.

The chief adverbs of time are,

##### FOR THE PRESENT.

<i>A présent</i> , now, at present.	<i>aujourd'hui</i> , to-day.
<i>maintenant</i> , now.	<i>dès aujourd'hui</i> , }
<i>à cette heure</i> , at this time.	<i>aujourd'hui même</i> , } this very day.
<i>sur-le-champ</i> , }	<i>cette après-midi</i> , this afternoon.
<i>tout de suite</i> , } immediately.	<i>tout à l'heure</i> , { this minute.
<i>à l'instant</i> , }	{ this instant.
<i>incessamment</i> , }	<i>ce matin</i> , this morning.
<i>vite</i> , quick.	<i>ce soir</i> , to-night, this evening.

\* Except *gentil* which makes *gentiment*, and *commune*, *confuse*, *diffuse*, *expresse*, *importune*, *obscur*, *précise*, *profonde*, which change the *c* mute into *é* : as *communément, confusément, etc.*

† *Lent* slow ; makes *lentement*, slowly ; *présent* makes *présentement*, presently ; and *vêtement*, *véritablement*.

.. Lists more or less complete of *Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions*, being found in all Grammars, the Author of this work could only transcribe them from the books in which such lists appeared to him most complete or judiciously arranged.

## FOR THE TIME PAST.

<i>Hier</i> , yesterday.	<i>anciennement</i> ,	} formerly.
<i>avant-hier</i> , the day before yesterday.	<i>autrefois</i> ,	
<i>hier au soir</i> , last evening, last night.	<i>jadis</i> ,	} formerly.
<i>hier matin</i> , yesterday morning.	<i>depuis peu</i> , lately, of late.	
<i>la veille</i> ,	<i>naguère</i> , not long since.	} very lately.
<i>le jour précédent</i> ,	<i>auparavant</i> , before.	
<i>la veille</i> ,	<i>récemment</i> , recently.	} very lately.
<i>le jour précédent</i> ,	<i>tout récemment</i> ,	
<i>la veille</i> ,	<i>nouvellement</i> ,	} very lately.
<i>l'avant-veille</i> ,	<i>la dernière fois</i> , the last time.	
<i>l'autre jour</i> , the other day.	<i>il y a quinze jours</i> , a fortnight ago.	} just now.
<i>l'année passée</i> ,	<i>il y a quelque temps</i> , some time ago.	
<i>l'année dernière</i> ,	<i>il n'y a qu'un moment</i> ,	} just now.
<i>jusqu'ici</i> , hitherto.	<i>tout à l'heure</i> ,	
<i>jusqu'à présent</i> , till now.	<i>dernièrement</i> , lately.	} last night.
<i>il y a huit jours</i> , a week ago.	<i>cette nuit</i> ,	
<i>il y a long-temps</i> , a long time ago.	<i>la nuit dernière</i> ,	

## FOR THE TIME TO COME.

<i>Demain</i> , to-morrow.	<i>bientôt</i> , soon, very soon.
<i>après demain</i> ,	<i>tantôt</i> , by and by.
{ the day after to-morrow.	<i>l'année qui vient</i> ,
<i>le lendemain</i> , the next day.	{ next year.
<i>le sur-lendemain</i> , two days after.	<i>l'année prochaine</i> ,
<i>le jour suivant</i> , the following day.	<i>à l'avenir</i> , for the future.
<i>demain matin</i> , to-morrow morning.	<i>dorénavant</i> ,
	{ henceforth.
	<i>désormais</i> ,
	<i>dans peu</i> , shortly.
<i>demain soir</i> ,	<i>dans six mois d'ici</i> , six months hence.
{ to-morrow evening.	<i>avant qu'il soit long-temps</i> , before long.
{ to-morrow night.	
<i>à la veille</i> , on the eve.	
<i>tôt</i> , soon.	

## FOR TIME IN GENERAL.

<i>D'abord</i> , at first.	<i>pour lors</i> , at that time.
<i>souvent</i> , often.	<i>dés-lors</i> , from that time.
<i>quelquefois</i> ,	<i>plus tôt</i> , sooner.
{ sometimes.	<i>au plus tôt</i> , as soon as possible.
<i>parfois</i> ,	<i>trop tôt</i> , too soon.
<i>rarement</i> , seldom.	<i>tôt ou tard</i> , sooner or later.
<i>jamais</i> , never.	<i>tantôt</i> , sometimes.
<i>à jamais</i> , for ever.	<i>tard</i> , late.
<i>presque jamais</i> , scarcely ever.	<i>trop tard</i> , too late.
<i>plus que jamais</i> , more than ever.	<i>au plus tard</i> , the latest.
<i>toujours</i> , always.	<i>soudain</i> , on a sudden.
<i>pour toujours</i> , for ever and ever.	<i>au plus vite</i> ,
<i>presque toujours</i> , most commonly.	{ with all speed.
<i>depuis</i> , since.	<i>en toute diligence</i> ,
<i>à toute heure</i> ,	<i>de bonne heure</i> , early.
{ every moment.	<i>de mon matin</i> ,
<i>à tout moment</i> ,	{ early in the morning.
<i>à tout instant</i> ,	<i>de grand matin</i> ,

*continuellement*, continually.  
*sans cesse*, } incessantly.  
*incessamment*, }  
*cependant*, in the mean while.  
*l'ordinaire*, mostly, most times.  
*à l'ordinaire*, as usual, usually.  
*communément*, commonly.  
*fréquemment*, frequently.  
*la plupart du temps*, most times.  
*alors*, then.  
*en plein jour*, } at noon-day.  
*en plein midi*, }  
*tous les jours*, every day.  
*tout le jour*, } the whole day,  
*toute la journée*, }  
*tout d'un coup*, all at once.  
*tout-à-coup*, suddenly.  
*en moins de rien*, in a trice.  
*de temps en temps*, now and then,  
*en temps et lieu*, in a proper time  
 and place.  
*en même temps*, at the same time.  
*peu de temps après*, shortly after.

*pas encore*, not yet.  
*de nouveau*, anew.  
*le matin*, in the morning.  
*l'après-midi*, in the afternoon.  
*de jour*, by day.  
*de nuit*, by night.  
*jour et nuit*, day and night.  
*tous les deux jours*, { every other  
*de deux jours l'un*, { day.  
*de jour en jour*, from day to day.  
*depuis ce temps-là*, ever since.  
*à loisir*, leisurely.  
*déjà*, already.  
*au premier jour*, { with the  
*à la première occasion*, { first op-  
 portunity.  
*dans l'occasion*, upon the occasion.  
*à propos*, seasonably.  
*fort à propos*, very seasonably.  
*enfin*, at last.  
*ensuite*, afterwards.  
*au commencement*, at the beginning  
*à la fin*, at the end.

## ADVERBS OF PLACE AND ORDER.

*Où*, where.  
*d'où*, whence.  
*par où*, which way. [place.  
*par quel endroit*, through what  
*de quel endroit*, from what place.  
*ici*, here.  
*d'ici*, hence.  
*de là*, thence.  
*par-là*, that way.  
*là-bas*, yonder.  
*en bas*, below, below stairs.  
*dedans*, } within.  
*en dedans*, }  
*hors*, } without.  
*en dehors*, }  
*par ici*, this way.  
*là*, there.  
*en haut*, up, up stairs.  
*dessous*, under.  
*dessus*, above.  
*jusqu'on*, how far?  
*jusqu'ici*, so far, down to here,  
 as far as this place.  
*jusque-là*, so far, down to there,  
 as far as that place.  
*loin*, far.  
*près*, near.

*ici près*, } here near,  
*près d'ici* }  
*tout près d'ici*, just by.  
*ici autour*, hereabout.  
*aux environs*, thereabout.  
*bien loin*, very far.  
*bien près*, very near.  
*proche*, } hard by.  
*tout auprès*, }  
*tout contre*, }  
*ailleurs*, elsewhere.  
*nulle part*, nowhere.  
*quelque part*, somewhere.  
*vis-à-vis*, over against.  
*à côté*, by.  
*de côté*, aside.  
*à terre*, down.  
*par terre*, on the ground.  
*devant*, } before.  
*par devant*, }  
*sur le devant*, on the fore part.  
*derrière*, } behind.  
*par derrière*, }  
*autre part*, somewhere else.  
*deçà*, } on this side.  
*en deçà*, }  
*de ce côté-ci*, }

<i>de-là,</i>	} on that side.	<i>premièrement,</i> first or firstly.
<i>en de-là,</i>		<i>secondement,</i> secondly.
<i>de ce côté-là,</i>	} on both sides.	<i>deuxièmement</i>
<i>de deux côtés,</i>		<i>en premier lieu,</i> in the first place.
<i>de part et d'autre,</i>		<i>en dernier lieu,</i> lastly.
<i>là haut,</i> above.		<i>alternativement,</i> alternately.
<i>de tout côté,</i>	} on every side.	<i>ensemble,</i> together.
<i>de toutes parts,</i>		<i>ensuite,</i> afterwards.
<i>d'un côté et d'autre,</i> about and about.		<i>de suite,</i>
<i>au même endroit,</i> in the same place.		<i>l'un après l'autre,</i> { one after another.
<i>par de-là,</i>	} farther.	<i>séparément,</i> separately.
<i>plus loin,</i>		<i>pêle-mêle,</i> confusedly.
<i>ça et là,</i> up and down.		<i>à la fois,</i> at once.
<i>à droite,</i> on the right.		<i>un à un,</i> one by one.
<i>à gauche,</i> on the left.		<i>deux à deux,</i> two and two.
<i>à main droite,</i> on the right hand.		<i>en foule,</i> in a crowd.
<i>à main gauche,</i> on the left hand.		<i>sens dessus dessous,</i> upside down.
<i>depuis le haut jusqu'en bas,</i> from the top to the bottom.		<i>sens devant derrière,</i> preposterously.
<i>en avant,</i> forward.		<i>tour-à-tour,</i> by turn.
<i>en arrière,</i> backward.		<i>dernièrement,</i> lastly.
<i>au dehors,</i>	} abroad.	<i>à rebours,</i> the wrong way, the wrong-side.
<i>dans les pays étrangers,</i>		<i>par-tout,</i> every where.
<i>au dedans,</i>	} at home.	
<i>dans le royaume,</i>		

## THE ADVERBS OF QUALITY ARE,

<i>De beaucoup</i> , by much.	<i>à bon marché</i> , cheap.
<i>peu à peu</i> , by degrees, little by little.	<i>à vil prix</i> , at a vile price.
<i>de plus</i> , moreover.	<i>combien de fois</i> ? how many times?
<i>tout au plus</i> , at most.	<i>une fois</i> , once.
<i>en abondance</i> , in plenty.	<i>deux fois</i> , twice.
<i>abondamment</i> , plentifully.	<i>trois fois</i> , three times.
<i>par dessus le marché</i> , into the bargain.	<i>à peu près, à peu de choses près</i> , nearly, within a small matter.
<i>cher</i> , dear.	<i>cent fois</i> , a hundred times.
<i>trop cher</i> , too dear.	<i>à demi</i> , } by half, by halves.
<i>au moins</i> , } at least.	<i>à moitié</i> , }
<i>du moins</i> , }	<i>d'autant plus</i> , so much the more, the more.
<i>pour le moins</i> , }	<i>d'autant moins</i> , so much the less, the less.
<i>environ</i> , about.	

And the following which require the proposition *de* before the next noun.

<i>Combien,</i> { how much.	<i>tant soit peu,</i> ever so little.
} how many.	<i>beaucoup,</i> much, a great deal.
<i>peu,</i> little.	<i>pas beaucoup,</i> not much.
<i>un peu,</i> a little.	<i>guères or guère,</i> but little.

*assez*, enough.  
*suffisamment*, sufficiently.  
*trop*, too much.  
*trop peu*, too little.  
*tant*, so much, so many.

*autant*, so much.  
*plus*,  
*davantage*, } more.  
*moins*, less.

When the adverb *bien* is used for *beaucoup*, it requires the article before the substantive. He has many friends, *il a bien des amis*, or *il a beaucoup d'amis*.

## ADVERBS OF QUALITY AND MANNER.

*Bien*, well.  
*mal*, bad, wrong.  
*fort bien*,  
*très bien*, } very well.  
*fort mal*,  
*très-mal*, } very badly.  
*bien mal*,  
*à l'aise*, at ease.  
*à plaisir*, for pleasure's sake.  
*à regret*,  
*à contre-cœur*, } with reluctance.  
*de bon cœur*,  
*de bonne volonté*, } very willingly.  
*de bon gré*, } of one's own  
*de plein gré*, } accord.  
*à mon gré*, to my mind.  
*à votre gré*, to your mind.  
*au naturel*, to the life.  
*à l'envi*, in emulation of one  
 another.  
*au hasard*, at random.  
*par hasard*, by chance.  
*à tout hasard*, at all events.  
*au pis aller*, let the worst come  
 to the worst.  
*goutte à goutte*, by drops.  
*sans faute*, without fail.

*à toute force*, by all means.  
*de manière à*, so as to.  
*de toutes les manières*, all ways.  
*à tous égards*, in all respects.  
*au dépourvu*, unthought of.  
*sans façons*, } without cere-  
*sans cérémonie*, } mony.  
*en diligence*, in haste.  
*à pied*, on foot.  
*à cheval*, on horseback.  
*à la mode*, after the fashion.  
*à l'Anglaise*, after the English  
 fashion.  
*de sang froid*, in cold blood.  
*exprès*, on purpose.  
*tout de bon*, in good earnest.  
*pour rire*, in a joke.  
*pour badiner*, in jest.  
*en riant*,  
*en badinant*, } for fun.  
*de mieux, en mieux*, better and  
 better.  
*de pis en pis*, worse and worse.  
*à peine*, scarcely.  
*presque*, almost.  
*modestement*, modestly.  
*sagement*, wisely.

## ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION, NEGATION, COMPARISON, DOUBT, AND INTERROGATION.

*Oui*, yea.  
*certain*,  
*certainement*, } certainly.  
*vraiment*, truly.  
*en vérité*, indeed.  
*à la vérité*, in truth.  
*sans doute*, without doubt.  
*non, ne, ni*, } no, not, nor.  
*pas point*,

*ne plus*, no longer.  
*point du tout*, not at all.  
*nullement*, by no means.  
*en nulle manière*, not in the least.  
*jamais*, never.  
*aussi, too, also, as*.  
*de la sorte*,  
*ainsi*, } thus, so.  
*de même*, so.

*comme*, as.  
*comme cela*, like that.  
*ni plus ni moins*, neither more nor less.  
*plutôt*, rather.  
*peut-être*, perhaps.  
*probablement*, probably.  
*vraisemblablement*, very likely.  
*pourquoi*, why?

*combien*, how much?  
*comment*, how?  
*combien y a-t-il*,  
*combien de temps y a-t-il*, } how  
*jusqu' à quand y aura-t-il*, } long  
*jusqu'où*, how far?  
*d'où vient que*, whence comes it  
that?  
*quand*, when?

## EXERCISE ON THE ADVERBS.

I arrived precisely at five o'clock. I did not know you at first. He did it easily. He was dangerously wounded. I have not walked enough. He has as much money as you. I was so much the more persuaded of what you told me that I recommended him. Those ladies dress after the French fashion. He has done it well; try to do it better still. Get up betimes to-morrow. How much do I owe you? You see to how many dangers we are liable. How far is it from hence to Bristol? How long will it be before you write to your father? Your friend arrives very unseasonably. Never do things by halves. He will never forget you. Do you see that house yonder? He is gone that way. From that time I esteemed that man. Does your brother behave better now? Will he do it for less? If you cannot come, at least write to me. I give you but little of it. Will you have more? Make him stay, by all means. He will suit you in all respects. Is it to your mind? Was it in good earnest? No; it was in jest. I disturb you. Not in the least.

Precise,*	<i>précis.</i>
To know,	<i>reconnaître.</i>
At first,	<i>d'abord.</i>
Easy,	<i>aisé.</i>
Dangerous,	<i>dangereux.</i>
Wounded,	<i>blessé.</i>
To walk,	<i>marcher.</i>
Enough,	<i>assez.</i>
As much,	<i>autant de.</i>
So much the more,	<i>d'autant plus.</i>
What,	<i>ce que.</i>
To tell,	<i>dire.</i>
To recommend,	<i>recommander.</i>
To dress,	<i>s'habiller.</i>
After the,	<i>à la.</i>
Still,	<i>encore.</i>
Betimes,	<i>de bonne heure.</i>
How much,	<i>combien.</i>
How many,	<i>combien de.</i>

Liable,	<i>exposé, p.</i>
How far,	<i>combien y a-t-il.</i>
Hence,	<i>d'ici.</i>
How long will it.	<i>dans combien de temps.</i>
Before you write?	<i>écrivez-vous ?</i>
Unseasonably,	<i>mal à propos.</i>
By halves,	<i>à demi.</i>
Never,	<i>jamais.</i>
Yonder,	<i>là bas.</i>
That way,	<i>par là.</i>
From that time,	<i>dès lors.</i>
To behave,	<i>se conduire.</i>
For less.	<i>à moins.</i>
At least,	<i>au moins.</i>
To stay,	<i>rester.</i>
To suit.	<i>convenir.</i>
To disturb,	<i>gêner.</i>

\* In this exercise the learner has to form the adverbs from the adjectives given, according to the preceding rules.

## CHAPTER VII.

### OF PREPOSITIONS.

The preposition is an invariable word which serves to express the relation which some words have to each other. Prepositions have no meaning of themselves, are indeclinable and must be repeated before each of the substantives of the same sentence, which they govern.

The relations denoted by prepositions are so numerous that grammarians do not give them all. We have likewise confined ourselves to the classification of the following

Prepositions denoting *place* :

<i>auprès</i> , next to, near, by.	<i>jusque</i> , till, until.
<i>autour</i> , around, about.	<i>parmi</i> , among.
<i>chez</i> , to, at, among.	<i>près</i> , near.
<i>dans</i> , in, into, within.	<i>proche</i> , near.
<i>dès</i> , from.	<i>sous</i> , under.
<i>dessus</i> , on, upon.	<i>sur</i> , on, upon.
<i>devant</i> , before.	<i>vers</i> , towards, to.
<i>derrière</i> , behind.	<i>vis-à-vis</i> , opposite.

Prepositions denoting *order* :

<i>avant</i> , before.	<i>entre</i> , between.
<i>après</i> , after.	<i>depuis</i> , since, from.

Prepositions denoting *union* :

<i>avec</i> , with.	<i>pendant</i> , during, for.	} according to.
<i>durant</i> , during.	<i>selon</i> ,	
<i>outré</i> , beside.	<i>suivant</i> ,	

Prepositions denoting *separation* :

<i>excepté</i> ,	} except, but, save.	<i>sauf</i> , saving, but which.
<i>hors</i> , <i>hormis</i> ,		<i>vu</i> , seeing.
<i>sans</i> , without.		

Prepositions denoting *opposition* :

<i>malgré</i> ,	} notwithstanding.	<i>contre</i> , against.
<i>nonobstant</i> ,		in spite of.



Prepositions which denote the *end* :

<i>envers</i> , towards.	<i>pour</i> , for.
<i>concernant</i> , <i>touchant</i> , } about, concerning.	<i>à travers</i> , across, through.
<i>loin</i> , far.	<i>voici</i> , here.
<i>par-delà</i> , on that side.	<i>voilà</i> , there.

Prepositions denoting *cause* and *means* :

<i>attendu</i> , considering.	<i>par</i> , by, through.
<i>moyennant</i> , for, provided.	

Prepositions denoting *specification* :

<i>à</i> , to.	<i>en</i> , in, into,
<i>de</i> , of, from.	

Prepositions may be divided into three classes, according to the cases they govern.

## FIRST CLASS.

Prepositions governing nouns without the help of another preposition, in other words, governing the *accusative* case.

<i>à</i> , to, at.	<i>excepté</i> , <i>hors</i> , <i>hormis</i> , } except, but, save.
<i>après</i> , after.	<i>malgré</i> , in spite of.
<i>attendu</i> , considering.	<i>moyennant</i> , by means of.
<i>avant</i> , before.	<i>nonobstant</i> , notwithstanding.
<i>avec</i> , with.	<i>outre</i> , besides.
<i>chez</i> , at, to, among,	<i>par</i> , by, through.
<i>concernant</i> , concerning.	<i>pour</i> , for.
<i>contre</i> , against.	<i>parmi</i> , among.
<i>de</i> , of, from.	<i>pendant</i> , during, while.
<i>dès</i> , from.	<i>sans</i> , without.
<i>dans</i> , in, into.	<i>sauf</i> , saving, but which,
<i>depuis</i> , since, from, for.	<i>selon</i> , <i>suivant</i> , } according to.
<i>derrière</i> , behind.	<i>sous</i> , under.
<i>dessus</i> , over, upon, above.	<i>sur</i> , on, upon.
<i>dessous</i> , under, underneath.	<i>touchant</i> , concerning.
<i>devers</i> , towards, about.	<i>à travers</i> , through.
<i>devant</i> , before.	<i>vers</i> , towards.
<i>durant</i> , during.	<i>voici</i> , here is.
<i>en</i> , in, into.	<i>voilà</i> , there is.
<i>entre</i> , between.	<i>vu</i> , seeing.
<i>envers</i> , towards.	
<i>environ</i> , about.	

## SECOND CLASS.

## Prepositions governing the genitive case :

<i>à cause de</i> , on account of, because.	<i>à l'entour de</i> ,	} about.
<i>à côté de</i> , by, next to.	<i>autour de</i> ,	
<i>à fleur de</i> , close to, even with.	<i>à l'insçu de</i> , without the know-	ledge of.
<i>à la mode de</i> , in or after the fashion of.	<i>à moins de</i> , under.	
<i>à couvert de</i> , sheltered from.	<i>à raison de</i> , at the rate of.	<i>de</i> , of, from.
<i>à force de</i> , by strength of, by dint of.	<i>en dépit de</i> , in spite of.	
<i>à l'opposite de</i> , over against, opposite.	<i>faute de</i> , for want of.	<i>le long de</i> , along.
<i>à rex de</i> , even, level with.	<i>à l'épreuve de</i> , proof against (able to resist).	
<i>à la faveur de</i> , by means of.	<i>au moyen de</i> , by means of, in virtue of.	<i>auprès de</i> , next to, near, by.
<i>à la réserve de</i> , except.	<i>près de</i> , near by.	
<i>à l'égard de</i> , as to, with regard to.	<i>au niveau de</i> , on a level with.	<i>au pris de</i> , in comparison to.
<i>au or en deça de</i> , on this side of.	<i>au péril de</i> ,	
<i>au delà de</i> , on the other side of.	<i>au risque de</i> ,	} at the peril.
<i>au dessus de</i> , above.	<i>au travers de</i> , through.	
<i>au dessous de</i> , below, under.	<i>loin de</i> , at a distance.	<i>proche de</i> , near.
<i>au dedans de</i> , inwardly, internally.	<i>pour l'amour de</i> , for the sake of.	
<i>au dehors de</i> , outwardly.	<i>vis-à-vis de</i> , opposite.	
<i>aller au devant de</i> , to go to meet.		
<i>au milieu de</i> , in the middle of.		
<i>aux dépens de</i> , at the expense of.		
<i>aux environs de</i> , round about.		
<i>au lieu de</i> , instead of.		
<i>à l'exception de</i> , excepted.		

## THIRD CLASS.

## Prepositions governing the dative case :

<i>à</i> , to.	<i>quant à</i> , as far.
<i>par rapport à</i> , with respect to.	<i>attendant à</i> , next, contiguous, adjoining.
<i>jusqu'à</i> , to, till, even to, as far as.	

## EXERCISE ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

Look upon the chair not under. He was walking before us. Come this way. Let us walk round the park. I am going to my bookseller's. I have sent nothing to your brother because of his idleness. Sit down by me. He went towards the Strand. I was ill during the whole winter. I have written to him concerning that business. In

spite of the bad state of my health I shall leave town the day after to-morrow. From one end of the horizon to the other, the sky is covered with thick black clouds. He spoke for and I against. We have great advantages over them. We have seen him among the crowd. We are secure from all danger. He succeeded by dint of application. I will not sell it under twelve guineas. I bought them at the rate of ten shillings each. We shall be sheltered from the rain. Yours is worth little in comparison of his. I live opposite them. He will succeed in spite of all their efforts. I have suffered on your account. I went without his knowledge. I accompanied him as far as the Park gate. English ladies dress after the French fashion. It is on this side of the river. I left him on the other side of the bridge. He cannot do it for want of money.

To look,	<i>regarder.</i>	Against,	<i>contre.</i>
Upon,	<i>dessus.</i>	Advantages,	<i>avantages, m.</i>
Chair,	<i>chaise, f.</i>	Over,	<i>sur.</i>
To walk,	<i>marcher.</i>	Among,	<i>parmi.</i>
Before,	<i>devant.</i>	Crowd,	<i>foule, f.</i>
This way,	<i>par ici.</i>	Secure from,	<i>à l'abri de.</i>
To walk,	<i>se promener.</i>	To succeed,	<i>réussir.</i>
Round the,	<i>autour du.</i>	By dint of,	<i>à force de.</i>
Park,	<i>parc, m.</i>	Under,	<i>à moins de.</i>
To (the house of),	<i>chez.</i>	Each,	<i>chaque.</i>
Bookseller,	<i>libraire.</i>	Sheltered,	<i>à l'abri.</i>
Because of,	<i>à cause de.</i>	Rain,	<i>pluie, f.</i>
Idleness,	<i> paresse, f.</i>	Is worth,	<i>vaut.</i>
To sit down,	<i>s'asseoir.</i>	In,	<i>en.</i>
By,	<i>à côté de.</i>	Comparison,	<i>comparaison, f.</i>
Towards,	<i>vers.</i>	To live (dwell),	<i>demeurer.</i>
During,	<i>pendant.</i>	Opposite,	<i>vis-à-vis de.</i>
The whole winter,	<i>tout l'hiver.</i>	To suffer,	<i>souffrir.</i>
Concerning,	<i>touchant.</i>	On account of,	<i>à cause de.</i>
Business,	<i>affaire, f.</i>	Without his know-	<i>à son insçu.</i>
In spite of,	<i>nonobstant, malgré.</i>	ledge,	
State,	<i>état, m.</i>	As far as the,	<i>jusqu' à la.</i>
Health,	<i>santé, f.</i>	Gate,	<i>grille, f.</i>
To leave,	<i>quitter.</i>	To dress,	<i>s'habiller.</i>
Town,	<i>la ville.</i>	After,	<i>à.</i>
From,	<i>de.</i>	Fashion,	<i>mode, f.</i>
End,	<i>bout, m.</i>	On this side,	<i>en deça.</i>
Horizon,	<i>horizon, m.</i>	On the other side,	<i>en delà.</i>
Sky,	<i>ciel, m.</i>	Bridge,	<i>pont, m.</i>
To cover,	<i>couvrir.</i>	Before,	<i>devant.</i>
With,	<i>de.</i>	Fine,	<i>belle, f. s.</i>
Clouds,	<i>nuages, m.</i>	Within,	<i>dans.</i>
Thick,	<i>épais.</i>	Can,	<i>pouvoir.</i>
Black,	<i>noirs, p.</i>	For want of,	<i>faute de.</i>
For,	<i>pour.</i>	Money,	<i>argent, m.</i>

## CHAPTER VIII.

### OF THE CONJUNCTION.

The conjunction is an indeclinable part of speech which serves to join words and sentences together; when we say, *let us study if we wish to acquire knowledge*, the word *if* joins the first sentence *let us study*, with the second, *we wish to acquire knowledge*. The word *if* therefore is a conjunction.

Some conjunctions are simple, that is, are composed of a single word; as : *et, ou, mais, si, car, ni, aussi, donc*, etc.

Some are compound, that is, composed of several words, as : *à moins que, soit que, au reste*, etc.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs or prepositions, but always attended by *de* or *que*.

#### EXERCISE.

We were hardly arrived when it began to rain. He must not go since he has not done. Speak as long as you please. He interrupts me as often as I speak. Tell me sincerely whether you did it or not. Whenever I go there I meet him. He has neither friends nor foes. Have you seen Mr. A. since his return? I am glad to see that you do not like flattery, and that one may speak to you with sincerity. His father punishes or rewards them according as they deserve. She said nothing to me except that she had seen you. Whilst he sleeps, read. Because he is rich, he is haughty. Do it; if not, you will be punished. You are rich; but I am richer than you. I think, therefore, I exist. After all, what can we do? I will tell it you on condition that you shall keep the secret. He has some defects; as for the rest, he is an honest man. There is no true virtue without the love of God. He neither sees nor hears.

Hardly,	<i>à peine.</i>	As often as,	<i>toutes les fois que.</i>
To arrive,	<i>arriver.</i>	To tell,	<i>dire.</i>
To begin,	<i>commencer.</i>	Whether,	<i>si.</i>
He must not,	<i>il ne faut pas qu'il.</i>	Whenever,	<i>toutes les fois que.</i>
To go (away),	<i>s'en aller.</i>	To meet,	<i>rencontrer.</i>
Since,	<i>puisque.</i>	He has neither,	<i>il n'a ni.</i>
Done,	<i>fini.</i>	Foes,	<i>ennemis, m.</i>
As long as,	<i>aussi long-temps que.</i>	Since,	<i>depuis.</i>
To please,	<i>plaire.</i>	Return,	<i>retour, m.</i>
To interrupt,	<i>interrompre.</i>	Flattery,	<i>flatterie, f.</i>
		On,	<i>on.</i>

May,	<i>pouvoir.</i>	Therefore,	<i>donc.</i>
Sincerity,	<i>sincérité, f.</i>	What,	<i>que.</i>
To reward,	<i>récompenser.</i>	Can,	<i>pouvoir.</i>
According as,	<i>selon que.</i>	On condition,	<i>à condition.</i>
To deserve,	<i>mériter.</i>	Keep,	<i>garder.</i>
To say,	<i>dire.</i>	Secret,	<i>secret, m.</i>
Except that,	<i>sinon que.</i>	Defects,	<i>défauts, m.</i>
Whilst,	<i>pendant.</i>	As for the rest,	<i>au surplus.</i>
To sleep,	<i>dormir.</i>	He is an,	<i>il est.</i>
To read,	<i>lire.</i>	Virtue,	<i>vertu, f.</i>
Because,	<i>parceque.</i>	Without,	<i>sans.</i>
Rich,	<i>riché.</i>	Love,	<i>amour, m.</i>
Haughty,	<i>arrogant.</i>	To see,	<i>voir.</i>
If not,	<i>sinon.</i>	To hear,	<i>entendre.</i>

## CHAPTER IX.

### OF INTERJECTIONS.

An interjection is a word which expresses sudden emotions of the mind. There are interjections for every feeling, viz. :

Of encouraging,	<i>allons ! courage !</i> come, be cheerful !
Pain,	<i>ah ! ahi ! ouf ! ay !</i>
Joy,	<i>ah ! quelle joie ! bon !</i> O ! joy !
Grief,	<i>hélas ! ô ciel !</i> alas ! O heaven !
Fear,	<i>ha ! hé ! ah !</i>
Aversion,	<i>fi ! fi donc !</i> fy ! fy upon !
Disgust,	<i>pouah !</i> fy ! fugh ! out upon 't !
Calling,	<i>hola ! ho ! hem !</i> ho ! there !
Silence,	<i>chut ! paix !</i> silence ! st ! silence ! hush !
Disbelief,	<i>chansons ! tarare !</i> nonsense ! pooh !
Surprise,	<i>ha ! ouais !</i> oh ! laek a day ! dear !
Warning,	<i>prenez garde !</i> gare ! have a care !

END OF PART THE FIRST.

## PART II.

---

### OF SYNTAX.

---

SYNTAX is the arrangement or construction of words and sentences, according to the rules of grammar.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

#### SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

CASES IN WHICH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IS USED IN FRENCH.

*Rule 1.*—The definite article is used in French before substantives taken in a general, or individual sense.

EXAMPLES :

Men are mortal,  
*LES hommes sont mortels.*

Studious children are beloved by their masters,  
*LES enfants studieux sont chéris de leurs maîtres.*

The king reigns but does not govern,  
*LE roi règne mais ne gouverne pas.*

*OBSERVE.*—The article is repeated in French, before every substantive.\*

EXERCISE.

Genius creates, the mind arranges. Virtue is the triumph of generosity over interest. Charity is the greatest of Christian<sup>2</sup> virtues.<sup>1</sup> Man was born for society; beasts, fishes, birds, and even reptiles, were created for his use. A† wise<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup> does not judge by appearances. Ladies think that Latin and Greek are not so necessary as

---

\* In *narrations*, when several substantives are enumerated, the article is omitted in order to give more energy to the sentence; in that case the last substantive is immediately followed by *tout, rien, nul, or personne*. Ex: *Conscience, honneur, intérêt, tout fut sacrifié.*

† In general propositions the English use the indefinite article; the French prefer the definite. Turn, therefore, *the wise man*, etc.

History, Geography, and Mathematics. Ambitious<sup>2</sup> men<sup>1</sup> sacrifice every thing to fortune. Eloquence, painting, sculpture, and poetry, belong to imagination. It is more necessary to study men than books. Great thoughts proceed from the heart. It has been said that patience is the virtue of fools; it is more true to say that patience is the daughter of reason and of courage. The secrets of the heart are the cement of friendship. Piety is different from superstition. To carry piety to superstition, is to destroy it. There is nothing so conformable to reason, as the denial of reason in matters of faith. The sole object of scripture is charity. Temporal goods are false; true Good is being united to God.

Genius,	<i>génie, m.</i>	It is,	<i>il est.</i>
To create,	<i>créer.</i>	To say,	<i>de dire.</i>
Triumph,	<i>triomphe, m.</i>	Is the daughter,	<i>est fille.</i>
Over,	<i>sur.</i>	Reason,	<i>raison, f.</i>
Interest,	<i>intérêt, m.</i>	Cement,	<i>ciment, m.</i>
Was born,	<i>est né.</i>	Friendship,	<i>amitié, f.</i>
Even,	<i>même.</i>	Piety,	<i>piété, f.</i>
Use,	<i>usage, m.</i>	Different,	<i>différent.</i>
To judge,	<i>juger.</i>	To carry,	<i>porter.</i>
Appearances,	<i>apparences, f.</i>	To destroy,	<i>détruire.</i>
To sacrifice,	<i>sacrifier.</i>	Conformable,	<i>conforme.</i>
Every thing,	<i>tout.</i>	Reason,	<i>raison, f.</i>
Painting,	<i>peinture, f.</i>	Denial,	<i>désaveu, m.</i>
Poetry,	<i>poésie, f.</i>	In matters of,	<i>en ce qui est de.</i>
To belong,	<i>appartenir.</i>	Faith,	<i>foi, f.</i>
It is,	<i>il est.</i>	Sole,	<i>unique.</i>
Necessary,	<i>nécessaire.</i>	Scripture,	<i>écriture.</i>
To study,	<i>d'étudier.</i>	Temporal goods,	<i>biens temporels.</i>
Thoughts,	<i>pensées, f.</i>	False,	<i>faux.</i>
To proceed,	<i>venir.</i>	True,	<i> vrai.</i>
It has been said,	<i>on a dit.</i>	To unite,	<i>unir.</i>
Fools,	<i>sots, m.</i>		

**Rule 2.**—The article definite is used in French before names of *countries, provinces, rivers, mountains, winds*, and also before the four quarters of the globe.

#### EXAMPLES :

I like France and England,  
*J'aime LA France et L' Angleterre.*

Italy is the garden of Europe,  
*L'Italie est le jardin de l'Europe.*

**EXCEPTIONS.**—Nevertheless these nouns take no article in the following cases.

1. With names of *Countries in Europe*, used adjectively and governed by *être, aller, venir, retourner, sortir*, and by the preposition *en*.

## EXAMPLES :

He comes from Portugal, *il vient de Portugal.*  
 On his return from Russia, *à son retour de Russie.*  
 He is gone from France to\* Spain, *il est allé de France en Espagne.*

2. When they come after nouns of *dignity* or *title*, and generally after the names of commodities, as : *wine, silk*, etc., in short, where they are used adjectively.

## EXAMPLES :

The Emperor of Austria, *l'Empereur d'Autriche.*  
 English cloth, *du drap d'Angleterre.*  
 The kingdom of France, *le royaume de France.*

3. When there is, in the sentence, a comparison implied.

## EXAMPLE :

The towns of Asia are not built like those of Europe,  
*Les villes d'Asie ne sont pas bâties comme celles d'Europe.*

## EXERCISE.

The eruption of Vesuvius causes great devastations. The mountains of Asia Minor are Olympus, Ida, and Taurus. I like to travel ; I was last<sup>2</sup> year<sup>1</sup> in Scotland, I come now from Ireland, I will stay this winter in France, and I shall go next<sup>2</sup> summer<sup>1</sup> to Germany and Italy. Europe is bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north, by Asia on the east, by the Mediterranean on the south, which divides it from Africa, and by the Atlantic on the west, which separates it from America. He is gone to Japan and to China. The Emperor of Austria and the King of Prussia were present. Mr. T. is gone to Mexico; his two brothers are in the East Indies. Did he go to Mont Blanc ?

Eruption,	<i>éruption, f.</i>	Bounded,	<i>borné, f. c.</i>
Vesuvius,	<i>Vesuve, m.</i>	Frozen Ocean,	<i>mer glaciale.</i>
To cause,	<i>causer.</i>	On,	<i>à.</i>
Devastations,	<i>ravages, m.</i>	To divide,	<i>diviser.</i>
Mountains,	<i>montagnes, f.</i>	Africa,	<i>Afrique, f.</i>
Asia Minor,	<i>Asie Mineure.</i>	Atlantic,	<i>Atlantique.</i>
Olympus,	<i>Olympe.</i>	To separate,	<i>séparer.</i>
To travel,	<i>voyager.</i>	America,	<i>Amérique, f.</i>
Scotland,	<i>Ecosse, f.</i>	Japan,	<i>Japon, m.</i>
Ireland,	<i>Irlande, f.</i>	China,	<i>Chine, f.</i>
To stay,	<i>rester.</i>	Austria,	<i>Autriche, f.</i>
To go,	<i>aller.</i>	Prussia,	<i>Prusse, f.</i>
Next,	<i>prochain.</i>	Mexico,	<i>Mexique, m.</i>
Germany,	<i>Allemagne, f.</i>	East Indies,	<i>Indes Orientales, f.</i>
Europe,	<i>Europe, f.</i>	Mont-Blanc,	<i>Mont Blanc, m.</i>

\* When *to* is used to denote the distance or the going from one place to another, it is construed in French by *en* if it occurs before the name of a *country* or *kingdom*: Thus we say from Boulogne *to* London, *de* Boulogne *à* Londres, because London is but a town; and from Boulogne *to* England, *de* Boulogne *en* Angleterre, because England is a country.



**Rule 3.**—The definite article *le, la, l', les*, is used in French with nouns of *measure, weight, and number*, in speaking of the price or cost of things.

## EXAMPLES :

Five shillings a bottle,	<i>cinq schellings</i> LA bouteille.
A pound a hundred,	<i>une livre</i> LE cent.
I pay him <i>by</i> the day, <i>by</i> the piece.	<i>je le paie à*</i> LA journée, à LA pièce.

**OBSERVE.**—In speaking of *portions of time*, or in mentioning what is paid for *salary, wages, attendance*, or *admittance* to public places, the English may use *a* as well as *per*, but in French, the latter (*par*) can alone be used.

## EXAMPLES :

Three shillings <i>per</i> ticket or a ticket.	<i>trois schellings</i> PAR billet.
Two pounds a week or <i>per</i> week.	<i>deux livres</i> PAR semaine.

## EXERCISE.

The men who work here by the day, receive each of them two pounds per week. Those who work by the piece receive three and sometimes four pounds a week. Good Champaign is sold in France for five or six francs a bottle. I give him a pound a month for his pocket money. He sells by the pound. They buy coals by the bushel. I pay for my lodgings two guineas a week. He goes to court once a year. Our master comes twice a week. How much does he charge a lesson? Tea costs now eight shillings a pound. This cloth cost me twenty-five shillings a yard.

To work,	<i>travailler.</i>	Coals,	<i>charbon, m.</i>
Each of them,	<i>chacun,</i>	Bushel,	<i>boisseau, m.</i>
Pounds,	<i>livres, or livres sterling.</i>	Lodgings,	<i>logement, m.</i>
Sometimes,	<i>quelquefois.</i>	Guineas,	<i>guinées, f.</i>
Champaign,	<i>champagne, m.</i>	Court,	<i>cour, f.</i>
Is sold,	<i>se vend.</i>	Once,	<i>une fois.</i>
For five,	<i>cinq.</i>	Twice,	<i>deux fois.</i>
Bottle,	<i>bouteille, f.</i>	Does he charge,	<i>prend-il.</i>
Pocket money,	<i>menus plaisirs.</i>	Lesson,	<i>leçon, f.</i>
To sell,	<i>vendre.</i>	To cost,	<i>coûter.</i>
To buy,	<i>acheter.</i>	Cloth,	<i>drap, m.</i>
		Yard,	<i>aune, f.</i>

---

\* When the price of a thing sold, hired, etc., is not mentioned, the preposition *by* is translated by *à*.

**Rule 4.**—The definite article *le, la, l',* is used in French before nouns of *title or dignity*.

## EXAMPLES :

<i>Princess Victoria,</i>	<i>LA Princesse Victoria.</i>
<i>I speak of General B.</i>	<i>je parle DU Général B.</i>
<i>He writes to Doctor V.</i>	<i>il écrit AU Docteur V.</i>

**Rule 5.**—The definite article *le* precedes *adjectives, verbs, and adverbs* substantively used.

## EXAMPLES :

*White and black* are two opposite colours.  
*LE blanc et LE noir sont deux couleurs opposées.*

He is nice in his drink.  
*Il est délicat pour LE boire.*

## EXERCISE ON THE TWO PRECEDING RULES.

Princess Louisa, the daughter of Louis-Philippe the First, married Prince Leopold, now King of Belgium. Prince Polignac was ambassador of France in England, under Charles the Tenth. General Gourgaud and Count Ségur fought a duel. We were speaking of Admiral Nelson. Give our compliments to Dr. Wilson. Eating and drinking are necessary to man. Newton says that there are seven primitive<sup>2</sup> colours,<sup>1</sup> viz. : orange, red, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet. He always will know the why and wherefore.

The daughter,	<i>filie.</i>
The first,	<i>premier.</i>
Married,	<i>épousa.</i>
Now,	<i>aujourd' hui.</i>
Belgium,	<i>Belgique.</i>
Ambassador,	<i>ambassadeur.</i>
The tenth,	<i>dix.</i>
To fight a duel,	<i>se battre en duel.</i>
Admiral,	<i>amiral.</i>
Give,	<i>faites.</i>
Eating,	<i>manger.</i>
Drinking,	<i>boire.</i>
Necessary,	<i>nécessaires, p.</i>

To say,	<i>dire.</i>
There to be,	<i>y avoir.</i>
Viz,	<i>savoir.</i>
Red,	<i>rouge.</i>
Yellow,	<i>jaune.</i>
Green,	<i>vert.</i>
Blue,	<i>bleu.</i>
Indigo,	<i>indigo.</i>
Will,	<i>veut.</i>
Know,	<i>savoir.</i>
Why,	<i>pourquoi.</i>
Wherefore,	<i>comment.</i>

## CASES IN WHICH NO ARTICLE IS USED IN FRENCH.

**Rule 6.**—No article is used in French before the word *Dieu*, taken in an indefinite sense, nor before names of persons,\* days, months, towns, villages, and other places, when taken in a general and indeterminate sense.

## EXAMPLES :

God is merciful, *Dieu est miséricordieux.*  
 London is larger than Paris, *Londres est plus grand que Paris.*

**Rule 7.**—No article is used in French before a noun expressing a degree of relationship, nor before a noun expressive of a dignity, title, office, business, or the native country of a person, when used adjectively, that is to say, qualifying the noun or pronoun coming before it.

## EXAMPLES :

Telemachus, the son of Ulysses,  
*Télémaque, fils d'Ulysse.*  
 The Duke of Sussex, a prince of the blood,  
*Le Duc de Sussex, prince du sang.*  
 His father is a physician,  
*Son père est médecin.*  
 He is a Frenchman,  
*Il est français.*

**OBSERVE.**—When the verb *être* has for its nominative the word *ce*, the article is used ; as, *C'est un Français* ; also when a substantive used adjectively is described by something coming after, or attended by an adjective, as, *son père est UN HABILE médecin* ; and also with the verb *faire*, as :—*Il a fait de son fils UN médecin.*

## EXERCISE ON THE TWO PRECEDING RULES.

They say that he is a musician. He a musician ! It is a joke. My father is an officer. London and Paris are the two greatest capitals in Europe. Titian and Appelles were painters ; Milton and

---

\* From this rule must be excepted, 1. The names of a few Italian poets and artists, such as : *le Titien, du Tasse, au Dante.* 2. Proper names denoting individual distinction, as : *l'Athalie de Racine.* 3. The names of a few saints when speaking of the days of their commemoration, as : *la St. Michel, la St. Jean, la St. Louis.* 4. Proper names in the plural, as : *les Cicérons sont rares.*

Thomson poets; and Cicero an orator. September and October are two fine months in England. Virgils are very uncommon at this time. Have you read Tasso's Jerusalem delivered? Frederick, King of Prussia, was at once a king, a warrior, and a philosopher. The Duke of Orleans, a prince of the blood, and the eldest son of Louis-Philippe, the King of the French, took the oath as a peer of the realm. It happened to Mr. D., a French bookseller. He will arrive in Normandy, a province of France, on Monday or on Tuesday. I shall begin at Midsummer or at Michaelmas.

They say,	<i>on dit.</i>	At once,	<i>à la fois.</i>
Musician,	<i>musicien.</i>	Warrior,	<i>guerrier, m.</i>
Joke,	<i>plaisanterie, f.</i>	Duke,	<i>duc.</i>
Officer,	<i>officier.</i>	Blood,	<i>sang.</i>
Capitals in,	<i>capitales, f. de.</i>	Eldest,	<i>aîné.</i>
Painters,	<i>peintres.</i>	Took,	<i>préa.</i>
Poets,	<i>poètes.</i>	Oath,	<i>serment.</i>
Orator,	<i>orateur.</i>	Peer,	<i>pair, m.</i>
Fine,	<i>beau.</i>	Realm,	<i>royaume, m.</i>
Uncommon,	<i>rare, p.</i>	It happened,	<i>cela arriva.</i>
At this time,	<i>à présent.</i>	Bookseller,	<i>libraire.</i>
Jerusalem,	<i>Jérusalem, f.</i>	Normandy,	<i>Normandie.</i>
Delivered,	<i>délivré.</i>	To begin,	<i>commencer.</i>
Prussia,	<i>Prusse, f.</i>	Midsummer,	<i>la St. Jean.</i>

**Rule 8.**—The article is omitted in French in proverbial sentences, in enumerations, before the *title* of a work or its *number, chapter, page, etc.*, and before any number used by way of distinction after the name of a sovereign.

#### EXAMPLES.

Poverty is no vice.	<i>Pauvreté n'est pas vice.</i>
An essay on taste,	<i>ESSAI sur le goût.</i>
Chapter the fifth,	<i>CHAPITRE cinq.</i>
Henry the Fourth,	<i>Henri QUATRE.</i>

**OBSERVE.**—*Premier* and *second* are always used in French after such words as *livre, chapitre, page*, and the names of sovereigns; but beyond *second* the cardinal numbers, *trois, quatre, etc.*, are used instead of the ordinal with names of sovereigns; as, *George Trois, Guillaume Quatre*, and so forth. In other instances, beyond *second*, the cardinal or ordinal are used indifferently.

**Rule 9.**—No article is used in French before nouns taken in a general and indeterminate sense: 1st. when they are repeated with a *preposition*. 2dly. After *ne* and *que* in the sense of *nothing but*. 3dly. Before nouns in the *vocative*. 4thly. After *que* or *quel* used to express *admiration* or *surprise*, in short, as an exclamation.

## EXAMPLES:

From age to age ; word for word.

De siècle en siècle ; mot pour mot.

He found nothing but treason and imposture,

Il ne trouva que TRAHISON et IMPOSTURE.

Friends, let us fly to glory,

AMIS, volons à la gloire.

What a fine house ! What a noise !

QUELLE belle maison ! QUE de bruit !

## EXERCISE ON THE TWO PRECEDING RULES.

I left off page twenty-three, book the third, chapter the fourth. Henry II., King of France, left three sons who reigned in succession, namely: Francis II., Charles IX.; and Henry III. What is the name of his pamphlet? "A Letter to the King." He puts me off from day to day, makes me promises upon promises, but I obtain nothing. Mountains, vallies, and you, charming<sup>2</sup> spots<sup>1</sup>, I see you again! William the Third, King of England, married the Princess Mary, daughter of James the Second, and grand-daughter of Charles the First. What a beauty! What a beautiful statue! What a clap of thunder! What a good girl! He found at court nothing but gross flattery.

To leave off,	<i>en rester.</i>	Spots,	<i>lieux, m.</i>
To leave,	<i>laisser.</i>	To see again,	<i>revoir.</i>
To reign,	<i>régner.</i>	William,	<i>Guillaume.</i>
In succession,	<i>successivement.</i>	Married,	<i>épousa.</i>
Namely,	<i>savoir.</i>	Mary,	<i>Marie.</i>
Francis,	<i>François.</i>	James,	<i>Jacques.</i>
Name,	<i>titre, m.</i>	Grand-daughter,	<i>petite fille.</i>
Pamphlet,	<i>pamphlet, m.</i>	Statue,	<i>statue, f.</i>
To put off,	<i>remettre.</i>	Clap of thunder,	<i>coup de tonnerre,</i>
To,	<i>en.</i>		<i>m.</i>
Promises,	<i>promesses, f.</i>	Court,	<i>cour, f.</i>
To obtain,	<i>obtenir.</i>	Gross,	<i>basse, f.</i>
Mountains,	<i>montagnes, f.</i>	Flattery,	<i>flatterie, f.</i>
Vallies,	<i>vallées, f.</i>		

**Rule 10.**—No article is used with substantives taken in a general sense when there are several enumerated, and the first is preceded by *neither* (*ni*), which word is repeated before every noun.

## EXAMPLE:

He has neither *relations*, nor *friends*, nor *acquaintance*.

Il n'a ni PARENTS, ni AMIS, ni CONNAISSANCES.

**Rule 11.**—The article is omitted in French before a noun governed by an active verb used *negatively*.\*

## EXAMPLES :

We have had *no* rain,                    *Nous n'avons pas eu de pluie.*  
They have *not* any hope,           *Ils n'ont pas d'espoir.*

**Rule 12.**—No article is used in French before a substantive immediately preceded by the verb *avoir* and *faire*, or any other verb with which they express but one and the same idea : the same omission takes place when a substantive is joined to a verb by a preposition.

## EXAMPLES :

To desire to, to have a mind to,    *avoir envie.*  
To frighten, to visit,                *avoir peur, faire visite.*  
To shiver with cold,                 *trembler de froid.*

## EXERCISE ON THE THREE PRECEDING RULES.

He acts as a father, do not oblige him to act as a judge. He has no such low ideas. She had neither beauty, nor fortune, nor talents, yet he married her. I saw neither the King nor the Queen. That young lady has no beauty, but she has virtues. He has no patrons, but he has merit. Are you frightened? I die of thirst. Without money one must starve. I must go to visit Doctor V. We have had no trouble in finding it. I have a mind to go for a ride. I have paid visits to-day. Mind what he says. I pity those poor exiles. He writes that those lands produce neither gold, nor silver, nor precious<sup>2</sup> stones<sup>1</sup>.

To oblige,	<i>obliger.</i>	To visit,	<i>faire visite.</i>
Judge,	<i>juge.</i>	Trouble,	<i>peine, f.</i>
Such low ideas,	<i>des sentiments si</i>	In,	<i>à.</i>
	<i>bas.</i>	To have a mind,	<i>avoir envie de.</i>
To marry,	<i>épouser.</i>	To go for a ride,	<i>faire une prome-</i>
I saw neither,	<i>je ne vis ni.</i>		<i>nade à cheval ou</i>
Young lady,	<i>demoiselle.</i>		<i>monter à cheval.</i>
Patrons,	<i>protecteurs, m.</i>	To pay visits,	<i>faire des visites.</i>
Merit,	<i>mérite, m.</i>	To mind,	<i>faire attention à.</i>
To be frightened,	<i>avoir peur.</i>	What,	<i>ce que.</i>
To die of thirst,	<i>mourir de soif.</i>	To say,	<i>dire.</i>
Without,	<i>sans.</i>	Exiles,	<i>exilés, m.</i>
One must starve,	<i>il faut mourir de</i>	To produce neither,	<i>ne produisent ni.</i>
	<i>faim.</i>	Stones,	<i>pierres, f.</i>

\* If however the noun were followed and modified by an adjective, or an incidental sentence, the article should then be used, Ex : *N'affectez pas ici des soins et généreux.*

**Rule 13.**—The article is omitted in French, when substantives *taken in an intermediate sense* are joined to a verb by a preposition.

## EXAMPLES :

To speak <i>with</i> courage,	<i>Parler</i> AVEC courage.
To reason <i>as</i> a sensible man,	<i>Raisonner</i> EN homme sensé.
To quarrel <i>among</i> friends,	<i>Se quereller</i> ENTRE amis.

**Rule 14.**—No article but the preposition *de* or *d'* alone, is used in French before the latter of two substantives when it expresses the *nature, matter, quality, profession, or country* of the first.

## EXAMPLES :

A marble table,	<i>Une table</i> DE marbre.*
An Italian master,	<i>Un maître</i> D'Italien.
Burgundy wine,	<i>Du vin</i> DE Bourgogne

## EXERCISE ON THE TWO PRECEDING RULES.

We are exposed in this world to all sorts of infirmities and dangers. You are not without friends, nevertheless act with prudence. Praises are a kind of tribute that is paid to true merit. Politeness is a mixture of discretion, complacency, and circumspection. There is in goodness a kind of magnet which attracts all men to itself. What kind of a man is he? He came in covered with dust. Your brother's conduct is worthy of praise. Socrates' wisdom and Achilles' valour are celebrated in the writings of historians. La Fontaine's fables are suited to all ages. The gallery is supported by iron pillars. That man disgraces the profession of a lawyer.

To expose,	<i>exposer.</i>	Kind,	<i>espèce, f.</i>
Infirmities,	<i>infirmités, f.</i>	To cover,	<i>couvrir.</i>
Nevertheless,	<i>néanmoins.</i>	Dust,	<i>poussière, f.</i>
To act,	<i>agir.</i>	Conduct,	<i>conduite, f.</i>
Praises,	<i>louanges, f.</i>	Worthy,	<i>digne.</i>
Tribute,	<i>tribut, m.</i>	Wisdom,	<i>sagesse, f.</i>
That is paid,	<i>qu'on paie.</i>	Valour,	<i>valeur, f.</i>
Merit,	<i>mérite, m.</i>	To celebrate,	<i>célébrer.</i>
Politeness,	<i>politesse, f.</i>	Writings,	<i>écrits, m.</i>
Mixture,	<i>mélange, m.</i>	Historians,	<i>historiens, m.</i>
Complacency,	<i>complaisance, f.</i>	Are suited,	<i>conviennent.</i>
Circumspection,	<i>circonspection, f.</i>	Gallery,	<i>galerie, f.</i>
Magnet,	<i>aimant, m.</i>	To support,	<i>soutenir.</i>
To attract,	<i>attirer.</i>	Pillars,	<i>pilliers, m.</i>
To itself,	<i>à soi.</i>	To disgrace,	<i>déshonorer.</i>
What,	<i>quelle.</i>	Lawyer,	<i>homme de loi.</i>

\* Observe that in all such sentences the order of the words must be reversed in French as in the examples given with the rule.

**Rule 15.**—No article but the preposition *de* or *d'* is used in French before a substantive taken in a general sense, and governed, in the genitive case, by an adjective or a participle past, followed in English by the prepositions *of*, *from*, *by*, or *with*.

## EXAMPLES:

Full <i>of</i> charms,	<i>Plein</i> <i>de</i> <i>charmes</i> .
Endowed <i>with</i> virtues,	<i>Doté</i> <i>de</i> <i>vertus</i> .
Esteemed <i>by</i> all,	<i>Estimé</i> <i>de</i> <i>tous</i> .

**Rule 16.**—No article but the preposition *de* or *d'* is used in French after nouns of quantity, when the following substantive is taken in an *indeterminate* sense, as, Give me a bushel of coals; *Donnez-moi un boisseau de charbon*;\* nor after the following adverbs of quantity, scarcity, or exclusion.

enough,	<i>assez de.</i>	no,	<i>pas or point de.</i>
as much,	<i>autant de.</i>	little,	<i>peu de.</i>
a great deal,	} <i>beaucoup de.</i> †	more,	<i>plus de.</i>
much,		nothing,	<i>rien de.</i>
how many,	<i>combien de.</i>	so many,	<i>tant de.</i>
never,	<i>jamais de.</i>	too much,	<i>trop de.</i>
less,	<i>moins de.</i>		

## EXERCISE ON THE TWO PRECEDING RULES.

Human<sup>2</sup> life<sup>1</sup> is full of disappointments. Fortune blesses me with her gifts. The roads were lined with laurels, jasmines, and other trees evergreen and ever blooming. Rossini's music is full of melody. He leads a life full of charms. Few people have prudence<sup>2</sup> enough<sup>1</sup> to avoid bad company. Most young men boast too much. He has a great deal of money, wit, and many friends. He was loaded with praises. Have less ambition, you will have less trouble. Those who govern are like celestial<sup>2</sup> bodies<sup>1</sup> which have much brightness and no rest. That woman has too much vanity. We generally<sup>2</sup> have<sup>1</sup> but little friendship from those who have many friends. Philosophy, like medicine, has many drugs, few remedies, and no specifics.

---

\* Should the substantive refer to something in a particular and determinate manner, the article should then be used before it, as: Give me a bushel of the same coals as I had here last week, *donnez-moi un boisseau du même charbon que j'eus ici la semaine dernière*.

† *La plupart* and *bien* in the sense of *beaucoup* take the article definite. Thus we say: *beaucoup d'amis*, and *bien des amis*.



Human,	<i>humaine.</i>	Young men,	<i>jeunes gens.</i>
Full,	<i>pleine.</i>	To boast,	<i>se vanter.</i>
Disappointment,	<i>revers, m.</i>	Wit,	<i>esprit, m.</i>
Blesses me,	<i>me comble.</i>	Loaded,	<i>comblé.</i>
Gifts,	<i>dons, m.</i>	Praises,	<i>louanges, f.</i>
Roads,	<i>routes, f.</i>	Trouble,	<i>peine, f.</i>
Lined,	<i>bordées, f. p.</i>	To govern,	<i>gouverner.</i>
Laurels,	<i>lauriers, m.</i>	Celestial,	<i>célestes.</i>
Jasmines,	<i>jasmins, m.</i>	Bodies,	<i>corps, m.</i>
Ever green,	<i>toujours verts.</i>	Brightness,	<i>éclat, m.</i>
Blooming,	<i>fleuris, m.</i>	Rest,	<i>repos, m.</i>
Music,	<i>musique, f.</i>	We have but,	<i>nous n'avons que.</i>
Melody,	<i>mélodie, f.</i>	Philosophy,	<i>philosophie, f.</i>
To lead,	<i>mener.</i>	Medicine,	<i>médecine, f.</i>
Charms,	<i>charmes, m.</i>	Drugs,	<i>drogues, f.</i>
People,	<i>gens, m.</i>	Remedies,	<i>remèdes, m.</i>
To avoid,	<i>éviter.</i>	Specifics,	<i>spécifiques, m.</i>
Company,	<i>compagnie, f.</i>		

## CHAPTER II.

## SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

**Rule 17.**—How to express the 's.\*

When two substantives meet together in English, the first of which has the 's as the mark of the possessive, they should be transposed in French, thus :

God's law,	<i>la loi DE Dieu.</i>
The King's palace,	<i>le palais DU Roi.</i>

**Rule 18.**—Compound substantives.

When two words are intimately connected, so as to give the idea of one individual thing only, the order must be inverted in French ; if the first express the *matter, species, quality, or property* of the second, *de* is generally used between the two ; and the preposition *à* if it denotes its *use*.† Examples on both cases :

A marble table,	<i>une table DE marbre.</i>
A writing table,	<i>une table À écrire.</i>

\* When by the 's the words *house, dwelling, etc.* are understood, the French use *chez*, as: I was at Mr. Burke's, *j'étais chez M. Burke* ; he is gone to his father's, *il est allé chez son père*.

† According to this rule *De* answers to the expressions *made of, coming from, of the, belonging to* ; and *à* holds the place of *by means of, for the purpose of*.

Olive oil,  
Lamp oil,

*de l'huile d'olive.*  
*de l'huile à brûler.*

A hyphen only, usually unites French compound substantives, when the corresponding words, in English, are united by one, thus :

A game-keeper,  
A pent-house,

*un garde-chasse.*  
*un abat-vent.*

Or, when they are expressed by one single word in English, as :

A curfew,  
A quilt,

*un couvre-feu.*  
*une courte-pointe.*

And if the first of two words thus joined together should express any thing good to eat or drink, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux* is then generally used before it ;\* as :

Cream cheese,  
The milk jug,

*du fromage à LA crème.*  
*le pot AU lait.*

#### OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

In order to know how to form the plural of compound substantives, such as, *casse-cou*, *tire-bouchon*, *vole au vent*, *chasse-marée*, *réveille-matin*, *passe-partout*, it is necessary to analyse the sentence ; it will then be seen, by the sense, if the sign of the plural must or must not be used.

Observe that the *verbs*, *prepositions* and *adverbs* used in compound substantives are essentially invariable.

#### APPLICATION OF THE PRECEDING RULE.

*Casse-cou*, plural *des casse-cou*, that is, places where one runs the risk of breaking one's neck.

*Tire-bouchon*, plural *des tire-bouchons*, are instruments used to draw the corks of bottles.

*Réveille-matin*, plural *des réveille-matin*, that is, clocks which awaken one in the morning.

\* Turn in the same manner compound words where *having* or *with* is understood, as : a blue-eyed maid, *une fille aux yeux bleus* ; that is, *having* or *with* blue eyes.

*Passe-partout*, plural *des passe-partout*, because both words are *essentially* invariable.

*Casse-noisettes*, with an *s* in the singular, plural alike, because it means an instrument used to break *nuts*.

*Chasse-mouches*, plural alike; that is, a thing used to drive away *flies*.

*Chef-d'œuvre*, plural *des chefs-d'œuvre*, that is, *works* perfect of their kind, &c. &c.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I have seen Lord Grosvenor's picture gallery. He always<sup>2</sup> praised<sup>1</sup> your son's application. Have you Junius's letters in your library? Cicero's eloquence and Cato's virtue will always be the admiration of posterity. Call at Mr. A.'s. He is gone to his brother-in-law's. I have no saddle-horse. You often<sup>2</sup> take<sup>1</sup> Mr. A.'s umbrella. I intend to give him a gold-chain. Some thieves entered my father's house and carried off a gold watch, several tea spoons, and a silver goblet which had been left in the dining-room: Ever since, my father's servant keeps fire arms in his bedroom. That oyster woman lives now near the hay-market. I often see that man with\* a black cloak at the iron gate of your father's country-house.

To see,	<i>voir.</i>
Lord,	<i>lord.</i>
Pictures,	<i>tableaux, m.</i>
Gallery,	<i>galerie, f.</i>
To praise,	<i>louer.</i>
Library,	<i>bibliothèque, f.</i>
Cicero,	<i>Cicéron.</i>
Cato,	<i>Caton.</i>
Virtue,	<i>vertu, f.</i>
Posterity,	<i>postérité, f.</i>
Call,	<i>passer.</i>
To go,	<i>aller.</i>
Brother-in-law,	<i>beau-frère.</i>
Saddle,	<i>selle, f.</i>
Often,	<i>souvent.</i>
To take,	<i>prendre.</i>
Umbrella,	<i>parapluie, m.</i>
To intend,	<i>avoir l'intention.</i>
Chain,	<i>chaîne, f.</i>

Thieves,	<i>voleurs, m.</i>
To enter,	<i>entrer dans.</i>
To carry off,	<i>emporter.</i>
Watch,	<i>montre, f.</i>
Tea,	<i>thé, m.</i>
Spoons,	<i>cuillers, f.</i>
Goblet,	<i>goblet, m.</i>
To leave,	<i>laisser.</i>
Dining-room,	<i>salle-à-manger.</i>
Ever since,	<i>depuis.</i>
Servant,	<i>domestique, m.</i>
To keep,	<i>garder.</i>
Bed-room,	<i>chambre à coucher.</i>
Oysters,	<i>huîtres, f.</i>
To live,	<i>demeurer.</i>
Hay,	<i>foin, m.</i>
Cloak,	<i>manteau, m.</i>
Gate,	<i>grille, f.</i>

\* See the note p. 153.

## OF NOUNS OF MULTITUDE.

*Rule 19.*—Nouns collective general.

We call *collective general* those nouns which represent the whole of the persons or things mentioned, as *le peuple*, *la forêt*, *l'armée*, &c.; such nouns require that the verb which they govern (as also any adjective or pronoun referring to them) should, in French, be put in the singular.

## EXAMPLES :

The people *wish* for peace,      *le PEUPLE DÉSIRE la paix.*  
The family *are* in the country,      *la FAMILLE EST à la campagne.*

*Rule 20.*—Nouns collective partitive.

Such nouns as *une infinité*, *une foule*, *le nombre*,\* &c., are called *partitive collective*. These require that the verb of which they are the nominative, as also any adjective or pronoun having reference to them, should be put in the singular, if they are preceded by the *definite article*, *le*, *la*, *les*; when preceded by the indefinite *un* or *une*, they usually agree in gender and number.

## EXAMPLES :

The number of inhabitants amounts to 20,000,  
*LE NOMBRE d'habitants se MONTE à vingt-mille.*

A crowd of children followed him,  
*UNE FOULE d'enfants le SUIVAIENT.*

## EXERCISE ON THE TWO PRECEDING RULES.

Parliament have adopted this measure. The whole<sup>2</sup> nation<sup>1</sup> rebelled. The family will not leave town this year. The<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> fleet set sail the day before yesterday. The army began the attack as soon as the enemy were in sight. The enemy, soon discouraged, were obliged to retire. The people love the king. In France a great number of young men enlist themselves voluntarily every year. A crowd of nymphs crowned with flowers swam behind the car of the goddess. A great number of friends remained attached to him. Most men are of that opinion.

---

\* *La plupart* used in an absolute manner requires that the following verbs should be put in the plural, as: *la plupart écrivent ce nom de telle manière; le sénat fut partagé, la plupart voulaient que*, &c., when *la plupart* is followed by *de* and a noun, the verb, adjective or pronoun, coming after, agrees with that noun and not with *la plupart*; thus we say, *la plupart du monde PRÉTEND; la plupart des troupes se DÉBANDÈRENT.*

Parliament,	<i>parlement, m.</i>	Soon,	<i>bientôt.</i>
To adopt,	<i>adopter.</i>	Discouraged,	<i>découragé.</i>
Measure,	<i>mesure, f.</i>	Obliged,	<i>obligé de.</i>
Whole,	<i>entière, f.</i>	To retire,	<i>se retirer.</i>
To rebel,	<i>se révolter.</i>	Young men,	<i>jeunes gens.</i>
Family,	<i>famille, f.</i>	To enlist oneself,	<i>s'enrôler.</i>
To leave,	<i>quitter.</i>	Voluntarily,	<i>volontairement.</i>
Whole,	<i>toute, f.</i>	Every year,	<i>tous les ans.</i>
Fleet,	<i>flotte, f.</i>	Nymphs,	<i>nymphe.</i>
To set sail,	<i>mettre à la voile.</i>	To crown,	<i>couronner.</i>
The day before	<i>avant hier.</i>	Flowers,	<i>fleurs, f.</i>
yesterday,		To swim,	<i>nager.</i>
To begin,	<i>commencer.</i>	Behind,	<i>derrière.</i>
Attack,	<i>attaque, f.</i>	Car,	<i>char, m.</i>
As soon as,	<i>aussitôt que.</i>	Goddess,	<i>déesse.</i>
Enemy,	<i>ennemi.</i>	To remain attached,	<i>rester attaché.</i>
Sight,	<i>vue, f.</i>	Opinion,	<i>avis, m.</i>

## CHAPTER III.

### SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

OF THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES WITH THEIR SUBSTANTIVES.

**Rule 21.**—Adjectives and participles adjectively used, agree in gender and number with the substantives to which they refer.

#### EXAMPLES :

*Un homme* CONSTANT, *une femme* CONSTANCE, *des enfants* CÂTÉS.

From this rule, however, must be excepted :—  
Adjectives used adverbially.

#### EXAMPLES :

She sings <i>out of tune</i> ,	<i>elle chante</i> FAUX.
Those ladies speak <i>too low</i> ,	<i>ces dames parlent trop</i> BAS.
These pictures cost <i>dear</i> ,	<i>ces tableaux coûtent</i> CHER.

Also the adjectives *NU* (naked) ; *DEMI* (half) ; *SUPPOSÉ* supposed ; and *EXCEPTÉ*, when placed before a substantive,\* and the adjective *FEU* (late), when followed by an article.

\* They agree when coming after ; thus we say : *piéds-nus, une journée et demie, ces messieurs exceptés ; feu* agrees also when the article precedes, as : *la feue reine.*

## EXAMPLES :

<i>Bare-footed,</i>	<i>NU-pieds.</i>
<i>Half a day,</i>	<i>Une DEMI-journée.</i>
<i>Except those gentlemen,</i>	<i>EXCEPTÉ ces messieurs.</i>
<i>The late queen,</i>	<i>FEU le reine.</i>

**Rule 22.**—An adjective or a participle qualifying two or more distinct substantives, must be in the masculine plural if the substantives are *masculine*; feminine plural, if the substantives are *feminine*; and masculine plural when the substantives are of *different genders*.

## EXAMPLES :

The father and son are arrived,
<i>Le père et le fils sont ARRIVÉS.</i>
The mother and daughter are arrived,
<i>Le mère et la fille sont ARRIVÉES.</i>
The father and mother are arrived,
<i>Le père et la mère sont ARRIVÉS.</i>

**OBSERVE.**—From this rule must be excepted adjectives qualifying two or several substantives nearly synonymous and not joined by the conjunction *ET*: as, *toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, une occupation CONTINUELLE*; and also those that are joined by the conjunction *OU*, as, *un courage OU une prudence ÉTONNANTE*, in which cases the adjective agrees with the last noun only.

## EXERCISE ON THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

Pride and misery are but too often united. These flowers smell sweet. He renders his father and mother happy. The rich and the poor are equal before God. Your mother and sister are satisfied. The queen and the princesses equally virtuous do much good to the poor. His son and yours are prudent and attentive. Give me half a guinea, and you will then only owe me a guinea and a half. Why does he go bare-footed? The late Mrs. D. was an accomplished<sup>2</sup> woman<sup>1</sup>. He had his mouth and eyes shut. His courage and activity were astonishing. Sylla acquired in Rome an absolute power and authority.\* I found the doors, the windows, and the

---

\* The adjective *absolute* must be placed after the two substantives.

shutters open. Under Charlemagne's reign all pretences to elude duties were removed, neglect corrected, abuses in the state reformed or prevented, and crimes punished. Virtue and science can alone make a man happy.

Pride,	<i>orgueil, m.</i>	To astonish,	<i>étonner.</i>
Misery,	<i>misère, f.</i>	To acquire,	<i>acquérir.</i>
Are but,	<i>ne sont que.</i>	In,	<i>à.</i>
To unite,	<i>unir.</i>	Power,	<i>pouvoir, m.</i>
Flowers,	<i>fleurs, f.</i>	Authority,	<i>autorité, f.</i>
To smell,	<i>sensir.</i>	Absolute,	<i>absolu, m.</i>
Sweet,	<i>bon.</i>	Windows,	<i>fenêtres, f.</i>
Equal,	<i>égal.*</i>	Shutters,	<i>volets, m.</i>
To satisfy,	<i>satisfaire.</i>	To open,	<i>ouvrir.</i>
Good,	<i>bien, m.</i>	Under,	<i>sous.</i>
The poor,	<i>les pauvres.</i>	Reign,	<i>règne, m.</i>
Guinea,	<i>guinée, f.</i>	Pretences,	<i>prétences, m.</i>
You will then only	<i>vous ne me devez</i>	To remove,	<i>ôter.</i>
owe me,	<i>plus que.</i>	Neglect,	<i>négligences, f.</i>
To accomplish,	<i>accomplir.</i>	To correct,	<i>corriger.</i>
His mouth,	<i>la bouche.</i>	Abuses,	<i>abus, m.</i>
To shut,	<i>fermer.</i>	To prevent,	<i>prévenir.</i>

## OF THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

The genius of the French Language requires adjectives to be placed *after* the substantives: but this cannot be given as a general rule, as there are adjectives which, for the sake of harmony, are placed before; and others which have a different meaning according as they precede or follow their substantives. Without entering into all the niceties of this intricate point of the language, we subjoin those rules only which we deem most essential to the student.

**Rule 23.**—Cases in which the adjective is placed after the substantive.

We place *after* the substantive, adjectives of COLOUR, FORM, TASTE, in short of *physical qualities*, and those which express the names of nations,

### EXAMPLES :

*Un habit VERT ; une table RONDE ; un fruit AMER ; une vue DÉLICIEUSE ; la révolution FRANÇAISE.*

\* Henceforth adjectives will be given in the masculine singular.

Also participles of verbs used adjectively.

EXAMPLES :

<i>A learned man,</i>	<i>un homme INSTRUIT.</i>
<i>A confused thought,</i>	<i>une pensée EMBROUILLÉE.</i>
<i>A forbidden action,</i>	<i>une action DÉFENDUE.</i>

Adjectives modified by an adverb or by something coming after it, always follow the substantive.

EXAMPLES :

<i>An extremely brave man,</i>	<i>un homme EXTRÊMEMENT BRAVE.</i>
<i>A misfortune common to all,</i>	<i>un malheur COMMUN À TOUS.</i>

When two or more adjectives refer to the same substantive, they are usually placed after it, and a conjunction is put before the last, whether there is one or not in English.

EXAMPLE :

<i>A good, amiable and virtuous woman.</i>
<i>Une femme BONNE, AIMABLE, et VERTUEUSE.</i>

We also place after the noun, adjectives of several syllables qualifying monosyllabic substantives.

EXAMPLES :

<i>Rainy weather,</i>	<i>un temps PLUVIEUX.</i>
<i>Terrestrial cares,</i>	<i>des soins TERRESTRES.</i>
<i>A melodious voice,</i>	<i>une voix MÉLODIEUSE.</i>

Those adjectives of several syllables which do not end in French with an *e*, always come after their substantives, as well as those which end in *esque* *ique*, and *ule*.

EXAMPLES :

<i>The public good,</i>	<i>le bien PUBLIC.</i>
<i>A doubtful case,</i>	<i>un cas DOUTEUX.</i>
<i>A gigantic monument,</i>	<i>un monument GIGANTESQUE.</i>
<i>A credulous woman,</i>	<i>une femme CRÉDULE.</i>

**Rule 24.** Cases in which the adjective is placed *before* its substantive.

Monosyllabic adjectives are usually placed *before* the substantives they qualify.\*

---

\* They follow whenever they are united by another adjective with the conjunction *et*, as : *un discours long et ennuyeux.*



## EXAMPLES :

A long speech,  
A fine edifice.

un LONG discours.  
un BEL édifice.

**Rule 25.**—The adjective precedes the substantive when the latter has a government, that is to say, an object depending on it : as,

The elegant translator of the Georgics,  
L'ÉLÉGANT traducteur des Géorgiques.

**Rule 26.**—There are a few adjectives which, when used singly, generally precede the substantives :\* the principal are :

<i>ancien,</i>	ancient.	<i>joli,</i>	pretty.
<i>beau,</i>	fine.	<i>jeune,</i>	young.
<i>bon,</i>	good.	<i>long,</i>	long.
<i>cher,</i>	dear.	<i>mauvais,</i>	bad.
<i>digne,</i>	worthy.	<i>méchant,</i>	wicked.
<i>divers,</i>	divers.	<i>petit,</i>	little.
<i>doux,</i>	sweet.	<i>riche,</i>	rich.
<i>dernier,</i>	last.	<i>sage,</i>	wise.
<i>faux,</i>	false.	<i>triste,</i>	sad.
<i>grand,</i>	great.	<i>vilain,</i>	ugly.
<i>gros,</i>	big.	<i>vieux,</i>	old.
<i>habile,</i>	skilful,		

## EXERCISE ON THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

An oval face. Blue eyes. A picturesque view. A black line. Some fine music. I am reading the Roman history. A betrayed man. He is a very humane and merciful judge. These palpable and evident proofs will convince him. A prejudiced mind is the

\* The following change their signification according to the place they occupy.

<i>Un honnête homme,</i>	means	an honest man.
<i>Un homme honnête,</i>	„	a polite man.
<i>Un grand homme,</i>	„	a great man.
<i>Un homme grand,</i>	„	a tall man.
<i>Un pauvre homme,</i>	„	a simpleton.
<i>Un homme pauvre,</i>	„	a poor man.
<i>Un brave homme,</i>	„	a worthy man.
<i>Un homme brave,</i>	„	a brave man.
<i>Une grosse femme,</i>	„	a stout woman.
<i>Une femme grosse,</i>	„	a pregnant woman.
<i>Un furieux animal,</i>	„	a huge animal.
<i>Un animal furieux,</i>	„	a furious animal.

there are a few others.

source of innumerable errors. I knew the incomparable author of that work. We have now long and fine days. Reading is a pretty but dull town. Great and extensive projects joined to a wise execution constitute the great minister. Imitate the plain, simple, and natural style of that writer. Humility is the basis of Christian virtues. The public good is preferable to private interest. Satirical minds are like small insects whose existence is manifested only by the efforts they make to\* corrupt things. A prudent economy, a constant application to the duties of his state, and a beneficent disposition marked the reign of Frederic V. King of Denmark.

Oval,	<i>oval,</i>	To join,	<i>joindre.</i>
Face,	<i>figure, f.</i>	Wise,	<i>sage.</i>
Blue,	<i>bleu, m.</i>	Constitute,	<i>font.</i>
Eyes,	<i>yeux, m.</i>	Minister,	<i>ministre.</i>
Picturesque,	<i>pittoresque.</i>	To imitate,	<i>imiter.</i>
View,	<i>vue, f.</i>	Plain,	<i>uni.</i>
Black,	<i>noir.</i>	Simple,	<i>simple.</i>
Line,	<i>ligne, f.</i>	Natural,	<i>naturel.</i>
Fine,	<i>beau.</i>	Writer,	<i>écrivain.</i>
Music,	<i>musique, f.</i>	Humility,	<i>humilité, f.</i>
To read,	<i>lire.</i>	Base,	<i>base, f.</i>
Roman,	<i>Romain.</i>	Good,	<i>bien, m.</i>
To betray,	<i>trahir.</i>	Private,	<i>particulier.</i>
Humane,	<i>humain.</i>	Interest,	<i>intérêt, m.</i>
Merciful,	<i>miséricordieux.</i>	Satirical,	<i>satirique.</i>
Palpable,	<i>palpable.</i>	Like,	<i>comme.</i>
Evident,	<i>évident.</i>	Insects,	<i>insectes, m.</i>
Proofs,	<i>preuves, f.</i>	Whose,	<i>dont.</i>
To convince,	<i>convaincre.</i>	Is manifested only,	<i>ne se manifeste que.</i>
Prejudiced,	<i>prévenu.</i>	To corrupt,	<i>corrompre.</i>
Innumerable,	<i>innombrable.</i>	Things,	<i>les choses.</i>
Errors,	<i>erreurs, f.</i>	Economy,	<i>économie, f.</i>
To know,	<i>connaître.</i>	Duties,	<i>devoirs, m.</i>
Author,	<i>auteur.</i>	State,	<i>état, m.</i>
Work,	<i>ouvrage, m.</i>	Beneficent,	<i>bienfaisant.</i>
Pretty,	<i>joli.</i>	Disposition,	<i>caractère, m.</i>
Dull,	<i>triste.</i>	To mark,	<i>marquer.</i>
Extensive,	<i>étendu.</i>	Reign,	<i>règne, m.</i>
Projects,	<i>projets, m.</i>	Denmark,	<i>Danemark.</i>

## OF THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

Some adjectives in French do not govern any thing, having of themselves a determinate signification; others which have a vague sense govern either a substantive or a verb preceded by a preposition.

---

\* Whenever *to* is used in English instead of *for to*, it must be rendered into French by *pour* or *afin de*.

## EXAMPLES :

The sacred rights of friendship are *inviolable*,  
*Les droits sacrés de l'amitié sont INVOLABLES.*

He is *worthy* of your friendship,  
*Il est DIGNÉ DE votre amitié.*

An ignorant man is ever *ready* to admire himself,  
*Un ignorant est toujours PRÊT à s'admirer.*

N.B.—The prepositions which some French adjectives require, not always corresponding with those used in English, attention must be paid to the following rules.

*Rule 27.*—Adjectives the government of which is always preceded by *de*.

Adjectives expressing *plenty*, or *scarcity*, *want*, *absence*, *satisfaction*, *desire*, *separation*, and others of similar signification, require the preposition *DE* before their complement.

## EXAMPLES :

The universe is *full* of the magnificence of the Almighty,  
*L'univers est FLEIN DE la magnificence de l'Eternel.*

He is *tired* with running,  
*Il est FATIGUÉ DE courir.*

*Rule 28.*—Adjectives, the government of which is always preceded by *à*.

Adjectives expressing *aptness*, *fitness*, *habit*, *inclination*, *disposition*, *ease*, *readiness*, *resemblance*, *end*, or *tendency*, require the preposition *À* before their complement.

## EXAMPLES :

Frederic II. was *accessible* to all his subjects,  
*Frédéric II. était ACCESSIBLE à tous ses sujets.*

Vice is *ingenious* in disguising itself,  
*Le vice est INGÉNIEUX à se déguiser.*

OBSERVE.—Some adjectives and participles are followed by other prepositions than *à* or *de*: as, *affaissé sous*, *incompatible avec*, &c.; others govern sometimes one preposition, sometimes another; thus we say: *comparable à*, or *avec*; *étranger à* or *dans*; *cruel à* or *envers*. There are also many that change the prepositions they govern, according as they are followed by a noun of person or thing—by a substantive or a verb; for example:—with the

noun of a person we say, *reconnaissant envers*, and with the name of a thing, *reconnaissant de* : with a substantive we say, *habile dans* or *en*, and with a verb, *habile à*.\*

# EXERCISE ON THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

It is sweet to observe the laws of friendship. Human life is never free from troubles. He is not able to construe that author. Voltaire always<sup>2</sup> was<sup>1</sup> greedy of praise and insatiable of glory. He is loaded with honours. Most men are dissatisfied with their condition. I am satisfied with you. That man is fit for anything. A christian ought to be ready to die rather than to deny his faith. That is easy to say. Rousseau was subject to frequent<sup>3</sup> fits<sup>1</sup> of misanthropy. It is painful to be far from what we love. Be quick to reward, and slow to punish. This is soft to the touch. That man is useful to his family. Faith is necessary to salvation. Be polite to the ladies, charitable to the poor, and affable to every body. We are very blind if we do not know ourselves to be full of pride, ambition, weakness, misery, and injustice.

Sweet,	<i>doux.</i>	Fits,	<i>accès, m.</i>
Life,	<i>vie, f.</i>	Misanthropy,	<i>misanthropie.</i>
Free,	<i>exempt.</i>	Painful,	<i>pénible.</i>
Troubles,	<i>peines, f.</i>	Far,	<i>loigné.</i>
Able,	<i>capable.</i>	What we love,	<i>ce que l'on aime.</i>
To construe,	<i>expliquer.</i>	Quick,	<i>prompt.</i>
Greedy,	<i>avide.</i>	To reward,	<i>récompenser.</i>
Praise,	<i>louanges, f.</i>	Slow,	<i>lent.</i>
Loaded,	<i>comblé.</i>	Soft,	<i>doux.</i>
Most,	<i>la plupart des.</i>	Touch,	<i>toucher.</i>
Dissatisfied,	<i>mécontent.</i>	Useful,	<i>utile.</i>
Fit,	<i>propre.</i>	Salvation,	<i>salut, m.</i>
Any thing,	<i>tout.</i>	Polite,	<i>poli.</i>
Ready,	<i>prêt.</i>	Ladies,	<i>dames.</i>
Rather than,	<i>plutôt que de.</i>	The poor,	<i>les pauvres.</i>
To deny,	<i>renier.</i>	Blind,	<i>aveugle.</i>
Faith,	<i>foi, f.</i>	To know one's self, <i>se connaître.</i>	
Easy,	<i>facile.</i>	Pride,	<i>orgueil, m.</i>
To say,	<i>dire.</i>	Weakness,	<i>faiblesse, f.</i>
Subject,	<i>sujet.</i>	Misery,	<i>misère, f.</i>
Frequent,	<i>fréquent.</i>		

\* This not being a *grammaire raisonnée*, rules on these and innumerable other niceties in the French language will not be found in it : we refer the student desirous of having all difficulties fully explained, to *Girault Duvivier's Grammaire des Grammaires*, or to Messrs. Bescherelle et Litalis de Gaux's *Grammaire Nationale*.

† Adjectives signifying behaviour towards others, require the preposition *envers*, as : I do not like people who are cruel to animals, *je n'aime pas les personnes qui sont cruelles envers les animaux*.

## ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

**Rule 29.**—There are different ways of translating adjectives of dimension into French.

## EXAMPLES :

The Vendôme column is two hundred feet high,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{La colonne Vendôme a deux cents} \\ \text{pieds de haut, or de hauteur.} \\ \text{La colonne Vendôme est haute de} \\ \text{deux cents pieds.} \end{array} \right.$

And without the verb.

A column two hundred feet high,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Une colonne de deux cents pieds de} \\ \text{haut, or de hauteur.} \\ \text{Une colonne haute de deux cents} \\ \text{pieds.} \end{array} \right.$

**OBSERVE.**—When there are two or more dimensions mentioned, the conjunction *and* is expressed by *sur*, and *de* is not repeated, as *un appartement de cinquante pieds de longueur sur trente de largeur*.

## EXERCISE ON THE ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

The walls of Algiers are sixteen feet thick, and thirty high. The ditch was thirty-five feet long, and three paces broad. This street is about one mile long, and eighty feet wide. That well is two hundred and fifty feet deep by twenty in\* circumference. The smallest man in that regiment is six feet high. The famous mine of Potosi in Peru, is more than fifteen hundred feet deep. The old London<sup>2</sup> Bridge<sup>1</sup> was nine hundred feet long, forty-three high, and seventy-three wide. The monument of London is a round<sup>2</sup> pillar<sup>1</sup> of the doric<sup>2</sup> order<sup>1</sup>, two hundred feet high ; it stands on a pedestal twenty feet high.

Walls,	<i>murs, m.</i>	Small,	<i>petit.</i>
Algiers,	<i>Alger.</i>	Regiment,	<i>régiment, m.</i>
Feet,	<i>pieds, m.</i>	Famous,	<i>fameux.</i>
Thick,	<i>épaisseur.</i>	Mine,	<i>mine, f.</i>
Ditch,	<i>fossé, m.</i>	Potosi,	<i>Potosi, m.</i>
Paces,	<i>pas, m.</i>	Peru,	<i>Pérou, m.</i>
Broad,	<i>largeur, f.</i>	Than,	<i>de.</i>
Street,	<i>rue, f.</i>	Bridge,	<i>pont, m.</i>
About,	<i>environ.</i>	London,	<i>Londres.</i>
Mile,	<i>mille, m.</i>	Pillar,	<i>pillar, m.</i>
Wide,	<i>largeur.</i>	Round,	<i>ronde.</i>
Well,	<i>puits, m.</i>	Order,	<i>ordre.</i>
Deep,	<i>profond or pro-</i>	Doric,	<i>dorique.</i>
	<i>fondeur.</i>	It stands,	<i>il est placé.</i>
Circumference,	<i>circonférence, f.</i>	Pedestal,	<i>piédestal, m.</i>

\* The preposition *in*, preceding a word of dimension, is usually expressed by *de*, and not by *en* or *dans*.



## EXAMPLE:

He has more *than* ten children, *Il a plus DE dix enfants.*

## EXERCISE ON THE TWO PRECEDING RULES.

I am stronger than he by much. He is heavier than you by ten pounds. The Condor is a bird of Peru, bigger than the ostrich by much. I am older than your brother by five years. It is greater to overcome one's passions than to conquer whole<sup>2</sup> nations<sup>1</sup>. He had better study than play. It is easier to command than to obey. He is older than I thought. I give you more than you deserve. There are persons who write better than they speak, and others who speak better than they write. We flatter ourselves more than we should. I succeeded better than I hoped. You are better than when you were on the continent. Is he better treated than you were? He remained more than ten years in prison. It is said that the celebrated Spanish<sup>2</sup> poet<sup>1</sup> *Lope de Vega*, wrote more than eighteen hundred plays all in verse; and that more than twenty-one millions of lines of his\* are in print.

Strong,	<i>fort.</i>	To deserve,	<i>mériter.</i>
Heavy,	<i>pesant.</i>	To write,	<i>écrire.</i>
Pounds,	<i>livres, f.</i>	To flatter one's self, <i>se flatter.</i>	
Condor,	<i>Condor, m.</i>	Should,	<i>devrions.</i>
Peru,	<i>Pérou, m.</i>	To succeed,	<i>réussir.</i>
Bird,	<i>oiseau, m.</i>	To be better,	<i>se porter mieux.</i>
Ostrich,	<i>autruche, f.</i>	Continent,	<i>continent, m.</i>
To overcome,	<i>vaincre.</i>	To treat,	<i>traiter.</i>
One's,	<i>ses.</i>	To remain,	<i>rester.</i>
To conquer,	<i>conquérir.</i>	It is said,	<i>on dit.</i>
Whole,	<i>entières, f. pl.</i>	Celebrated,	<i>célèbre.</i>
He had better,	<i>il ferait mieux.</i>	Spanish,	<i>espagnol.</i>
To study,	<i>étudier.</i>	Poet,	<i>poète.</i>
To play,	<i>jouer.</i>	Plays,	<i>comédies, f.</i>
It is,	<i>il est.</i>	Verse,	<i>vers.</i>
Easy,	<i>facile.</i>	Lines,	<i>vers.</i>
To command,	<i>commander.</i>	Of his,	<i>ses.</i>
To obey,	<i>obéir.</i>	In print,	<i>imprimés.</i>

**Rule 32.**—*In the*, expressed by *du*.

After a superlative, *in the* is expressed in French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*.

## EXAMPLE:

The greatest nation *in the* world, *la plus grandet nation DU monde.*

\* Turn, of his lines.

† When the adjective used in the superlative does not precede the noun, the article is repeated thus: *la nation LA plus belliqueuse DU monde.*

**Rule 33.**—*The more, the less*, expressed by *plus, moins*. *The more* and *the less*, repeated in comparatives of proportion, is expressed in French by *plus, moins*, without an article.

## EXAMPLE :

*The more* he earns, *the less* he spends,  
PLUS il gagne, MOINS il dépense.

**Rule 34.**—*The longer, the shorter*, before an adjective, or a substantive.

*The longer, the shorter*, coming before an adjective, or a substantive, are also expressed by *plus* and *moins*.

## EXAMPLE :

*The longer* the day is, *the shorter* the night,\*  
PLUS le jour est long, PLUS la nuit est courte.

## EXERCISE ON THE THREE PRECEDING RULES.

The English<sup>2</sup> nation<sup>1</sup> is the most mercantile in the world. His father was the richest merchant in the city. I intend to transcribe all the finest passages in the book. The Duke of Treviso was one of the oldest marshals in the French army. China is the greatest empire in the world. The more I see them, the more I like them. The more he studies French, the more he likes it. The less you study, the less you will improve. The more difficult a thing is, the more honourable. The more attentive you are, the less trouble you will have. The richer he is, the more charitable he becomes.

English,	Anglais.	China,	Chine, f.
Mercantile,	commerçant.	Empire,	empire, m.
World,	monde, m.	To see,	voir.
Merchant,	négociant.	To improve,	faire des progrès or profiter.
City,	city, f.	Difficult,	difficile.
I intend,	j'ai l'intention de.	Thing,	chose, f.
To transcribe,	transcrire.	Attentive,	attentif.
Fine,	beau.	Trouble,	peine, f.
Duke,	Duc.	To become,	devenir.
Treviso,	Trévise.		
Army,	armée, f.		

**Rule 35.**—*So much the more, so much the less*.

*So much the more* and *so much the less*, are expressed in French by *d'autant plus, d'autant moins*.

---

\* The English may leave out the verb *to be*, and say: *the longer the day, the shorter the night*, but it cannot be suppressed in French.



## EXAMPLES :

That action is *so much the more* laudable,  
*Cette action est d'AUTANT PLUS louable.*

He is *so much the less* to blame for it as....  
*Il est d'AUTANT MOINS à blâmer que....*

*Rule 36.—The more, the less for it.*

*The more or the less for it*, is expressed in French by *en* before the verb, with *d'avantage* or *plus* for *the more*; and *moins* for *the less*.

## EXAMPLES :

He will love her *the more for it*,  
*Il l'EN aimera D'AVANTAGE or PLUS.*

You shall not be *the less* blamed for it,  
*Vous n'EN serez pas MOINS blâmé.*

## EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

You will not be the richer for it. I esteem him the more, because\* he is poor. I admire him the more for it. You shall not be the less praised for it. I respect him so much the more because he is your father. He goes there the less willingly, because he knows that he is to be punished. I am not the more happy for it. That is so much the less excusable. Do you think him the less guilty? Your action is so much the more laudable.

To esteem,	<i>estimer.</i>
Poor,	<i>pauvre.</i>
To admire,	<i>admirer.</i>
Praised,	<i>loué.</i>
To respect,	<i>respecter.</i>
He goes there,	<i>il y va.</i>

Willingly,	<i>volontiers.</i>
To know,	<i>savoir.</i>
He is,	<i>il doit.</i>
Happy,	<i>heureux.</i>
Guiltily,	<i>coupable.</i>
Laudable,	<i>louable.</i>

## SYNTAX OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

*See page 35.*

*Rule 37.—*In addressing relations, the English often omit the possessive adjectives; this omission does not usually take place in French, except before *papa*, *maman*.

---

\* Because in all such sentences must be rendered by *que*.

## EXAMPLES :

*Brother*, will you come with us ?  
*Mon frère, veux-tu venir avec nous ?*

Yes, *Sister*.  
*Oui, ma sœur.*

Do you call me, *Mother* ?  
*M'appellez-vous ma mère ?*

Do you call me, *Manima* ?  
*M'appellez-vous MAMAN ?*

**Rule 38.**—In speaking of their own relations to any body with whom we are not on familiar terms, politeness requires that we should use *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*, &c., before the possessive adjective.

## EXAMPLES :

How is your father ?  
*Comment se porte MONSIEUR votre père ?*  
 Are your aunts arrived ?  
*MESDAMES vos tantes sont-elles arrivées ?*

**Rule 39.**—The French use the definite articles *le*, *la*, *les*, instead of the possessive adjectives *mon*, *ton*, *son*, &c., in speaking of an action over any part of the body or intellectual faculty,\* and the person on whom the action thus falls is represented by a conjunctive pronoun in the dative case.

## EXAMPLES :

He cut <i>my</i> hair,	<i>Il me† coupa LES cheveux.</i>
I felt <i>his</i> pulse,	<i>je LUI tatai LE pouls.</i>
You turn <i>his</i> mind,	<i>vous LUI tournez L'esprit.</i>

**OBSERVE.**—If the action expressed by the verb and done upon any part of our own body, is done *by ourselves*, the verb in this case must be used reflectively.

\* This rule is not applied in cases where the part of the body spoken of is the nominative or the subject of the verb, as: I see that my finger heals, *je vois que mon doigt se guérit*.

† These personal pronouns in the dative are not used when the nominative to the verb sufficiently points out the possessor, as: she closes her eyes, *elle ferme les yeux*; he was beheaded, *il eut la tête tranchée*; she is out of her mind, *elle a perdu l'esprit*; I have a pain in my eyes, *j'ai mal aux yeux*, etc.

## EXAMPLES :

I cut my hair,	<i>je ME coupai LES cheveux.</i>
I feel my pulse,	<i>je ME tâte LE pouls.</i>
He has broken his arm,	<i>il s'est cassé LE bras.</i>

**Rule 40.**—In describing persons, the definite article is used in French, instead of the possessive adjective before the part spoken of.

## EXAMPLES :

<i>His</i> body is too large and <i>his</i> head too small,
<i>Il a LE corps trop gros et LA tête trop petite.</i>
<i>Her</i> temper is good,
<i>Elle a L'esprit bien fait.</i>

## EXERCISE ON THE FOUR PRECEDING RULES.

I beseech you, dear Father, forgive him. Sister, I bring you some flowers. I thank you, Brother. Mother, are you ready? I have not seen your uncle for this long while; is he ill? Is your cousin still in the country? I met your son in the park this morning. Will your sisters go to the concert this evening? Ten thousand men lost their lives\* in that battle. I cut his nails. Doctor G. has dressed my arm. Take his hand. You trod upon my foot. I closed his eyes. A cannon ball took off his arm. Do not make so much noise; you split my head. You are burning your hair. He will break his leg. I warm my fingers. Do you not see that your hand bleeds. He had his arm in a sling. Open your mouth when you speak. He has lost his sight.

I beseech you,	<i>je vous en supplie.</i>	To tread on,	<i>marcher sur.</i>
To forgive,	<i>pardonner.</i>	Foot,	<i>piéd, m.</i>
To thank,	<i>remercier.</i>	To close,	<i>fermer.</i>
Ready,	<i>prêt.</i>	Cannon,	<i>canon, m.</i>
This long while,	<i>depuis long-temps.</i>	Ball,	<i>boulet, m.</i>
Ill,	<i>malade.</i>	To take off,	<i>emporter.</i>
Cousin,	<i>cousin, m.</i>	To make,	<i>faire.</i>
In,	<i>à.</i>	Noise,	<i>bruit.</i>
To meet,	<i>rencontrer.</i>	To split,	<i>fendre.</i>
Park,	<i>parc, m.</i>	To burn,	<i>brûler.</i>
Morning,	<i>matin, m.</i>	To break,	<i>casser.</i>
Concert,	<i>concert, m.</i>	Leg,	<i>jambe, f.</i>
To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>	To warm,	<i>chauffer.</i>
Life,	<i>vie.</i>	Fingers,	<i>doigts, m.</i>
Battle,	<i>bataille, f.</i>	To bleed,	<i>saigner.</i>
Evening,	<i>soir.</i>	In a sling,	<i>en écharpe.</i>
To cut,	<i>couper.</i>	To open,	<i>ouvrir.</i>
Nails,	<i>ongles, m.</i>	Mouth,	<i>bouche, f.</i>
To dress (a wound),	<i>panser.</i>	To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>
Arm,	<i>bras, m.</i>	Sight,	<i>vue, f.</i>
To take,	<i>prendre.</i>		

\* The nouns for those parts of the body which are single, are generally put in the singular in French, though speaking of several persons, as: they walked with their heads uncovered, *ils marchaient LA TÊTE nue.*

**Rule 41.**—*Its* or *their* expressed by *en*.

When the possessive adjectives *its*, *their*, relate to *things*, the French express them by *en*, in all those cases in which *its* or *their* may be turned by *of it*, *of them*.\*

EXAMPLES;

I like London ; *its* situation is agreeable ; *its* squares are beautiful ; and *its* streets very large,  
*J'aime Londres ; la situation EN est agréable ; les places EN sont superbes, et les rues spacieuses.*

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULE.

This river is not broad, but its banks are very steep. Paris is a delightful<sup>2</sup> town,<sup>1</sup> though its streets are too narrow and its houses too high. These are fine trees ; their fruit is delicious. Is this water good for him ; do you know all its qualities ? My illness is dangerous, I know its origin and effects. That town is very large ; its situation is very convenient for trade. Its ships bring to it the riches of all countries. What do you say of London ? I admire the size of its streets. Its trade produces immense<sup>2</sup> resources.<sup>1</sup> Every science has its principles.

River,	<i>rivière, f.</i>
Broad,	<i>large.</i>
Banks,	<i>bords, m.</i>
Steep,	<i>escarpé.</i>
Delightful,	<i>charmant.</i>
Though,	<i>quoique.</i>
Narrow,	<i>étroit.</i>
High,	<i>haut.</i>
These are,	<i>voici.</i>
Trees,	<i>arbres, m.</i>
Delicious,	<i>délicieux.</i>
To know,	<i>connaître.</i>
Qualities,	<i>qualités, f.</i>
Illness,	<i>maladie, f.</i>
Dangerous,	<i>dangereux.</i>
Origin,	<i>origine, f.</i>

Effects,	<i>effets, m.</i>
Large,	<i>grande.</i>
Convenient,	<i>commode.</i>
Trade,	<i>commerce, m.</i>
Ships,	<i>vaisseaux, m.</i>
Bring to it,	<i>y apportent.</i>
Riches,	<i>richesses, f.</i>
Countries,	<i>pays, m.</i>
What,	<i>que.</i>
To say,	<i>dire.</i>
To admire,	<i>admirer.</i>
Size,	<i>grandeur, f.</i>
To produce,	<i>produire.</i>
Resources,	<i>ressources, f.</i>
Every,	<i>chaque.</i>
Principles,	<i>principes, m.</i>

## SYNTAX OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

**Rule 42.**—We have already said that demonstrative adjectives are *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ces*. These always precede a *substantive* either alone or modified by an adjective ; and,

---

\* In a sentence of two members, containing two verbs, if *its* and *their* are nominatives to the second verb (*être* excepted) they are to be expressed by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, etc., as : *J'ai vu Londres ; ses places, ses rues m'ont frappé.*

as they perform the office of an article, they must be repeated before every substantive.

## EXAMPLE :

That throne, that splendour, that greatness, those laurels, add nothing to his glory,  
*Ce trône, cet éclat, cette grandeur, ces lauriers, n'ajoutent rien à sa gloire.*

OBSERVE.—*Ce* adjective, must not be confounded with *ce* pronoun demonstrative, from which it is easily distinguished, the latter always being joined to a verb, or followed by *qui* or *que*; as, *c'est moi*; *ce qui me plaît, c'est sa modestie.*

## EXERCISE ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

You have without doubt brought this game, these flowers, and this fruit from your country-house. These pictures, that library, and those ornaments belong to me. I shall never forget that head swimming in blood, those eyes shut and extinguished, that face pale and disfigured, that mouth half open, and that haughty and threatening air which death itself could not efface. Do not take that<sup>a</sup> place, it is bespoken. He often<sup>2</sup> repeated<sup>1</sup> those lines. Are these children as good as the others? Who has painted that portrait? Those people are very tiresome. This room is too small for you.

Doubt,	<i>doute.</i>	Mouth,	<i>bouche, f.</i>
To bring,	<i>apporter.</i>	Half open,	<i>enir ouverte.</i>
Game,	<i>gibier, m.</i>	Haughty,	<i>superbe.</i>
Flowers,	<i>fleurs, f.</i>	To threaten,	<i>menacer.</i>
Fruit,	<i>fruit, m.</i>	Death,	<i>mort, f.</i>
Country,	<i>campagne, f.</i>	Itself,	<i>même.</i>
Pictures,	<i>tableaux, m.</i>	Could,	<i>pouvait.</i>
Library,	<i>bibliothèque, f.</i>	To efface,	<i>effacer.</i>
Ornaments,	<i>ornements, m.</i>	Place,	<i>place, f.</i>
Belong to me,	<i>m'appartiennent or sont à moi.</i>	To bespeak,	<i>retenir.</i>
To forget,	<i>oublier.</i>	To repeat,	<i>répéter.</i>
To swim,	<i>nager.</i>	Lines,	<i>vers, m.</i>
Blood,	<i>sang, m.</i>	Good,	<i>sage.</i>
To shut,	<i>fermer.</i>	Others,	<i>autres.</i>
To extinguish,	<i>éteindre.</i>	To paint,	<i>peindre.</i>
Face,	<i>visage, m.</i>	Portrait,	<i>portrait, m.</i>
Pale,	<i>pale.</i>	People,	<i>gens, m.</i>
To disfigure,	<i>défigurer.</i>	Tiresome,	<i>ennuyeux.</i>
		Room,	<i>chambre, f.</i>

\* See page 37 the remark on the use of *ci* and *là*.

## SYNTAX OF INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

**Rule 43.**—*Nul, aucun, pas un*,\* take *ne* before the verb; they form their feminine regularly, but *pas un* has no plural; *nul*, when it means *null, void*, admits of a plural; *aucun* also, when relating to a noun that has no singular.

## EXAMPLES :

I have *no* reason to give, *je n'a NULLE raison à donner.*  
 All these proceedings are *void*, *toutes ces procédures sont NULLES.†*  
 He has been at *no* expense, *il n'a fait AUCUNS frais.‡*

**Autre**; this indefinite adjective agrees with the substantive to which it is joined, whether expressed or understood.

## EXAMPLES :

I have *another* project in my head,  
*J'ai un AUTRE projet en tête.*  
 We have *other* reasons to give you,  
*Nous avons d'AUTRES raisons à vous donner.*  
 Give me this pear, and take the *other*.  
*Donnez-moi cette poire-ci, et prenez l'AUTRE (poire.)*

## EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

No man is perfect. No one is satisfied with his fortune, nor dissatisfied with his understanding. He has many books, but he reads none. You have many friends, but he has none. No man has a right to act thus. Fortune exempts many bad men from punishment, but none from fear. There is not one of these books but I have read. No one likes to see himself as he is. Not one among you can complain of my conduct. Of all the nations of the earth, there is not one but has an idea of God. You have other enjoyments, but I have none. They had made no preparations. The three first articles of that treaty are null. He has other resources.

\* As we have already said page 39, *nul, aucun* and *pas un*, are used almost indifferently; *aucun*, however, is used in a more restricted sense, that is to say, relates to a substantive already expressed, *pas un* or *nul*, on the contrary, may be used without any relation to what precedes in the sentence.

† In all such cases as the above, *nul* is always placed after the substantive.

‡ *Frais*, expense; is not used in the singular in French.

Perfect,	<i>parfait.</i>	To see one's self,	<i>se voir.</i>
Satisfied with,	<i>content de.</i>	As,	<i>comme.</i>
Fortune,	<i>fortune, f.</i>	Among,	<i>de.</i>
Nor,	<i>ni.</i>	To complain,	<i>se plaindre.</i>
Dissatisfied with,	<i>mécontent de.</i>	Conduct,	<i>conduite, f.</i>
Understanding,	<i>esprit, m.</i>	Nations,	<i>nations, f.</i>
To read,	<i>lire.</i>	Earth,	<i>terre, f.</i>
A right,	<i>droit, m.</i>	But has,	<i>qui n'aît.</i>
To act,	<i>agir.</i>	Idea,	<i>idée, f.</i>
Thus,	<i>ainsi.</i>	Enjoyments,	<i>plaisirs, m.</i>
Exempts,	<i>saue.</i>	To make,	<i>faire.</i>
Bad men,	<i>méchants, m.</i>	Preparations,	<i>préparatifs, m.</i>
Punishment,	<i>punition, f.</i>	Articles,	<i>articles, m.</i>
Fear,	<i>crainte, f.</i>	Treaty,	<i>traité, m.</i>
But I have,	<i>que je n'aie.</i>	Resources,	<i>ressources, f.</i>

CHAQUE, is of both genders, without plural. It is always used with a substantive,\* to which it relates.

EXAMPLES :

*Every* science has its principles,    CHAQUE science a ses principes.  
*Every* age has its duties,            CHAQUE age a ses devoirs.

MAINT, is regular in the feminine, but does not admit of a plural; it is used in the same sense as *plusieurs*.

EXAMPLES :

I told him so *many* and *many* a time,  
*Je le lui ai dit MAINTe et MAINTe fois.*  
 I have read it in *many* writers,  
*Je l'ai lu dans MAINT auteur.*

MÊME, adjective, must not be confounded with *même* adverb.† It is an adjective :—

1. When it precedes the substantive, which it then modifies with an idea of *identity*, answering, in that case, to the *idem* of the Latin.

EXAMPLES :

It is the *same* sun that gives light to all the nations of the earth,  
*C'est le MÊME soleil qui éclaire toutes les nations de la terre.*

The *same* things do not please at all times.  
*Les MÊMES choses ne plaisent pas en tous temps.*

\* *Chaque*, adjective, must not be confounded with the indefinite pronoun *chacun*; the latter is never joined to a substantive, the former always is. See indefinite pronouns.

† See *adverbs*.

2. *Même* is an adjective when it modifies the substantive with an idea of *similitude* and *resemblance*, in which case it is equal to the *similis* of the Latin.

## EXAMPLES :

Your claims and his are *alike*.

*Vos droits et les siens sont les MÊMES.*

The ashes of the shepherd and of the king are *alike*,

*Les cendres du berger et du roi sont les MÊMES.*

3. *Même* is an adjective when it is preceded by *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, &c., and is then equal to the *ipse* of the Latin.

## EXAMPLES :

Let us go *ourselves*,  
I have done it *myself*.

*allons-y nous-MÊMES.*  
*je l'ai fait moi-MÊME.*

Lastly.—*Même* is an adjective when placed after a single substantive, and, as in the preceding case with pronouns, expresses emphasis.

## EXAMPLES :

The best princes *themselves* are sometimes under the necessity of tolerating licentiousness, etc.

*Les meilleurs princes MÊMES sont quelquefois contraints de tolérer la licence, etc.*

He is all goodness,

*c'est la bonté MÊME.*

EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES *chaque*, *maint*,  
AND *même*.

Every country has its customs and its laws. There is in every plant a peculiar<sup>2</sup> quality<sup>1</sup>. I have given to each person his due. Every animal knows how to chose his proper food. Many and many a writer thinks himself a poet who is often but a rhymers. He has faced death in many a battle, and will do so again. I have complained of it many a time, but in vain. The animals themselves are affected by the harmonious<sup>2</sup> sound<sup>1</sup> of instruments. His children themselves have not heard of him. It is difficult to find two persons of the same temper and of the same opinion. He follows in the steps of his ancestors, and will be immortal like them.



Country,	<i>pays, m.</i>	Battle,	<i>bataille, f.</i>
Customs,	<i>coutumes, f.</i>	Will do so again,	<i>il le fera encore.</i>
Laws,	<i>lois, f.</i>	To complain,	<i>se plaindre.</i>
Plant,	<i>plante, f.</i>	Of it,	<i>en.*</i>
Peculiar,	<i>particulier.</i>	Affected,	<i>sensible.</i>
Quality,	<i>qualité, f.</i>	By the,	<i>aux.</i>
Person,	<i>personne, f.</i>	Harmonious,	<i>harmonieux.</i>
His due,	<i>ce qui lui est dû.</i>	Sound,	<i>son, m.</i>
Knows how,	<i>sait.</i>	Instruments,	<i>instruments, m.</i>
To choose,	<i>choisir.</i>	Heard of him,	<i>reçu de ses nouvelles.</i>
Proper,	<i>propre.</i>	Difficult,	<i>difficile de.</i>
Food,	<i>nourriture, f.</i>	To find,	<i>trouver.</i>
Writer,	<i>écrivain.</i>	Temper,	<i>caractère, m.</i>
To think one's self,	<i>se croire.</i>	Opinion,	<i>opinion, f.</i>
Poet,	<i>poète.</i>	To follow in,	<i>suivre.</i>
Is often but a,	<i>n'est souvent qu'un.</i>	Steps,	<i>traces, f.</i>
Rhymers,	<i>rimers.</i>	Ancestors,	<i>ancêtres, m.</i>
To face,	<i>affronter.</i>	Immortal,	<i>immortel.</i>
Death,	<i>mort, f.</i>	Like,	<i>comme.</i>

**Rule 45.**—**PLUSIEURS**,† is of both genders, and has no singular.

EXAMPLES:

*Several soldiers surrounded him,* **PLUSIEURS soldats l'entourèrent.**  
*Several persons saw it,* **PLUSIEURS personnes l'ont vu.**

**Rule 46.**—**QUELCONQUE**, with a negation is nearly synonymous with *nul aucun*.‡ It serves for both genders and numbers, and is always placed after the noun: as,

*I found nobody at all there,*  
*Je n'y ai trouvé **aucun** QUELCONQUE.*

*There is no argument whatever that can compel me to it,*  
*Il n'y a raison QUELCONQUE qui puisse m'y forcer.*

**Rule 47.**—**QUELQUE**, united to a substantive§ qualified or not by an adjective, and followed by *que*, takes the sign of the plural, and governs the subjunctive; in this signification it corresponds to the *aliquis* of the Latin.

\* *En* precedes the verb.

† *Plusieurs* is sometimes used in the sense of many persons or people, as: many people say so, **PLUSIEURS le disent.**

‡ Without *ne*, *quelconque* means *whatever, whatsoever, any* and may take the plural, thus we may say: *d'une manière QUELCONQUE*, in any way whatever; *prenons deux lignes QUELCONQUES*, let us take any two lines.

§ When an adjective *alone* or an *adverb* is used between *quelque* and *que*, the word *quelque* is then indeclinable, because, in that case, it is a real adverb. Thus we say: However great your talents may be, **QUELQUE GRANDS QUE soient vos talents**, etc. *quelque* in that case corresponds to the *quantumvis* of the Latin.

## EXAMPLES :

*Whatever* talents you have, be modest,  
*QUELQUES talents que vous AYEZ, soyez modeste.*

Or, with an adjective.

*QUELQUES grands talents que vous AYEZ, soyez modeste.*

EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES *plusieurs, quelque,*  
 AND *quelque—que.*

They have spoiled several of your drawings. Many people think so. Several historians have related it. I have read it in several newspapers. I saw several of your countrymen there. I have lost several letters. Take any book whatever. I have nothing whatever<sup>2</sup> left.<sup>1</sup> However well written these works may be, they have no success. Whatever faults he has committed, I forgive<sup>2</sup> him.<sup>1</sup> Whatever riches you possess, know how to regulate your expenses. However great those advantages may be, he will not be successful in that undertaking. However powerful they may be, (or, though they be ever so powerful,) we do not fear them. Whatever efforts you make, you cannot reach<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>.

To spoil,	<i>gâter,</i>
Drawings,	<i>dessins, m.</i>
To think,	<i>penser.</i>
So,	<i>ainsi.</i>
Historians,	<i>historiens.</i>
To relate,	<i>raconter.</i>
To read,	<i>lire.</i>
Newspapers,	<i>journaux, m.</i>
Countrymen,	<i>compatriotes, m.</i>
There,	<i>y.*</i>
To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>
Letters,	<i>lettres, f.</i>
To take,	<i>prendre.</i>
I have nothing left,	<i>il ne m'est demeuré chose.</i>
To write,	<i>écrire,</i>
Works,	<i>ouvrages, m.</i>
Success,	<i>succès, m.</i>

Faults,	<i>fautes,</i>
To commit,	<i>commettre.</i>
To forgive,	<i>pardonner.</i>
Him,	<i>lui.</i>
Riches,	<i>richesses, f.</i>
To possess,	<i>posséder.</i>
To know how,	<i>savoir.</i>
To regulate,	<i>régler.</i>
Expenses,	<i>dépenses, f.</i>
Advantages,	<i>avantages, m.</i>
To be successful,	<i>réussir.</i>
Undertaking,	<i>entreprise, f.</i>
Powerful,	<i>puissant.</i>
To fear,	<i>craindre.</i>
Efforts,	<i>efforts, m.</i>
To make,	<i>faire.</i>
You cannot,	<i>vous ne sauriez.</i>
To reach,	<i>atteindre.</i>

**Rule 48.**—*QUEL QUE* followed by the verb *être*, is always spelt in two words. *Quel* in that case is regular, that is to say, agrees in gender and number with the nominative to the verb.

## EXAMPLES :

*Whatever* your project may be,  
*QUEL que soit votre projet.*

---

\* *Y* precedes the verb, and in compound tenses, the auxiliary.

Whatever the law may be,  
*QUELLE que soit la loi.*

Whatever your projects may be,  
*QUELS que soient vos projets.*

Whatever the laws may be, or let the laws be what they will,  
*QUELLES que soient les lois.*

#### EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE *quel que*.

I shall go whatever the day may be. I do not fear<sup>s</sup> them<sup>1</sup> whatever they may be. In our country all men whoever they may be, are equal before the law. Whatever his sufferings were, he never complained. Whatever their designs may be, they manifest<sup>s</sup> them<sup>1</sup> to nobody. Whatever your birth may be, despise nobody.

Day,	<i>jour, m.</i>	Sufferings,	<i>souffrances, f.</i>
To fear,	<i>craindre.</i>	To complain,	<i>se plaindre.</i>
Them,	<i>les.</i>	Designs,	<i>dessins, m.</i>
Country,	<i>pays, m.</i>	To manifest,	<i>manifeste.</i>
Equal,	<i>égaux.</i>	Nobody,	<i>personne.</i>
Before,	<i>devant.</i>	Birth,	<i>naissance, f.</i>
Law,	<i>loi, f.</i>	To despise,	<i>mépriser.</i>

**Rule 49.**—*Tout, any, any one.* This indefinite adjective is used in the sense of *every, each*, when speaking individually, but at the same time alluding to the whole species; it corresponds to the *quisque* of the Latin, and is placed immediately before a substantive.

#### EXAMPLES:

*Every* citizen ought to serve his country,  
*Tout citoyen doit servir son pays.*

The labourer is worthy of his hire,  
*Toute peine mérite salaire.*

In this sense,\* *tout* has no plural, and is never followed by the article.

\* *Tout* is used in several senses.

1. As a substantive, meaning *all, the whole*, corresponding to the *totum* of the Latin, as: *le tout se monte à tant, tout périt.*

2. As an adjective, signifying *whole, universal*, equal to the *totus, omnis* of the Latin, as: *tout l'homme ne meurt pas.*

3. As a common adjective, in a collective or distributive sense, equal to the *omnes* of the Latin; in a *collective* sense meaning *all, the whole*, as: *toute la ville le sait, il passe tout son temps à lire*; and in a *distributive* sense, meaning *every, each*, as: *toute vérité n'est pas bonne à dire*, in this case it admits of no article.

4. As an adverb, meaning *quite, entirely*, corresponding to the *omnino, plane*, of the Latin, as: *nos vaisseaux sont tout prêts, etc.*

EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE *tout*.

Every man is subject to death. Any water will serve for that. Every man capable of acting thus ought to be despised. Every law which screens the guilty ought to be abolished. Any sensible<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup> will agree with you on that point. Every honest man will censure such a conduct. Any work is not fit to be read. I will serve him on any occasion.

Subject,	<i>sujet.</i>	Sensible,	<i>sensé.</i>
Death,	<i>mort, f.</i>	To agree,	<i>être d'accord.</i>
To serve,	<i>servir.</i>	Honest,	<i>honnête.</i>
Capable,	<i>capable.</i>	To censure,	<i>blâmer.</i>
To act,	<i>agir.</i>	Such a,	<i>une telle.</i>
Thus,	<i>ainsi.</i>	Conduct,	<i>conduite, f.</i>
Ought,	<i>doit.</i>	Work,	<i>ouvrage, m.</i>
To despise,	<i>mépriser.</i>	Fit to be,	<i>bon à.</i>
Law,	<i>loi, f.</i>	Read,	<i>lire.</i>
To screen,	<i>mettre à couvert.</i>	To serve,	<i>servir.</i>
Guilty,	<i>coupable, m.</i>	On,	<i>en.</i>
To abolish,	<i>abolir.</i>	Occasion,	<i>occasion, f.</i>

## SYNTAX OF THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

**Rule 50.**—The numeral adjectives are of both *genders*, except *un*, *premier*, and *second*, which take an *e* mute in the feminine.

## EXAMPLES :

*One man, one woman,*  
*UN homme, UNE femme.*

*The first man, the first woman,*  
*Le PREMIER homme, la PREMIÈRE femme.*

*The second month, the second year,*  
*Le SECOND mois, la SECONDE année.*

**Rule 51.**—ON CARDINAL NUMBERS.

The cardinal numbers are all of both *numbers*, except *vingt* and *cent*,\* which, when plural, take an *s* before a substantive expressed or understood.

\* When *vingts* and *cents* in the plural are immediately followed by another number, they, then, never take the *s*, thus we say:

There were *eighty-five* ships,      *il y avait quatre-VINGT cinq vaisseaux.*  
We were *two hundred and fifteen*,      *nous étions deux CENT quinze.*

*Cents* and *vingt* are likewise indeclinable in speaking of *dates*, and we write: *Le mil sept CENT quatre-VINGT.*

## EXAMPLES :

There were eighty ships,  
*Il y avait quatre-vingts vaisseaux.*

We were two hundred,  
*Nous étions deux cents.*

The cardinal *mille* never takes an *s* in the plural.

## EXAMPLES :

Ten thousand men, *dix mille hommes.*  
 One hundred thousand pounds, *cent mille livres.*

When speaking of dates, *mille* is changed into *mil* : as,

In the year one thousand eight hundred and thirty-five,\*  
*Dans l'année mil huit cent trente cinq.*

## EXERCISE ON CARDINAL NUMBERS.

He died in the year one thousand† two hundred and seventy-three. Napoleon was born on the fifteenth of August, one thousand seven hundred and sixty-nine. Those two volumes contain twelve chapters, and four hundred pages. He had in his purse eighty-one pounds in gold, and twenty-two shillings in silver. I have already paid him seven thousand three hundred francs. Three hundred and eighty francs make fifteen pounds four shillings. There were two thousand men killed, and six hundred wounded.‡ Learn a hundred lines.

To die,	<i>mourir.</i>	Gold,	<i>or, m.</i>
In,	<i>dans.</i>	Shillings,	<i>schellings, m.</i>
Napoleon,	<i>Napoléon.</i>	Silver,	<i>argent, m.</i>
Was born,	<i>naquit.</i>	Already,	<i>déjà.</i>
August,	<i>Août.</i>	To pay,	<i>payer.</i>
Volumes,	<i>volumes, m.</i>	Him,	<i>lui.</i>
To contain,	<i>contenir.</i>	Francs,	<i>francs, m.</i>
Chapters,	<i>chapitres, m.</i>	To make,	<i>faire.</i>
Pages,	<i>pages, f.</i>	To kill,	<i>tuer.</i>
Purse,	<i>bourse, f.</i>	To wound,	<i>blesser.</i>
Pounds,	<i>livres, f.</i>	To learn,	<i>apprendre.</i>
In,	<i>en.</i>	Lines,	<i>lignes, f.</i>

\* The word *and* used in English to join two numbers together, is not expressed in French.

† Instead of *mille cent, mille deux cents*, for one thousand one hundred, one thousand two hundred, the French prefer saying, *onze cents, douze cents*; but they say indifferently *mille trois cents* or *treize cents*, and so forth, as far as two thousand.

‡ When in such sentences as the above, the word that follows immediately the cardinal number is a *past participle*, the preposition *de* must be put between them; say, therefore, *six cents de blessés*.

## OF ORDINAL NUMBERS.

**Rule 52.**—After *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, quatre-vingt, cent, and mille*, the French use *unième* and *deuxième*, for *first* and *second*.

## EXAMPLES :

The twenty- first day,	<i>le vingt et unième jour.</i>
The fifty-second year,	<i>la cinquante deuxième année.</i>

**Rule 53.**—The *cardinal* numbers, instead of the *ordinal* must be used in French, when they express a date,\* except the *first*.

## EXAMPLES :

He will come on the *fifteenth* of May,  
*Il viendra le quinze mai or de mai.*

They arrived in Paris on the *first* of September,  
*Ils arrivèrent à Paris le premier septembre or de septembre.*

**Rule 54.**—Before *huit, huitaine, or huitième, onze or onzième*, the vowel is not dropped in *le* or *la*.

## EXAMPLES :

On the <i>eighth</i> of the month,	<i>le huit du mois.</i>
It was the <i>eleventh</i> time,	<i>c'était la onzième fois.</i>

## EXERCISE ON THE ORDINAL ADJECTIVES.

My bookseller writes to me that on the first of August I shall receive three numbers of the "Universal<sup>2</sup> Biography<sup>1</sup>," viz., the fiftieth, fifty-first, and fifty-second. Charles the Twelfth<sup>†</sup> died in his thirty-sixth year. Your letter of the eleventh of June, antedated May the fourth, reached me on the tenth of July. This is the twenty-first anniversary of that great battle. The eighth day after my arrival I fell ill. Date your letter from November the first. Read from the hundred and first page to the hundred and twentieth. It is the third part of the book. Nearly one half. Let us divide this into four parts ; take one fourth, give me as much, and let us send the other half to Doctor V.

\* Observe that the number and the article always precede the names of months in French, in expressing dates; thus we say: June the tenth, *le dix Juin*, or *de Juin*; October the eleventh, *le onze Octobre* or *d'Octobre*.

† Read page 147, the observation to rule 8.

Bookseller,	<i>libraire.</i>	Day,	<i>jour, m.</i>
To write,	<i>écrire.</i>	Arrival,	<i>arrivée, f.</i>
That,	<i>que.</i>	To fall ill,	<i>tomber malade.</i>
Numbers,	<i>livraisons, f.</i>	November,	<i>Novembre.</i>
Universal,	<i>universel.</i>	To read,	<i>lire.</i>
Biography,	<i>biographie, f.</i>	Page,	<i>page, f.</i>
Viz,	<i>savoir.</i>	Nearly,	<i>près de.</i>
Year,	<i>année, f.</i>	Divide,	<i>diviser.</i>
Letter,	<i>lettre, f.</i>	This,	<i>ceci.</i>
Antedated,	<i>antidatée.</i>	Into,	<i>en.</i>
May,	<i>Mai.</i>	Parts,	<i>parties, f.</i>
Reached me,	<i>m'est parvenue.</i>	To take,	<i>prendre.</i>
July,	<i>Juillet.</i>	Give me,	<i>donnez-m'en.</i>
This is,	<i>voici.</i>	As much,	<i>autant.</i>
Anniversary,	<i>anniversaire, m.</i>	Other,	<i>autre.</i>
Battle,	<i>bataille, f.</i>	Doctor,	<i>docteur.</i>

## CHAPTER IV.

## SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

## OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are divided into two classes which are called the *conjunctive* and the *disjunctive*.

The French having, as the tables of personal pronouns given in pages 44 and 45, show two distinct classes of personal pronouns, the *conjunctive* and the *disjunctive*, and, consequently, two ways of translating, *I, thou, he, she, we, ye, they*, it being so, not only in the *nominative*, but in the *genitive, dative, and accusative*, their use in each of these cases perplexes the English student—first, in distinguishing the former from the latter; secondly, in placing them before or after the verb, according as the class to which they belong, requires.

The genius of the French and English languages, with respect to the *place* and the *order* of these pronouns being dissimilar, there is no part of the French accidence in which the English student commits more mistakes, none in which those mistakes are of more occurrence, more frequent. The chapter of a grammar which treats on that subject, cannot, therefore, be too strongly recommended to

the attention of the English student who learns the French language for practical purposes, nor can the skill of a teacher be employed with better effect than in rendering this matter as *clear* and *easy* as possible.

In order to attain that end, we will first give separately the personal pronouns, *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*, in the *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, and *accusative*, with rules to show how to distinguish the former from the latter, in each of these cases, and what their *place* is with respect to the verb.

Secondly, the student will find a table and rules showing the *order of conjunctive personal pronouns* when there are two or three of different cases, governed by the same verb. These rules will, it is presumed, lessen the difficulties attending French personal pronouns, and familiarize the learner, with that most important part of the mechanism of the French language.

#### OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE NOMINATIVE.

The personal pronouns in the nominative are :

	Conjunctive.	Disjunctive.
I,	<i>je,</i>	<i>moi.</i>
thou,	<i>tu,</i>	<i>toi.</i>
he, she,	<i>il, elle,</i>	<i>lui, elle.</i>
we,	<i>nous,</i>	<i>nous.</i>
you, or ye,	<i>vous,</i>	<i>vous.</i>
they,	<i>ils, elles,</i>	<i>eux, elles.</i>

**Rule 55.**—When personal pronouns in the *nominative* are *conjunctive* in French.

These pronouns are *conjunctive* in French, when they are the subject of the verb with which they are always immediately united, and which they precede.\*

\* Except: 1. As before observed, in interrogative phrases, as *parlons-NOUS?* *chantent-ILS?*

2. When in elliptic phrases in the subjunctive mood, no conjunction is expressed, as: *puissé-je les voir heureux!*

3. When the verb forms a kind of parenthesis, showing that we repeat the words of some person; as: *soldats, s'écria-t-IL, qui m'aime me suive!*

4. When the verb is preceded by some such verbs: *aussi, peut-être, encore, en vain, à peine, du moins, au moins*; as: perhaps he will come, *peut-être viendra-t-IL*; I was scarcely arrived, *à peine fus-JE arrivé.*



## EXAMPLES :

<i>I give,</i>	<i>JE donne.</i>	<i>He suffers,</i>	<i>IL souffre.</i>
<i>We speak,</i>	<i>NOUS parlons.</i>	<i>They sing,</i>	<i>ILS chantent.</i>

**Rule 56.**—When the personal pronouns in the *nominative* are *disjunctive* in French.

These pronouns are *disjunctive* in French, whenever they are parted from the verb of which they are the nominative, or when two or more are divided by a conjunction.\*

## EXAMPLES :

It is <i>I</i> who say so,	<i>c'est moi qui le dis.</i>
Who has done that? <i>He,</i>	<i>qui a fait cela ? LUI.</i>
You are more prudent than <i>they,</i>	<i>vous êtes plus prudent qu'eux.</i>
<i>He and I</i> have done,	<i>LUI et moi nous avons fini.</i>

EXERCISE ON THE CONJUNCTIVE AND DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL  
PRONOUNS IN THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

Who shall have it? It will be either you or I. He will go, I will remain. I was writing; who was writing? I. Who is to read? It is not I; it is he. They dance; who dances? they. He alone has done it. Was it she who saw him? No, it was I. She who knew where he was, sent word to your father. He is as tall as she. You are more prudent than they. I am not so skilful as you. You and I will go to see the exhibition. You and they walk too fast. Your brother and I were at college together. You saw the king, but I spoke to him. What? he do such a thing! I am incapable of it.

Either, or,	<i>ou, ou.</i>	To know,	<i>savoir.</i>
To write,	<i>écrire.</i>	Sent word,	<i>le fit savoir.</i>
To read,	<i>lire.</i>	Tall,	<i>grand.</i>
To dance,	<i>danser.</i>	Prudent,	<i>prudent.</i>
To do,	<i>faire.</i>	Skilful,	<i>adroit.</i>
To see,	<i>voir.</i>	Exhibition,	<i>exposition.</i>

\* They are also often used *emphatically*, as: *moi, je dis qu'il a raison; lui, il opprimerait l'innocence!*

† In any case like the above, that is, where two or more nominatives of different persons govern the same verb, that verb is put in the plural, and is preceded by *nous*, *vous*, or *ils*, which thus used are well called *resuming* pronouns. Thus we say:

You and I agree,	<i>vous et moi NOUS SOMMES d'accord.</i>
You and they live together,	<i>vous et eux VOUS DEMEUREZ ensemble.</i>

In the first of these examples, the verb is put in the first person plural, because of the disjunctive pronouns that precede, *one* is in the first person; thus in all such sentences, the first person is used in preference to the second, and the second, to the third, as exemplified likewise in the other sentence.

To walk, *marcher.*  
 Too fast, *trop vite.*  
 College, *collège.*  
 Together, *ensemble.*

Such a thing, *une chose pareille.*  
 I am incapable of it, *je n'en suis pas capable.*

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE GENITIVE.

The personal pronouns in the genitive are :

	Conjunctive.	Disjunctive.
of me,	<i>en,*</i>	<i>de moi.</i>
of thee,	<i>en,</i>	<i>de toi.</i>
of him, of her, of it,	<i>en,</i>	<i>de lui, d'elle.</i>
of us,	<i>en,</i>	<i>de nous.</i>
of you or ye,	<i>en,</i>	<i>de vous.</i>
of them,	<i>en,</i>	<i>d'eux, d'elles.</i>

**Rule 57.**—When personal pronouns in the *genitive* are *conjunctive* in French.

The personal pronouns in the *genitive* are most frequently *disjunctive* in speaking of persons : they are, however, *conjunctive* in speaking of persons, to avoid the repetition of *de lui, d'eux*, etc., or in answer to a question. In speaking of things, they are always *conjunctive*.

EXAMPLES :

We spoke of him this morning, and shall again this evening,  
*Nous avons parlé DE LUI ce matin et nous EN parlerons encore ce soir.*

Are you afraid of him ? yes I am,  
*Avez-vous peur DE LUI ? oui, j'EN ai peur.*

Here is the parcel you expected ; we were just speaking of it.  
*Voici le paquet que vous attendiez ; nous EN parlions justement.*

\* Though a *relative* pronoun, *en* is usually classed among the *personal*, the place of which it supplies ; it sometimes answers to *some of it, some of them, from it, from them, hence, thence, for that*, etc.

EXAMPLES :

You have money, give *some* to your brother,  
*Vous avez de l'argent, donnez EN à votre frère.*

Are you going to the city ? no, I am just come from it,  
*Allez-vous à la cité ? non, j'EN viens.*

He is but the more angry with you,  
*Il n'EN est que plus irrité contre vous.*

EXERCISE ON THE CONJUNCTIVE AND DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS IN THE GENITIVE CASE.

I never<sup>2</sup> laugh<sup>1</sup> at them, though they often<sup>2</sup> laugh<sup>1</sup> at me. He always<sup>2</sup> speaks<sup>1</sup> well of you, you should not speak ill of him. The thing is settled, let us speak no more of it. You seem greatly concerned about him. I am busy about you. What did they say of me? I approached her in order to speak of you. We expect nothing from them. That does not depend on me. I complained of him yesterday and shall<sup>2</sup> again to-day. Do you speak of her? yes, I do. You are going to the park, and I am just come from it. If you want paper, I will give you some. It is an unfortunate business; do not speak of it.

To laugh at,	<i>se moquer de.</i>
Though,	<i>quoique.</i>
Always,	<i>toujours.</i>
To speak well of,	<i>dire du bien de.</i>
Should,	<i>devriez.</i>
Thing,	<i>affaire, l.</i>
Settled,	<i>fini.</i>
No more,	<i>plus.</i>
To seem,	<i>sembler.</i>
Greatly,	<i>bien.</i>
Concerned,	<i>inquiet.</i>
About,	<i>de.</i>
To be busy about,	<i>s'occuper de.</i>
What did they say,	<i>qu'a-t-on dit.</i>

To approach,	<i>s'approcher de.</i>
In order,	<i>afin de.</i>
To expect,	<i>attendre.</i>
That,	<i>cela.</i>
To depend on,	<i>dépendre de.</i>
To complain,	<i>se plaindre.</i>
Yesterday,	<i>hier.</i>
Again,	<i>encore.</i>
To go,	<i>aller.</i>
Park,	<i>parc, m.</i>
Have just come,	<i>viens.</i>
Want,	<i>avoir besoin de.</i>
Unfortunate,	<i>malheureux.</i>
Business,	<i>affaire, l.</i>

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE DATIVE.

The personal pronouns in the dative are :

	Conjunctive.	Disjunctive.
to me,	<i>me,</i>	<i>à moi.</i>
to thee,	<i>te,</i>	<i>à toi.</i>
to him, to her,†—	<i>lui,</i>	<i>à lui, à elle.</i>
to us,	<i>nous,</i>	<i>à nous.</i>
to you, or ye,	<i>vous,</i>	<i>à vous.</i>
to them,	<i>leur,</i>	<i>à eux, à elles.</i>

\* Turn in French, and I shall complain of him again to-day.

† To it is expressed by *y*, which means also to them in speaking of things, except when preceded by the verb *devoir*, to owe, to be indebted; in which case *to it* and to them, are always expressed by *lui* and *leur*; *y* is sometimes applied to persons.

EXAMPLES:

I consent to it.  
*J'y consens.*

These trifles do not deserve the importance which you attach to them.  
*Ces bagatelles ne méritent pas l'importance que vous y attachez.*

**Rule 58.**—When personal pronouns in the *dative* are *conjunctive* in French :

The personal pronouns in the *dative* are *conjunctive* in French when the verb governs only *one* of them in the same case.

I write <i>to them</i> ,	<i>Je LEUR écris.</i>
I have written <i>to them</i> ,	<i>Je LEUR ai écrit.</i>
We give <i>him</i> ,*	<i>Nous LUI donnons.</i>

**Rule 59.**—When personal pronouns in the *dative* are *disjunctive* in French.

The personal pronouns in the *dative* are *disjunctive* in French :

1. When the verb governs several in the same case ; as,

I speak *to you* and *to him*,     *je parle à VOUS et à LUI.*

2. When governed by a pronominal verb ; as,

He applied *to me*,     *il s'adressa à moi.*

3. After verbs used with the preposition *à* ; as,

To go to,	<i>aller à.</i>	To think of,	<i>penser à.</i>
To appeal to,	<i>en appeler à.</i>	To reach,	<i>parvenir à.</i>
To run to,	<i>courir à.</i>	To come,	<i>venir à.</i>
To drink to,	<i>boire à.</i>	To fly,	<i>voler à.</i>

4. In the imperative mood used affirmatively (except the third persons singular and plural) ;

#### EXAMPLES :

Give <i>me</i> that pencil,	<i>donne-MOI CE crayon.</i>
Let us speak <i>to them</i> now,	<i>parlons-LEUR maintenant.</i>
Carry this <i>to him</i> ,	<i>portez-LUI ceci.</i>

He is an honest man, trust *to him*,  
*C'est un honnête homme, fiez-vous Y.*

*Y* is used also (in reference to places) for *in it*, *there*, *thither*, *here*, whether expressed or understood in English.

#### EXAMPLES :

We are going <i>thither</i> ,	<i>nous Y allons.</i>
I will not stay <i>there</i> long,	<i>je n'Y resterai pas long-temps.</i>

\* Observe that whenever *him*, *her*, *them*, or *it*, stand in English for *to him*, *to her*, *to them*, or *to it*, *LUI*, *LEUR*, or *Y*, must be used in French, not *le*, *la*, *les*.

**EXERCISE ON THE CONJUNCTIVE AND THE DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE DATIVE CASE.**

I forgive her. I will lend this book to them with pleasure. I have spoken to him on that subject. Have you sent my letter to him? Will you show me the way? This is a fine picture, you should put a frame to it. I see that the thing is serious, I will give more thought to it. Shall you speak to his father or to him? He will apply to you rather than to them. He told them that he would write to them or to me. You may trust them. If you should be embarrassed, come to me. Go to him. Your reasons are good, I yield to them. You are going to the play, I have a good mind to go also. Offer him your services. Let us go there together. Stay there.

To forgive,	<i>pardonner.</i>
To lend,	<i>prêter.</i>
Pleasure,	<i>plaisir, m.</i>
On,	<i>à.</i>
Subject,	<i>sujet, m.</i>
To show,	<i>montrer.</i>
Way,	<i>chemin, m.</i>
Fine,	<i>beau.</i>
Picture,	<i>tableau, m.</i>
Should,	<i>devriez.</i>
To put,	<i>mettre.</i>
Frame,	<i>cadre, m.</i>
Thing,	<i>affaire, f.</i>
Thought,	<i>attention.</i>
To apply.	<i>s'adresser.</i>

Rather than,	<i>plutôt que.</i>
To tell,	<i>dire.</i>
To trust,	<i>se fier à.</i>
Should be,	<i>être.</i>
Embarrassed,	<i>embarrassé.</i>
Reasons,	<i>raisons, f.</i>
To yield,	<i>se rendre.</i>
Play,	<i>spectacle, m.</i>
Good mind,	<i>bien envie de.</i>
Also,	<i>aussi.</i>
To offer,	<i>offrir.</i>
Services,	<i>services.</i>
Together,	<i>ensemble.</i>
To stay,	<i>rester.</i>

**OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE ACCUSATIVE.**

The personal pronouns in the *accusative* are :

	Conjunctive.	Disjunctive.
me,	<i>me,</i>	<i>moi.</i>
thee,	<i>te,</i>	<i>toi.</i>
him, her, it,*	<i>le, la,†</i>	<i>lui, elle.</i>
us,	<i>nous,</i>	<i>nous.</i>
you, or ye,	<i>vous,</i>	<i>vous.</i>
them,*	<i>les,†</i>	<i>eux, elles.</i>

\* When *it* and *them* come after a preposition, and have reference to *things*, they are usually left out, as :

Come near the fire ; I am quite near *it*.

*Approchez-vous du feu ; je suis tout AUPRÈS.*

† *Le, la, les*, are sometimes used as supplying pronouns in the sense of *so*, to avoid repetition. When representing a *substantive* this supplying pronoun agrees with it in gender and number.

**EXAMPLES:**

Are you the gentleman who wishes to see Mr. A.? No, I am not.

*Etes-vous le monsieur qui désire voir M. A. ? Non ; je ne LE suis pas.*

**Rule 60.**—When personal pronouns in the *accusative* are *conjunctive* in French.

Personal pronouns in the *accusative* are *conjunctive* when the verb by which they are governed is used without a preposition :

## EXAMPLES :

I see him,	<i>je LE vois.</i>
I have seen them,	<i>je LES ai vus.</i>

**Rule 61.**—When personal pronouns in the *accusative* are *disjunctive* in French.

Personal pronouns in the *accusative* are *disjunctive* in French when the verb by which they are governed is used with a preposition :

## EXAMPLES :

Write that <i>for me</i> ,	<i>écrivez cela POUR MOI.</i>
Say nothing <i>against them</i> ,	<i>ne dites rien CONTRE EUX.</i>

## EXERCISE ON THE CONJUNCTIVE AND DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

God is a father to those who love him, and a protector to those who fear him. I respect her as much as you. He has seen us. They fear me, but I do not fear them. Are you willing to serve us? I have seen you several times with them. Is this money for me? Let us go with them. I was obliged to set out without him. You will speak after her. He relies upon thee. Do that for me.

A,	<i>le.</i>	Times,	<i>fois.</i>
To those,	<i>de ceux.</i>	Obliged,	<i>obligé de.</i>
Protector,	<i>protecteur.</i>	To set out,	<i>partir.</i>
To fear,	<i>craindre.</i>	Without,	<i>sans.</i>
To respect,	<i>respecter.</i>	After,	<i>après.</i>
As much as,	<i>autant que.</i>	To rely,	<i>compter.</i>
Willing,	<i>disposé à.</i>	Upon,	<i>sur.</i>
To serve,	<i>servir.</i>	That,	<i>cela.</i>
Several,	<i>plusieurs.</i>		

Are you the daughters of Captain E. ? yes, we are.

*Etes-vous les filles du Capitaine E. ? oui, nous LES sommes.*

But when it has reference to an adjective, it is indeclinable.

## EXAMPLES :

Are you pleased madam ? yes, I am.

*Etes-vous contente madame ? oui, je LE suis.*

They are rich, and we are not.

*Ils sont riches, et nous ne LE sommes pas.*

**OBSERVE.**—When a question is asked by *est-ce là*, or *sont-ce là*, the word *ce* is used in the answer thus :

Are these your gloves ? yes, they are.

*Sont-ce là vos gants ? oui, CE LES sont.*

## ORDER OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**Rule 62.**—When two *conjunctive* personal pronouns one in the *dative*, the other in the *accusative* are governed by the same verb, they observe the order in which those cases are given in grammars; viz: the dative *before* the accusative\* and thus they come in French *immediately before the verb*,† in simple tenses, and *before the auxiliary*, in compound tenses, as the following will show.

<i>me le,</i>	<i>me la,</i>	<i>me les.</i>
<i>te le,</i>	<i>te la,</i>	<i>te les.</i>
<i>nous le,</i>	<i>nous la,</i>	<i>nous les.</i>
<i>vous le,</i>	<i>vous la,</i>	<i>vous les.</i>

## CORRESPONDING PRONOUNS IN ENGLISH, SHOWING THE DIFFERENCE IN THE ORDER.

him, or it	{ to me, to thee, to us, to you or ye.	her, or it	{ to me, to thee, to us, to you or ye.	them	{ to me, to thee, to us, to you or ye.
---------------	---	---------------	---	------	---

**NOTE.**—The pronoun *se* precedes *le, la, les, en*, whenever used with either; as, He remembers it, *il se le rappelle*, etc.

## EXAMPLES OF THE ABOVE PRONOUNS IN SIMPLE AND COMPOUND TENSES.

## SIMPLE TENSE.

## AFFIRMATIVELY.

I will show *them* to you,  
*Je vous les montrerai.*

## INTERROGATIVELY.

Shall I show *them* to you?  
*Vous les montrerez-vous?*

## NEGATIVELY.

I will not show *them* to you,  
*Je ne vous les montrerai pas.*

## IN BOTH WAYS.

Shall I not show *them* to you?  
*Ne vous les montrerez-vous pas?*

\* Except in the third person singular and plural when the *accusative* comes first as in English, thus:

le lui,	la lui,	les lui.
le leur,	la leur,	les leur.
him or it, to him, to her, him or it, to them.	her or it, to him, to her, her or it, to them.	them, to him, to her. them, to them.

† This is not applicable to the *imperative* of verbs. See page 45.

## THE SAME IN A COMPOUND TENSE.

I have shown <i>them</i> to you,	Have I shown <i>them</i> to you?
<i>Je vous LES ai montrés.</i>	<i>VOUS LES ai-je montrés?</i>
I have not shewn <i>them</i> to you,	Have I not shown <i>them</i> to you?
<i>Je ne vous LES ai pas montrés.</i>	<i>Ne vous LES ai-je pas montrés.</i>

**Rule 63.**—When the adverb of place *y*, (*there, thither, in it*) is used conjointly with the above, it follows them, thus :

I will leave *them there, or in it*,  
*Je LES Y laisserai.*

or, I will show *them to you there*,  
*Je vous LES Y montrerai.*

**OBSERVE.**—By the foregoing examples it will be seen that, whether a sentence be *affirmative, interrogative, or negative*, the *personal conjunctive pronouns* governed by the verb, still retain their places *immediately before the verb, or the auxiliary*.

## EXERCISE ON THE TWO PRECEDING RULES.

They lend it to me. They do not lend it to me. Do they lend it to me? Do they not lend it to me? He has explained them to us. Has he explained them to us? He has not explained them to us. Has he not explained them to us? I will write it to him. I will not send it to them there. Have you told it to them? Did you not tell it to her? We leave them to thee. Have we left them to him? I have left it for you there. He would not have brought it to us there. I will carry it there to them with pleasure.

To lend,	<i>prêter.</i>	To send,	<i>envoyer.</i>
To explain,	<i>expliquer.</i>	To leave,	<i>laisser.</i>
To write,	<i>écrire.</i>	To bring,	<i>apporter.</i>
To tell,	<i>dire.</i>	To carry,	<i>porter.</i>

**Rule 64.**—When two *conjunctive personal pronouns*, one in the *genitive*, the other in the *dative* or *accusative*, are governed in French by the same verb, the *genitive* comes last, thus :

of it* to me,	<i>m'en.</i>
of it to thee,	<i>t'en.</i>
of it to him, her,	<i>lui en.</i>
of it to us,	<i>nous en.</i>
of it to you,	<i>vous en.</i>
of it to them,	<i>leur en.</i>

---

\* Or *some* to me, etc., if *en* be used in the sense of *some of it*.



And when *y* is used together with *en*, the order is thus :

some (of it)	to me there,	<i>m'y en.</i>
some	to thee there,	<i>t'y en.</i>
some	to him, her, there,	<i>lui y en.</i>
some	to us there,	<i>nous y en.</i>
some	to you there,	<i>vous y en.</i>
some	to them there,	<i>leur y en.</i>

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULE.

I often<sup>2</sup> speak<sup>1</sup> of it to them. He will bring us some of it. We have left some of them for you. What has he said of it to you? How much shall we send of it to her? I would have given half of it to them. Will you send some to us there.\* You will bring a little of it there for me. You must not leave so much of it there for him. What will they have said of it to them? I have put some in it. They spoke of it to him several times. They have promised some to me.

To leave,	<i>laisser.</i>	You must,	<i>il faut.</i>
For you,	<i>vous.</i>	So much,	<i>tant.</i>
What,	<i>que.</i>	To put,	<i>mettre.</i>
To say,	<i>dire.</i>	Several,	<i>plusieurs.</i>
How much,	<i>combien.</i>	Times,	<i>fois.</i>
To send,	<i>envoyer.</i>	To promise,	<i>promettre.</i>
Half,	<i>la moitié.</i>		

ORDER OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS IRREGULAR IN FRENCH IN THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

It has already been said that in the *imperative mood affirmative*, (that is, expressing *command*) the personal conjunctive pronouns follow the verb in French; we have now to explain in what order they come, with that tense, when there are two or more governed by the same verb.

**Rule 65.**—When two pronouns, one in the *dative*, the other in the *accusative* are governed by the same verb, and in the *imperative mood affirmative*, the *dative* is *disjunctive* and comes last.

lend it, or them.	{	<i>to me,</i> <i>to him, her,</i> <i>to us,</i> <i>to them,</i>	Préter-	{	LE-MOI,	LA-MOI,	LES-MOI.
					LE LUI,	LA-LUI,	LES-LUL.
					LE-NOUS,	LA-NOUS,	LES-NOUS.
					LE-LEUR,	LA-LEUR,	LES-LEURS.

But when the *imperative* is *negative* (that is expressing

\* When the sense is sufficiently determined without *y*, it is better to omit it.

*prohibition*), those two pronouns are *conjunctive*, precede the verb according to the general rule, and in the usual order.\*

## EXAMPLES :

Do not lend *it*, or *them*, to *me*,

*Ne ME LE, ME LA, ME LES prêtez pas.*

Do not lend *it*, or *them*, to *him*, *her*,

*Ne LE LUI, LA LUI, LES LUI prêtez pas.*

Do not lend *it*, or *them*, to *us*,

*Ne NOUS LE, NOUS LA, NOUS LES prêtez pas.*

Do not lend *it*, or *them*, to *them*,

*Ne LE LEUR, LA LEUR, LES LEUR prêtez pas.*

**Rule 66.**—When two personal pronouns, one in the *genitive*, the other in the *dative*, are governed by the same verb in the *imperative affirmative*, they are both *conjunctive* and the usual order is observed (See rule 64).

## EXAMPLES :

Speak of it,	or of <i>them</i> , to <i>me</i> ,	<i>parlez-M'EN.</i>
	or of <i>them</i> , to <i>him</i> , <i>her</i> ,	<i>parlez-LUI-EN.</i>
	or of <i>them</i> , to <i>us</i> ,	<i>parlez-NOUS-EN.</i>
	or of <i>them</i> , to <i>them</i> ,	<i>parlez-LEUR-EN.</i>

**Rule 67.**—When the adverb of place *y* and a personal pronoun are governed by the same verb in the *imperative affirmative*, they come in the order stated in rule 63, except in the first and second persons singular, when *ME*, *TE*, are for the sake of euphony, changed into the *disjunctive* *MOI*, *TOI*, with *y* before.

## EXAMPLE :

Take me thither,	<i>mènes-Y-MOI,</i>	not <i>mènes-M'Y.</i>
Sit thyself in it,	<i>assieds-Y-TOI,†</i>	„ <i>assieds-T'Y.</i>
Take him there,	<i>menez-L'Y.</i>	
Take us there,	• <i>menez-NOUS Y.</i>	
Take them there,	<i>menez-LES Y.</i>	

## EXERCISE ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS WITH THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Let us send it to him. Let us not send it to him. Send it to me.  
Do not send it to me. Buy some for us. Do not buy some for us.

\* See Rule 62, and the exceptions to the same, at the bottom of the page.

† It is better to avoid using these unharmonious sentences by taking another turn, and say for instance : *je te prie de m'y mener, fais-moi le plaisir de t'y asseoir.*

OBSERVE.—That an *s* has been added to *mène*; this is done in the second person singular of the verbs ending in an *e* mute followed by *y* or *en*. We may also use the *s* with two hyphens.

Let him speak of it to them. Let him not speak of it to them. Place them there. Do not place them there. Let them bring it me. Bring it to me. Bring it to us. Do not bring it to us. Accompany them there. Accompany me there. Do not accompany me there. Pay them to them. Send it to us there. Finish it and bring it to me.\*

To buy,           *acheter.*  
To place,       *placer.*  
To bring,       *apporter.*

To accompany,   *accompagner.*  
To pay,       *payer.*  
To finish,       *finir.*

#### REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**Rule 68.**—The personal pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons, used as *nominatives* must be repeated before every verb, if those verbs be of different tenses:† these pronouns of the *third* persons are hardly ever repeated before verbs in the same tense.‡

#### EXAMPLES :

*I study and always will study,*  
*J'Étudie et j'étudierai toujours.*

*You loved and love still an ungrateful man,*  
*Vous aimiez et vous aimez encore un ingrat.*

*He took several cities, conquered considerable provinces, and overturned powerful empires,*  
*IL prit plusieurs villes, conquit des provinces considérables, et renversa de puissants empires.*

**Rule 69.**—The personal pronouns *nominative*, are repeated, 1st, when two members of a sentence are joined by any conjunction but *et*, *mais*, or *ni*.

#### EXAMPLES :

*He is active, although advanced in years,*  
*IL est actif quoiqu'il soit avancé en âge.*

*You will be esteemed if you be wise and modest,*  
*Vous serez estimé si vous êtes sage et modeste.*

\* When two or more verbs succeeding each other are used in the *imperative affirmative*, and joined by *et* or *ou*, the personal pronoun or pronouns precede the second or last (if more than two), as: *apportez-LE, et ME LE montrez*; *Mais-LA, signez-LA, et ME LA donnez.*

† Though not absolutely necessary, the repetition is better even when the verbs are in the same tense.

‡ When the verbs are in different tenses, the pronouns of the *third* persons may or may not be repeated.

2nd.—When we pass from an affirmative to a negative, or, from a negative to an affirmative sentence.

## EXAMPLES :

*He gains nothing and spends much,*  
*IL ne gagne rien, et IL dépense beaucoup.*  
*You say it, and do not think so,*  
*Vous le dites, et vous ne le pensez pas.*

**Rule 70.**—The personal pronouns used as the *government* of verbs, are always repeated in French, before each verb.

## EXAMPLES :

*I honour and respect him,*  
*Je l'honore et je LE respecte.*  
*That news grieves and afflicts me,*  
*Cette nouvelle m'attriste et m'afflige.*

**N.B.**—It is deemed unnecessary to say more on the repetition of personal pronouns, as in many instances, *taste* or the necessity of clearness must direct the choice.

## EXERCISE ON THE REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

He was learned although so very young. You say you abhor the wicked because you fear them ; as for me, I fear God alone. What ! you do not esteem him, and you frequent him ! I see them, but I will not speak to them. I believe and shall believe it until I have proofs to the contrary. I say and will always<sup>2</sup> say<sup>1</sup> that you were in the wrong. Grace spoils nothing ; it adds to beauty, heightens modesty, and gives it lustre. I have seen them and have spoken to them. She does and undoes it incessantly. He respects, honours, and loves her. It is taste that selects the expressions of a discourse, that combines, arranges, and varies them, so as to produce the greatest effect.

Learned,	<i>savant.</i>
Although,	<i>quoique.*</i>
So very,	<i>bien.</i>
Young,	<i>jeune.</i>
To say,	<i>dire.</i>
To abhor,	<i>détester.</i>
The wicked,	<i>les méchants.</i>
Because,	<i>parce que.</i>
To fear,	<i>craindre.</i>
As for,	<i>quant à.</i>

Alone,	<i>seul.</i>
What,	<i>quoi.</i>
To esteem,	<i>estimer.</i>
To frequent,	<i>fréquenter.</i>
To believe,	<i>croire.</i>
Until,	<i>jusqu'à ce que.*</i>
Proofs,	<i>preuves.</i>
To the contrary,	<i>du contraire.</i>
To say,	<i>dire.</i>
To be in the wrong,	<i>avoir tort.</i>

\* The conjunctions marked \* govern the subjunctive mood in French.

Grace,	<i>la bonne grâce.</i>	Taste,	<i>goût, m.</i>
To spoil,	<i>gâter.</i>	That,	<i>qui.</i>
To add,	<i>ajouter.</i>	To select,	<i>choisir.</i>
To heighten,	<i>relevé.</i>	Expressions,	<i>expressions.</i>
Modesty,	<i>modestie, f.</i>	To combine,	<i>combîner.</i>
Lustre,	<i>lustre, m.</i>	To arrange,	<i>arranger.</i>
To do,	<i>faire.</i>	To vary,	<i>varier.</i>
To undo,	<i>défaire.</i>	So as to,	<i>de manière à ce</i>
Incessantly,	<i>sans cesse.</i>		<i>qu'elles.</i>
To respect,	<i>respecter.</i>	To produce,	<i>produire.</i>
To honour,	<i>honorer.</i>	Effect,	<i>effet, m.</i>
It,	<i>ce.</i>		

## OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**Rule 71.**—The possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, and theirs*, are expressed in French by *le mien, le tien, le sien,\* &c.* (see page 46). Except:

1st.—When used with the verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, in which case *mine* is generally expressed by *à moi, thine, by à toi*, and so forth.

## EXAMPLES :

This hat *is mine*,  
*Ce chapeau est à moi, not le mien.*  
 That house *is not hers*,  
*Cette maison n'est pas à elle, not la sienne.*  
*Are these keys yours ?*  
*Ces clefs sont-elles à vous, not les vôtres ?*  
*Are not those gloves theirs ?*  
*Ces gants ne sont-ils pas à eux, not les leurs ?*

2nd.—When used with *of* after a substantive,† in which case *mine* is expressed by *MES*, *thine* by *TES*, *his, hers, its* by *SES*, and so on.

\* When *les miens, les tiens, les siens*, etc., are used in an absolute manner, that is to say, without reference to any noun antecedent, they express one's *relations, friends, tribe*, etc., as:

He takes care of his own kindred, *il a soin des SIENS.*  
 God knows his own flock, *Dieu connaît LES SIENS.*

† Should the substantive be preceded by *this, that, these or those*, we simply turn the sentence thus:

What have you done with *that seal of mine* ?  
*Qu'avez-vous fait de mon cachet*

Where have they put *those papers of hers* ?  
*Où ont-ils mis ses papiers ?*

## EXAMPLES :

A relation *of mine*,  
An aunt *of hers*,

*un de MES parents.*  
*une de SES tantes.*

OBSERVE.—*Le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.*, are used in French for *my own, thy own, his own, one's own,\* &c.*

## EXAMPLES :

He has contributed nothing of *his own*,  
*Il n'y a rien mis DU SIEN.*

Every one *his own* is fair,  
*Chacun LE SIEN n'est pas trop.*

## EXERCISE ON THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Here are my verses ; show me yours. Your action is praiseworthy, but his is not so. Your reasons are better than theirs. Your parents are rich ; hers are poor. That carriage is not hers. Is that dog yours ? Are all these lands theirs ? This is not yours. It belongs to a pupil of mine. I have just seen a friend of yours. Take care of that letter of mine. Shall you want these books of yours to-day ? That horse of yours is lame. He has no ideas of his own. They live in a house of their own. I tell you that I have seen it with my own eyes. It is your own fault. He is my own brother. He is happy only among his own tribe. Our own safety requires it.

Verses,	<i>vers, m.</i>
Praiseworthy,	<i>digne de louanges.</i>
Carriage,	<i>carrosse, m.</i>
	<i>voiture, f.</i>
Dog,	<i>chien,</i>
Pupil,	<i>élève.</i>

Lame,	<i>boiteux.</i>
Ideas,	<i>idées, f.</i>
To live,	<i>demeurer.</i>
Among,	<i>parmi.</i>
Safety,	<i>sûreté.</i>
To require,	<i>exiger.</i>

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (*see page 47*).

*Rule 72.*—The demonstrative pronoun *ce* is used in conjunction with a relative pronoun, to express the English word *what* in the sense of *that which*.

\* These are sometimes expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui*, etc., and also by the adjective *propre*, thus :

I have an estate of *my own*,  
He did it with *his own* hands,

*j'ai une terre à moi,*  
*il l'a fait de sa PROPRE main.*

Practice alone can teach these different modes of expression.

## EXAMPLES :

*What I fear is to be found out (i. e. that which),  
 Cx que je crains, \*c'est d'être découvert.*

*What you say is surprising (i. e. that which),  
 Cx que vous dites est surprenant.*

*Ce* is used for *he, she, it, they*, when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive, or *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*: as; *c'est la vérité; c'était moi; était-ce-elle?*

*Ce* or *il* may be used when *être* is followed by an adjective only: as; *c'est impossible*, or *IL est impossible*; *c'est*, or *IL est vrai*; but if anything follow the adjective, *il* alone can be used, as: *IL est impossible d'être heureux sans pratiquer la vertu; IL est vrai que je l'admire.*

**Rule 73.**—When the English personal pronouns *he, she, they*, are the antecedent of *who*, or *whom*, they are expressed in French by the demonstrative pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles*.†

## EXAMPLES :

*He who gives himself up to the pleasures of this world, is unworthy the glory of heaven,*  
 CELUI QUI s'abandonne aux plaisirs du monde n'est pas digne de la gloire du ciel.

*They who are contented with their condition are happy.*  
 CEUX QUI sont contents de leur condition sont heureux.

**Rule 74.**—When the English pronoun *it*, holds the place of *that*, the demonstrative pronoun *cela* (or *ce*, before the verbs *être, pouvoir, and devoir*), must be used in French.

\* When the verb *être*, in all such sentences is followed by a noun, or by another verb, in any tense but the participle past, *ce* is repeated. The use of *ce* before *être* is also necessary in the second member of the sentence even when it is not used in the first, as: *le seul moyen d'obliger les hommes à dire du bien de nous, c'est d'en faire.*

† When used in reference to things, *celui, celle*, etc., correspond to *the one which, that which, those which*, as: *give me a better pen; the one which I have is good for nothing, donnez-moi une meilleure plume; CELLE que j'ai ne vaut rien.*

## EXAMPLES:

Do not disturb him, you know how much *it* displeases him (i. e. *that*),

*Ne le dérangez pas, vous savez combien CELA lui déplaît.*

He works too much; *it* will injure his health (i. e. *that*),

*Il travaille trop; CELA nuira à sa santé. C'est vrai, or CELA est vrai.*

## EXERCISE ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

What displeases me in her is her vanity. What pleases me most is solitude. Education is to the mind what cleanliness is to the body. What you wish is not possible. What I know is, that they have lost. Are we to believe what you tell us? They are not always happy who seem to be so. He is contemptible who supports idleness. They who despise learning know not the value of it. Return to me the one which you have taken. Here is another pear, the one which you have is not ripe. Do not laugh so; it is not polite. You eat too much; it is not wholesome.

To displease,	<i>déplaître.</i>
In,	<i>en.</i>
Vanity,	<i>vanité, f.</i>
Most,	<i>le plus.</i>
Solitude,	<i>solitude, f.</i>
Education,	<i>éducation, f.</i>
Cleanliness,	<i>propreté, f.</i>
Body,	<i>corps, m.</i>
To wish,	<i>désirer.</i>
Possible,	<i>possible.</i>
That,	<i>que.</i>
To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>
Are we,	<i>devons-nous.</i>
To believe,	<i>croire.</i>
To tell,	<i>dire.</i>
Happy,	<i>heureux.</i>

To seem,	<i>paraître.</i>
So,	<i>le.</i>
Contemptible,	<i>méprisable.</i>
To support,	<i>encourager.</i>
Idleness,	<i> paresse, f.</i>
To despise,	<i>mépriser.</i>
Learning,	<i>science, f.</i>
Value,	<i>prix, m.</i>
To return,	<i>rendre.</i>
Pear,	<i>poire, f.</i>
Ripe,	<i>mûr.</i>
To laugh,	<i>rire.</i>
So,	<i>ainsi.</i>
Polite,	<i>poli.</i>
Wholesome,	<i>sain.</i>

## SYNTAX OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

OF *qui* WITHOUT ANTECEDENT.

**QUI**, *absolute*, that is, when there is no noun understood before, signifies *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *he who*, *she who*, applies to persons only, and is used for the masculine or feminine singular.

## EXAMPLES:

*Who* told you I was here?

*Qui vous a dit que j'étais ici?*



Whom shall I consult?

QUI consulterai-je?

Whoever will talk on every thing, often talks at random.

QUI veut parler sur tout, souvent parler au hasard.

Whose house is that?

A QUI est cette maison?

N.B.—The above examples show that *qui* absolute, may be the *subject* or *object* of the verb.

OF *que* WITHOUT ANTECEDENT.

QUE, *absolute*, means *what thing*, and therefore cannot relate to persons; it is used in interrogative sentences, as *subject* or *object* of the verb.

EXAMPLES:

What has happened?

\**qu'est-il arrivé?*

What do you say?

QUE dites-vous?

OF *quoi* WITHOUT ANTECEDENT.

QUOI, without antecedent, has the same meaning as *que*; it likewise relates to things, but unlike *que*, it always depends on a preposition.

EXAMPLES:

What is more amiable than virtue?

QUOI DE plus aimable que la vertu?

Of what does he complain?

DE QUOI se plaint-il?

*Lequel*, WITHOUT ANTECEDENT.

LEQUEL, LAQUELLE, &c. *absolute*, serve in interrogative sentences, to mark a distinction between two or more persons or things.

\* In interrogative sentences, particularly to express surprise, instead of *que*, we use *qu'est-ce qui*, when it is the subject, and *qu'est-ce que*, when the object of the verb, with this difference, that should the latter be preferred, the nominative usually precedes the verb, as: *qu'est-ce qui est arrivé?* *qu'est-ce que vous dites?*

## EXAMPLES :

*Which of your brothers is married?*  
**LEQUEL de vos frères est marié ?**

*Which of those two oranges do you wish for?*  
**LAQUELLE de ces deux oranges souhaitez-vous ?**

(As we said, p. 51, *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, are used instead of the relative *qui*, where the use of the latter might render the meaning obscure or ambiguous. Take for example this sentence : *c'est un effet de la divine Providence*, **LEQUEL attire l'attention de tout le monde**. If *lequel* was not used instead of *qui*, it would be doubtful whether the relative refers to *effet* or to *Providence*, it being of both genders, whereas *lequel* being masculine can only refer to *effet*.)

---

or *où, d'où, par où, &c.*

These pronouns signify *where, in which, by or through which*, and are never applied to persons.

## EXAMPLES :

There is the road *through which* we passed,  
*Voilà le chemin* **PAR OÙ** (OR **PAR LEQUEL**) *nous avons passé.*

The age *in which* we live,  
*Le siècle* **OÙ** (OR **DANS LEQUEL**) *nous vivons,*

That is the end he aims at,  
*Voilà le but* **OÙ** (OR **AUQUEL**) *il tend.*

## EXERCISE ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Who is come? Who wants some of it? Who will dare do it? Whom do you love best? Whom do they expect? Whom has he named? Of whom do you speak? For whom does he work? With whom do they live? Whose children are these? Whose key is this? What is due to you? What remains to him? What do you look for? What do they fear? Of what does he accuse you? In what have I offended you? - To what do you impute the fault? Which of these two colours do you prefer? To which of thy friends ought I to give the preference? This is the door through which he passed. Name the town in which he was born.

To want,	<i>avoir besoin.</i>
To dare,	<i>oser.</i>
To expect,	<i>attendre.</i>
To name,	<i>nommer.</i>
To work,	<i>travailler.</i>

To live,	<i>demeurer.</i>
Key,	<i>clef, f.</i>
Due,	<i>dû.</i>
To remain,	<i>rester.</i>
To look for,	<i>chercher.</i>

To fear,	<i>craindre.</i>
To accuse,	<i>accuser.</i>
To offend,	<i>offenser.</i>
To impute,	<i>imputer.</i>
Fault,	<i>faute, f.</i>
Colours,	<i>couleurs, f.</i>

To prefer,	<i>préférer.</i>
Ought,	<i>devoir.</i>
Preference,	<i>préférence, f.</i>
Door,	<i>porte, f.</i>
To pass,	<i>passer.</i>
Be born,	<i>naître.</i>

## SYNTAX OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The *indefinite* pronouns, as we have already said, are *on*, *quiconque*, *quelqu'un*, *chacun*, *autrui*, *personne*, *l'un*, *l'autre*, *l'un et l'autre*, *tel*.

### OBSERVATIONS ON THE ABOVE PRONOUNS.

#### *Of ON.*

*ON* ; this pronoun is used in French when speaking in general terms, as,

One says,	} <i>ON dit.</i>
They say,	
People say,	
It is said,	

And it always governs the verb in the third person singular.

#### EXAMPLES :

<i>They say</i> he is ill,	<i>ON dit qu'il est malade.</i>
<i>People talk</i> of war,	<i>ON parle de guerre.</i>

For the sake of euphony, *l'on* is used instead of *on* after the words *et*, *si*, *ou*, except when *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, *leur*, follow *on*, as in the following sentence :

<i>If they</i> are left alone,	<i>si on les laisse seuls.</i>
--------------------------------	--------------------------------

Because *si l'on les*, is a cacophony more disagreeable to the ear than the hiatus *si on les*.

#### OF QUICONQUE.

*QUICONQUE* signifies *qui que ce soit*, *every one who*, and therefore has no plural, and relates to *persons* only.

## OF QUELQU'UN.

QUELQU'UN takes the gender and number, thus :

*Quelqu'un*, m.  
*Quelqu'une*, f.

*Quelques uns*, m.  
*Quelques unes*, f.

## OF CHACUN.

CHACUN makes in the feminine *chacune*. Though always singular, when preceded by a noun plural, it sometimes requires *son*, *sa*, *ses*, and sometimes *leur*, *leurs*, *eux*, *elles* almost invariably according as the singular or plural is used in English after *each*, in the same sense.

## EXAMPLES :

Go to my library and put these books *each* into *its* place,  
*Allez dans ma bibliothèque et remettez ces livres, CHACUN à sa place.*

After the ceremony, they went back *each* to *their* own home,  
*Après la cérémonie, ils s'en allèrent CHACUN chez eux.*

They gave their opinion, *each* according to *his* own views.  
*Ils ont donné leur avis, CHACUN selon ses vues.*

## OF AUTRUI.

*Autrui*, which means *autres hommes, le prochain*, is of both genders and numbers ; it is generally attended by a preposition.

## EXAMPLES :

He depends *on others*.  
*Il dépend d'AUTRUI.*

Do not do *unto others* that which you would not like to be done *unto*  
*you.*  
*Ne faites pas à AUTRUI ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fît.*

## OF PERSONNE.

PERSONNE as an indefinite pronoun, is always masculine singular, and means : *nul homme, nulle femme,\* qui que ce soit*. In this sense it is accompanied by *ne* which is placed after, when *personne* precedes the verb, and before when it does not.

\* *Nemo* in Latin.

## EXAMPLES :

No one is so happy as you,  
PERSONNE n'est si heureux que vous.

Pride becomes nobody,  
La fierté ne convient à PERSONNE.

In answer to a question, *personne* is sometimes used alone in an elliptical manner: *est-il venu quelqu'un ici ?* *Personne*; that is—*il n'est venu personne*.

*Personne* is also sometimes used in the sense of *quelqu'un*, chiefly in sentences expressing doubt, or that are interrogative; it then takes no negative.

## EXAMPLES :

Did *any one* ever doubt it?  
PERSONNE en a-t-il jamais douté ?  
I doubt there is *any one* bold enough to do it,  
Je doute qu'il y ait PERSONNE d'assez hardi pour le faire.

## OF L'UN L'AUTRE, L'UN ET L'AUTRE.

L'UN L'AUTRE, L'UN ET L'AUTRE, apply to persons and things, and take both genders and numbers. They are thus declined :

Masc. sing.	Masc. plur.
One another, <i>l'un l'autre</i> .	<i>les uns les autres</i> .
Of one another, <i>l'un de l'autre</i> .	<i>les uns des autres</i> .
To one another <i>l'un à l'autre</i> .	<i>les uns aux autres</i> .
Fem. sing.	Fem. plur.
One another, <i>l'une l'autre</i> .	<i>les unes les autres</i> .
Of one another, <i>l'une de l'autre</i> .	<i>les unes des autres</i> .
To one another, <i>l'une à l'autre</i> .	<i>les unes aux autres</i> .
They hate one another,	<i>ils se haïssent les uns les autres</i> .
They speak ill of one another,	<i>ils médisent l'un de l'autre</i> .

## L'UN ET L'AUTRE.

Masc. sing.	Masc. plur.
Both, <i>l'un et l'autre</i> .	<i>les uns et les autres</i> .
Of both, <i>de l'une et de l'autre</i> .	<i>des uns et des autres</i> .
To both, <i>à l'un et à l'autre</i> .	<i>aux uns et aux autres</i> .

Fem. sing.

Both, *l'une et l'autre*.  
 Of both, *de l'une et de l'autre*.  
 To both, *à l'une et à l'autre*.

Fem. plur.

*les unes et les autres*.  
*des unes et des autres*.  
*aux unes et aux autres*.

This pronoun takes the verb in the plural.

Both are new,

*l'un et l'autre SONT neufs.*

## OF TEL.

TEL is sometimes used instead of the substantive *homme* or *femme*, or instead of *celui*, *celle*; in this sense it has no plural; it is used also in speaking of persons in an indeterminate manner.

## EXAMPLES:

*Such a man* is rich to-day, who may be poor to-morrow,  
 TEL *est riche aujourd'hui qui peut être pauvre demain*.  
*Monsieur un tel; Madame une telle*.

## EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

People imagine that when they are rich they are happy; but they are mistaken very often; for the more one has, the more one wishes to have. They talk of war. Tell me what they say in England of the French<sup>2</sup> revolution<sup>1</sup>? Whoever told you so is right. Whoever is rich is everything; whoever is poor is nothing. Some of his friends are come. I will show you some of my books. I have seen somebody in the parlour. Every one of them shall be punished. They have each a good place. Do not take others goods.\* Bear the imperfections of others without vexation. I know nobody so obliging as you. Nobody becomes vicious or virtuous on a sudden. Fire and water destroy one another. It is rare to hear two authors speak well of one another. The seasons follow one another without interruption. Both are wrong. We will do justice to both.

Imagine, *s'imaginer*.  
 Rich, *riche*.  
 Are mistaken, *se tromper*.  
 For, *car*.  
 The more, *plus*.  
 Wishes, *veut*.  
 War, *guerre, f.*  
 To tell, *dire*.  
 What, *ce qu'*.  
 England, *Angleterre*.

Told you so, *vous l'a dit*.  
 Is right, *a raison*.  
 Every thing, *sout*.  
 Poor, *pauvre*.  
 Is nothing, *n'est rien*.  
 Parlour, *salle, f.*  
 Place, *place, f.*  
 To take, *prendre*.  
 Goods, *le bien*.  
 To bear, *souffrir*.

\* The goods of others.

Without,	<i>sans.</i>	To hear,	<i>d'entendre.</i>
Vexation,	<i>vous troubler.</i>	Authors, m.	<i>auteurs, m.</i>
I know,	<i>je ne connais.</i>	Speak well,	<i>dire du bien.</i>
Obliging,	<i>obligeant.</i>	Seasons,	<i>saisons, f.</i>
As,	<i>que.</i>	Follow,	<i>se suivent.</i>
Becomes,	<i>ne devient.</i>	Without,	<i>sans.</i>
Vicious,	<i>vicieux.</i>	Interruption,	<i>interruption.</i>
Or virtuous,	<i>ou vertueux.</i>	Are wrong,	<i>ont tort.</i>
On a sudden,	<i>tout-à-coup.</i>	We will do,	<i>nous rendrons.</i>
Destroy,	<i>se détruisent.</i>	Justice,	<i>justice.</i>
Rare,	<i>rare.</i>		

## CHAPTER V.

## SYNTAX OF VERBS.

## OF THE SUBJECT, OR NOMINATIVE OF VERBS.

**Rule 75.**—When a verb relates to two or more nominatives of different persons, it is put in the plural and agrees with the first in preference to the second, and with the second rather than with the third; in such a case the verb is usually preceded by the resuming pronouns *nous*, or *vous*,\* according to the priority to be observed in the order just given.

## EXAMPLES:

Your brother and I *are* satisfied with our fate,  
*Votre frère et moi NOUS SOMMES contents de notre sort.*

You or he *will* go to the country,  
*Vous ou lui VOUS IREZ à la campagne.*

**OBSERVE.**—When a verb has for its nominative two or more *pronouns* of different persons, joined by the conjunction *ni*, the verb agrees as in the preceding rule, but, in this case, the resuming pronouns *nous* and *vous* cannot be used: as, *Ni moi ni votre frère ne SOMMES contents de notre sort. Ni vous ni lui n'IREZ à la campagne.*

\* They cannot be used, however, if the verb be preceded by *qui*, as: *c'est vous ou lui qui irez à la campagne.*

## EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULE.

You and your sister will go on horseback, your father and I will walk. You or he will wait. He and I have each a different<sup>2</sup> opinion.<sup>1</sup> You, she, and her children will be invited. You and he know the affair. You, he, and I were<sup>2</sup> there.<sup>1</sup> He, she or I shall have it. It is you or he who has done it. He and his friend were present. He and they have seen them. Neither you nor he will make me believe such a thing. Neither he nor I knew it.

To go,	<i>aller.</i>	Affair,	<i>chosc.</i>
On horseback,	<i>à cheval.</i>	There,	<i>y.</i>
To walk,	<i>aller à pied.*</i>	It is,	<i>c'est.</i>
To wait,	<i>attendre.</i>	Present,	<i>présents.</i>
Each,	<i>chacun.</i>	To see,	<i>voir.</i>
Opinion,	<i>opinion, f.</i>	Neither,	<i>ni.</i>
Different,	<i>différent.</i>	Nor,	<i>ni.</i>
To invite,	<i>inviter.</i>	To believe,	<i>croire.</i>
To know,	<i>savoir.</i>	Such a thing,	<i>une chose semblable.</i>

## OF THE OBJECT, OR GOVERNMENT, OF VERBS.

**Rule 76.**—Some *active verbs* may have two objects, or governments, one *direct*, the other *indirect*.

## EXAMPLES:

He has made a present to his son,  
*Il a fait un présent à son fils.†*  
 Every body accuses that man of a crime,  
*Tout le monde accuse cet homme d'un crime.*

Accordingly, a verb cannot govern two *accusatives*, two *genitives*, nor two *datives*; we must therefore say:

It is of you that I speak,  
*C'est de vous que (not dont) je parle.*  
 It is to him that I shall give it,  
*C'est à lui que (not à qui) je le donnerai.*  
 Does he inquire what I do,  
*S'informe-t-il de ce que (not ce que) je fais.*

\* To walk used in contradistinction to *riding*, is expressed by *aller à pied*, and to walk in the sense of taking an airing, by *se promener* or *faire une promenade*.

† *Un présent* is the direct, and *à son fils* the indirect government of *fait*; *cet homme* the direct, and *d'un crime* the indirect one of *accuse*.



**Rule 77.**—When two verbs do not govern the same case, each has its distinct object :

EXAMPLES :

We must love and obey our parents,  
*Il faut aimer ses parents et LEUR obéir.*

It would be incorrect to say : *Il faut aimer et obéir ses parents*, because as *obéir* governs the dative case, and *aimer* the accusative, we cannot say, *obéir ses parents* as we say, *aimer ses parents*.\*

**Rule 78.**—*Passive verbs* have for their object a noun or pronoun preceded by *de* or *par*, that is, an *indirect government* ;

EXAMPLES :

A good child is loved *by* everybody,  
*Un enfant sage est aimé DE tout le monde.*

An ignorant and proud youth is despised *by* all who know him,  
*Un jeune homme ignorant et orgueilleux est méprisé DE tous ceux qui le connaissent.*

He was arrested by the patrol,  
*Il fut arrêté PAR la patrouille.*

**Rule 79.**—Some *neuter verbs* have not any object, such are *dormir*, *languir*, but many of them have an *indirect government* expressed by various prepositions.

EXAMPLES :

Such excesses are hurtful *to* health,  
*De tels excès nuisent À la santé.*

She enjoys good health,  
*Elle jouit D'une bonne santé.*

He reigns *over* a brave people,  
*Il règne SUR une nation brave.*

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULES ON THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

A wise<sup>s</sup> man<sup>l</sup> prefers science to riches. I will tell them to come. I admire Shakspeare's genius. The master forgives him his fault.

This remark applies to adjectives and prepositions, thus do not say : *je fus très-sensible et très-mécontent de ce procédé*, for *sensible* governs *à* but *content* governs *de* ; nor *il a parlé en même temps contre et en faveur du projet*, for *contre* and *en faveur* do not govern the same case, it should be, *je fus très sensible à ce procédé, et j'en fus très mécontent ; il a parlé en même temps contre le projet et en sa faveur.*

Take this letter to your father. It is from you that he expects that favour. It is to them that I address this request. Do not be uneasy about what will become of them. The general attacked the town and took it. I found this pencil and used it. He is esteemed by all men of probity. She is beloved by all her relations. He was killed by highwaymen. Gaul was conquered by Cæsar. I forgive my enemies. Let us slander nobody. Do not walk upon that.

To prefer,	<i>préférer.</i>	To attack,	<i>attaquer.</i>
Riches,	<i>richesses, f.</i>	Pencil,	<i>crayon, m.</i>
To tell,	<i>dire.</i>	To use anything,	<i>se servir de quelque chose.</i>
To admire,	<i>aimer.</i>	Esteemed,	<i>estimé.</i>
Genius,	<i>génie, m.</i>	Probity,	<i>probité, f.</i>
Master,	<i>maître.</i>	Relations,	<i>parents.</i>
To forgive,	<i>pardonner.</i>	Killed,	<i>tué.</i>
Fault,	<i>faute, f.</i>	Highwaymen,	<i>voleurs de grand chemin.</i>
To take,	<i>porter.</i>	Gauls,	<i>Gaulles, f.</i>
To expect,	<i>attendre.</i>	Conquered,	<i>conquis.</i>
Favour,	<i>grâce, faveur, f.</i>	Cæsar,	<i>César.</i>
To address,	<i>adresser.</i>	To forgive,	<i>pardonner.</i>
Request,	<i>demande, f.</i>	Enemies,	<i>ennemis.</i>
Uneasy about,	<i>inquiète de.</i>	To slander,	<i>médire de.</i>
Will become of them,	<i>ils deviendront.</i>		

---

ON THE DIFFERENT PREPOSITIONS WHICH VERBS GOVERN.

REMARK.—There is nothing more perplexing to the student than to know what preposition to place after French verbs; with a view to lessen this difficulty, we had given in our former editions, lists of *verbs* with their accompanying prepositions, in various cases, and which had been gathered together by preceding grammarians; not being able to notice the various forms of expression in which many a French verb requires different prepositions, without leading the students into a wider field than we deem judicious to make them enter, and feeling, moreover, convinced that the greatest part of them can only be learnt by practice, those lists have been suppressed.

---

# OF THE USE OF TENSES, SIMPLE AND COMPOUND.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### PRESENT.

*Rule 80.*—This tense is used to denote an *actual state*.

#### EXAMPLES :

I study, *j'étudie.*  
God is almighty, *Dieu est tout-puissant.*

And when speaking of actions which are to be done in a very short time, it is generally used instead of the future ;

#### EXAMPLES :

We *shall go* this evening to the concert,  
*NOUS ALLONS ce soir au concert.*

I *set off* to-morrow for France.  
*Je PARS demain pour la France.*

**OBSERVE.**—This tense is often used in French as well as in English, instead of the preterit, in the recital of an event. The *present* renders the event, in some degree visible to the hearers or readers, and enhances the interest it may inspire.

#### EXERCISE ON THE PRESENT.

I read the history of the French<sup>2</sup> revolution.<sup>1</sup> We often<sup>2</sup> dine<sup>1</sup> together. The three angles of a triangle are equal to two right<sup>2</sup> angles<sup>1</sup>. Philosophy easily<sup>2</sup> triumphs<sup>1</sup> over past and future evils, but present<sup>2</sup> evils<sup>1</sup> triumph over it. Idle people have always a mind to do something. I shall go to Kensington this afternoon. You will return to-morrow, will you not? Have patience, I shall be back presently. Shall you finish soon? Make haste, I shall wait for you down stairs.

To dine,	<i>diner.</i>
Together,	<i>ensemble.</i>
Angles,	<i>angles, m.</i>
Triangle,	<i>triangle.</i>
Equal,	<i>égal, m.</i>
Right,	<i>droit, m.</i>
To triumph over,	<i>triompher de.</i>
Past,	<i>passé, m.</i>
Future,	<i>futur, m.</i>
Over it,	<i>d'elle.</i>
Idle people,	<i>les paresseux</i>

To have a mind,	<i>avoir envie de.</i>
Some thing,	<i>quelque chose.</i>
Afternoon,	<i>après-midi, f.</i>
To return,	<i>revenir.</i>
Will you not,	<i>n'est-ce pas.</i>
Have patience,	<i>se vous impatientez pas.</i>
To be back,	<i>revenir,</i>
Presently,	<i>d l'instant.</i>
To make haste,	<i>se dépêcher.</i>
To wait for,	<i>attendre.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

**Rule 81.**—The imperfect is used to express any circumstance which happened to take place at the same time that another action occurred ; in other words, it denotes that an action was not finished at a certain time, or that it is subordinate :—

## EXAMPLES :

*I was passing* when the fire broke out,  
*Je PASSAIS quand l'incendie éclata.*

*He was speaking* when we entered the room,  
*Il PARLAIT quand nous entrâmes dans la chambre.*

**Rule 82.**—The imperfect is employed every time we wish to speak of actions that were habitually or frequently performed ;

## EXAMPLES :

When I was in Paris, I often *visited* the Louvre,  
*Quand j'étais à Paris, j'ALLAIS souvent au Louvre.*

How *did* you spend your time in the country? I *went* a fishing and shooting.

*Comment PASSIEZ-vous le temps à la campagne? J'ALLAIS à la chasse et à la pêche.*

**Rule 83.**—The imperfect is used in speaking of the character, or of some distinctive *qualities* of persons or things that are no longer existing ;\*

## EXAMPLES :

Alfred *was* a great king ; he *loved* his people,  
*Alfred ÉTAIT un grand roi ; il AIMAIT son peuple.*

His father *was* an honest man,  
*Son père ÉTAIT honnête homme.*

**Rule 84.**—The imperfect preceded by *si* is used in French in relation to the present time ;

*If I had* money, I would lend you some,  
*Si j'AVAIS de l'argent, je vous en prêteraïs.*

*If you knew* him you would like him,  
*Si vous le CONNAISSIEZ, vous l'aimeriez.*

---

\* When a particular time is mentioned, the imperfect is also used in speaking of persons that are still living, as : *sa sœur ÉTAIT très belle avant sa maladie.*

NOTE.—The imperfect is always used in French when the participle present of a verb is or can be used with *was* or *were* in English, instead of the perfect: as, While they read, . . . *that is*, while they were reading, *tandis qu'ils lisaient*.

## EXERCISE ON THE IMPERFECT.

I was going out as he came in. He was learning his lesson when you arrived. When my father travelled I always accompanied him. We were not thinking of him when we received his letter. His father was rich, but he had a numerous family. You looked serious at the ball. Her husband was a handsome man. Napoleon was too fond of war. She was short, but her children were all tall. He was a German. Mirabeau was the most eloquent man of his day. If I knew his intentions, I would fulfil them. He would be richer, if he paid more attention to his business.

To go out,	<i>sortir.</i>	Napoleon,	<i>Napoléon.</i>
Lesson,	<i>leçon, f.</i>	To be too fond of,	<i>aimer trop.</i>
To arrive,	<i>arriver.</i>	War,	<i>guerre, f.</i>
To travel,	<i>voyager.</i>	Short,	<i>petit, m.</i>
To accompany,	<i>accompagner.</i>	Tall,	<i>grand, m.</i>
To think of,	<i>penser à.</i>	German,	<i>Allemand.</i>
Rich,	<i>riche.</i>	Eloquent,	<i>éloquent, m.</i>
Numerous,	<i>nombreux, m.</i>	Day,	<i>temps, m.</i>
Family,	<i>famille, f.</i>	To know,	<i>connaître.</i>
To look serious,	<i>avoir l'air triste.</i>	Intentions,	<i>intentions, f.</i>
Ball,	<i>bal, m.</i>	To fulfil,	<i>remplir.</i>
Husband,	<i>mari or époux.</i>	To pay more atten-	<i>faire plus d'atten-</i>
Handsome,	<i>beau, (bel before a</i> <i>vowel or h mute.)</i>	tion,	<i>tion.</i>
		Business,	<i>affaires, f.</i>

## PRETERIT.

Rule 85.—The preterit definite is used in French in the historical style, and expresses actions of short duration, that are completely over, and which took place within a period of time specified by an adverb or some circumstance in the sentence; such as *hier, la semaine dernière, il y a six mois*, etc.

## EXAMPLES :

I took a journey to Scotland last year,  
*Je FIS un voyage en Ecosse l'année dernière.*

I met him three months ago,  
*Je le RENCONTRAI il y a trois mois.*

He appeared astonished to see me.  
*Il PARUT étonné de me voir.*

**OBSERVE.**—In mentioning a circumstance that took place in a period of time not elapsed, the *preterit indefinite* should be used instead of the definite; as, *j'AI ÉTÉ en Ecosse cette année; je l'AI RENCONTRÉ cette semaine*. In familiar conversation, especially when we speak of common events, in the general occurrences of life, these two tenses may be indifferently used, though the time be specified: as, *je DÎNAI*, or *j'AI DÎNÉ hier avec votre oncle; je vous vis l'autre jour, or je vous ai vu l'autre jour*.

#### EXERCISE ON THE PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I called at your house last<sup>s</sup> week<sup>l</sup>. I met him in Paris two years ago. He wrote to them twice since. I saw him one day in the park, but I did not speak to him. He lost his portmanteau at Cologne. I found a letter from him there. We dined together on that day. Did he sell his house before he left England? Both his children died in the same year. Napoleon died in eighteen hundred and twenty-one. We preserved those flowers a long time.

To call at your *passer chez vous*.  
house,  
Two years ago, *il y a deux ans*.  
Twice since, *deux fois depuis*.  
To lose, *perdre*.  
Portmanteau, *porte-manteau, m*.  
Cologne, *Cologne*.  
To find, *Trouver*.

On that day, *ce jour-là*.  
Before, *avant de*.  
To leave, *quitter*.  
England, *Angleterre*.  
Both his, *ses deux*.  
To preserve, *conserver*.  
A long time, *long-temps*.

#### FUTURE.

**Rule 86.**—This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come.

#### EXAMPLES:

I shall do it soon, *je le FERAI bientôt*.  
We will return all together, *nous REVIENDRONS tous ensemble*,

**Rule 87.**—When the action expressed by a verb is to be done instantly, we always use *aller* with the infinitive of that verb, instead of its future.

#### EXAMPLES:

I will show you his letter, (*immediately*)  
*Je VAIS vous montrer sa lettre*.

We *will* begin if you please,  
*Nous ALLONS commencer s'il vous plait.*

I *was* going to set out,  
*J'ALLAIS partir.*

**Rule 88.**—When we wish to express that we intend to do a thing, that it is probable we shall do it, we make use of *devoir*, with the following verb in the infinitive.

EXAMPLES :

The king *is* to return to-morrow,  
*Le roi DOIT revenir demain.*

I *was* to see him on my arrival,  
*Je DEVAIS le voir à mon arrivée.*

**N.B.**—The present tense is frequently used in English for the *future*, after *when*, *as soon as*, *do as*, *it will be as*; this cannot be done in French; in all such cases the future is required; thus we say:

When he <i>likes</i> ,	<i>quand il VOUDRA.</i>
As soon as you have <i>done</i> ,	<i>aussitôt que vous AUREZ fini.</i>
Do with it as you <i>please</i> ,	<i>faites-en ce que vous VOUDREZ,</i>
It will be as you <i>like</i> ,	<i>ce sera comme bon vous SEMBLERA.</i>

EXERCISE ON THE FUTURE.

Where is your son? in the next<sup>2</sup> room.<sup>1</sup> I will go and fetch him. You are late, you shall be scolded. Sit down a minute; I will give you an answer to this note. It is going to rain; let us make haste. I am to go there with him. Who is to accompany her? We were to set off after breakfast. When you have read the first volume, I will lend you the second and third. As soon as she is recovered, they will go to the country. Shall I shut the door? As you please, I will go when I can.

Next,	<i>d'à côté.</i>	To accompany,	<i>accompagner.</i>
To go and fetch,	<i>aller chercher.</i>	To set off,	<i>partir.</i>
To be late,	<i>être en retard.</i>	To read,	<i>lire.</i>
To scold,	<i>gronder.</i>	Volume,	<i>volume, m.</i>
To sit down,	<i>s'asseoir.</i>	Recovered,	<i>rétabli, m.</i>
Answer,	<i>réponse, f.</i>	Country,	<i>campagne, f.</i>
Note,	<i>billet, m.</i>	Shall I,*	<i>voulez-vous que.</i>
To make haste,	<i>se dépêcher.</i>	Can,	<i>pouvoir.</i>

\* *Shall I*, used in English in proposing a thing, in asking leave to do it, must be turned in French by *voulez-vous que* with the *subjunctive* mood.

## CONDITIONAL.

**Rule 89.**—This tense is used to signify that a thing would be done, if certain conditions were granted.

## EXAMPLES :

I *would* do it if I could,  
*Je le ferais si je le pouvais.*

If he asked for this favour, they *would* grant it to him,  
*S'il demandait cette grâce, on la lui accorderait.*

**Rule 90.**—The conditional is used in French to express a wish, necessity, or obligation.

## EXAMPLES :

I *wish* it may be fair weather to-morrow,  
*Je désirerais qu'il fit beau demain.*

You *should* do that again,  
*Vous devriez refaire cela.*

He *ought* to pay that for you,\*  
*Il devrait payer cela pour vous.*

**Rule 91.**—The conditional is employed in French after *quand* instead of *si*, *quoique*, *lors même*, *quand même*.

## EXAMPLES :

Were history *to be* useless to all other men, it would be necessary to read it to princes.

QUAND l'histoire SERAIT inutile aux autres hommes, il faudrait la lire aux princes.

Even were you to beat him, he would not amend,  
 QUAND vous le BATTRIEZ, il ne se corrigerait pas.

**OBSERVE.**—Neither the *conditional* nor the *future* can be used in French after *si*,† when it means *supposed that*; thus we say, with the *imperfect* :

\* *Should* or *ought* joined to a compound tense is rendered in the following manner in French :

I *should have* or *ought to have* returned sooner,      J'AURAIS DÙ revenir plutôt.  
 You *should* or *ought* to have told them of it,      vous AURIEZ DÙ le leur dire.

† It is only when expressing a state of *doubt* or *uncertainty*, that *si* can be used with a conditional, as :

Ask him if he would come in case . . .  
 Demandez-lui s'il VIENDRAIT dans le cas où . . .

I *should* like to know if he would have come,  
 Je voudrais bien savoir s'il SERAIT venu.



If you *should come*, do not forget your music,  
 Si vous VENIEZ, n'oubliez pas votre musique.  
 If they *should arrive*, you will send for me,  
 S'ils ARRIVAIENT, vous m'enverriez chercher.

## EXERCISE ON THE CONDITIONAL.

Would you do me a piece of kindness. How happy\* we should be to please them. Could you lend him some money? I had told you to ask them if they would come with us. I would go with you, if you would wait. You would go out if I should require it. I do not know if he would approve of it. If any one should ask for me, say that I am gone out for the day. If he should not succeed, what will he do?

To do a piece of kindness, *faire un plaisir.*

Them, *leur.*  
 Can, *pouvoir.*  
 To lend, *prêter.*  
 To tell, *dire.*  
 Them, *leur.*  
 To wait, *attendre.*

To require, *exiger.*  
 To know, *savoir.*  
 To approve of, *approuver.*  
 Any one, *on.*  
 To ask for, *demande.*  
 To say, *dire.*  
 Day, *journée, l.*  
 To succeed, *réussir.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

**Rule 92.**—This tense is generally employed in French when we simply express a thing as having taken place, without specifying when.

He *has travelled* much,  
 Il a beaucoup VOYAGÉ.

I *saw* that ceremony twice,  
 J'ai vu cette cérémonie deux fois.

**Rule 93.**—The preterit indefinite is also used in French when speaking of something that has happened at a time which is not absolutely past.†

\* Turn how we should be happy.

† To express an action recently passed, we generally make use of *venir* with *de*, as:

I have just seen him, *je VIENS DE le voir.*  
 The king is just arrived, *le roi VIENT D'arriver.*

Or the verb *faire* preceded by *ne*, and followed by *que de*, as:

He is *bus* just arrived, *il NE FAIT QUE D'arriver.*  
 I had *bus* just gone out, *je NE FESAIS QUE DE sortir.*

**OBSERVE.**—*De* is here indispensable, because without it, the expression would have quite a different meaning; for example: *vous ne faites que sortir*, means, you do nothing but go out.

## EXAMPLES :

*I went this year to Paris,*  
*Je suis allé à Paris cette année.*  
*I called at his house three times this week,*  
*J'ai passé chez lui trois fois cette semaine.*

## EXERCISE ON THE PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

We met in Russia. I breakfasted this morning at his house. She died this week. I did it without help. He promised to mend it. He lost a great deal this month. Repeat what he told you. Here is the parcel I received this morning. I am glad that they made it up. You punished him justly. He pleased us by his modest<sup>2</sup> deportment.<sup>1</sup> I have just done. He has but just begun.

To meet,	<i>se rencontrer.</i>	Month,	<i>mois-ci, m.</i>
Russia,	<i>Russie.</i>	To repeat,	<i>répéter.</i>
To breakfast,	<i>déjeuner.</i>	Parcel,	<i>paquet, m.</i>
At his house,	<i>chez lui.</i>	Glad,	<i>bien-aise.</i>
Help,	<i>assistance.</i>	To make it up,	<i>se réconcilier.</i>
To promise,	<i>promettre.</i>	Justly,	<i>avec justice.</i>
To mend,	<i>racommoder.</i>	Modest,	<i>modeste.</i>
To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>	Deportment,	<i>maintien, m.</i>
A great deal,	<i>beaucoup.</i>	Done,	<i>finir.</i>

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*Rule 94.*—This tense corresponds to the English, but it is necessary to observe that we cannot make use of the preterit indefinite instead, as it is sometimes done in English.

## EXAMPLES:

When you *have* done, come and speak to me,  
*Quand vous AUREZ fini, venez me parler.*  
 When you *have* written that, you may go,  
*Quand vous AUREZ écrit cela, vous pourrez vous en aller.*

## ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN FRENCH.

*Rule 95.*—The use of the subjunctive presents, in French, great difficulties; it seems, however, clear that it generally indicates the expression of a *will* in the antecedent proposition,—upon this principle all verbs of a

principal proposition,\* expressing *entreaty, wish, desire*, the action of *commanding*, and in general, any emotion of the heart,† when united by the conjunction *que* to the subordinate proposition, require the verb following *que* to be in the subjunctive mood.‡

## EXAMPLES :

I wish him *to go* there,  
*Je veux qu'il y aille.*

I require that you *should obey* him,  
*J'exige que vous lui obéissiez.*

I am delighted that *he is come*,  
*Je suis charmé qu'il soit venu.*

**Rule 96.**—As verbs of a principal proposition used *interrogatively* or *negatively*, generally imply *doubt, fear, command*; they also require the subjunctive after the conjunction.

## EXAMPLES :

Do you think that he *will soon set out*?  
*Pensez-vous qu'il parte bientôt?*

I am not sure that he *will do it*,  
*Je ne suis pas sûr qu'il le fasse.*

**Rule 97.**—Unipersonal verbs govern the subjunctive, except, as with other verbs in general, when they do not denote a *will, a necessity*.

## EXAMPLES :

It is possible that you *may obtain it*,  
*Il est possible que vous l'obteniez.*

\* In sentences of two parts, united by a conjunction, the first part is called the *principal proposition*, and the second, the *subordinate*; in this sentence, *je veux que vous lisiez*, *je veux* is the *principal*, *vous lisiez* the *subordinate* proposition, *que* is the conjunction which unites them.

† Such as those produced by *joy, sadness, satisfaction, discontent, or surprise*; the verb *to hope* is excepted.

‡ When the *interrogation* or *negation* is merely a form of expression used to affirm, deny, or communicate any thing with more energy, we use the indicative after the conjunction, because then there is no doubt expressed, thus, we say: *oubliez-vous que vous êtes son fils? ne savez-vous pas que le roi va à l'opéra ce soir.* The same thing must be observed for many sentences of the same kind, where the sense which we wish to express must naturally direct us in the use of the *indicative* or the *subjunctive*.

It is time that *I should see him*,  
*Il est temps que je le voie.*

**OBSERVE.**—The verbs *empêcher, craindre, appréhender avoir peur*, being followed by *que* govern the subjunctive, and *ne* before it, if the verb be *affirmative*; when *negative* or *interrogative*, *ne* is suppressed. Thus we say: *je crains qu'il NE VIENNE*,\* and *je NE crains pas qu'il VIENNE*.

**EXERCISE ON THE THREE PRECEDING RULES.**

We are sorry that they are come. I approve he should forbid it to him. Let us suppose that the fleet be beaten. I shall not suffer you to do so. They do not say that it is so. It does not seem that you know him. Do you think that it will ever happen? It is doubtful whether he will bring it about. You must write now. It is possible that you may obtain it. There is no possibility for me to go there. I fear lest he should see it. I am afraid you will lose them. I do not fear that he will refuse. I wish you may succeed in your undertaking. I did not know that you had embraced that profession. I should have wished that he had acted in the same manner.

Sorry,	<i>fâché, m.</i>
To approve,	<i>approuver.</i>
To forbid,	<i>défendre.</i>
To suppose,	<i>supposer.</i>
Fleet,	<i>flotte, f.</i>
To beat,	<i>battre.</i>
To suffer,	<i>souffrir.</i>
To say,	<i>dire.</i>
So,	<i>ainsi.</i>
To seem,	<i>sembler.</i>
To think,	<i>croire.</i>
To happen,	<i>arriver.</i>
Doubtful,	<i>douteux.</i>
To bring it about,	<i>en venir à bout.</i>

You must,	<i>il faut.</i>
To obtain,	<i>obtenir.</i>
For me,	<i>que je.</i>
There,	<i>y.</i>
Lest,	<i>que.</i>
To be afraid,	<i>avoir peur.</i>
To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>
To refuse,	<i>refuser.</i>
To succeed,	<i>réussir.</i>
Undertaking,	<i>entreprise, f.</i>
To embrace,	<i>embrasser.</i>
In,	<i>de.</i>
Same,	<i>même.</i>
Manner,	<i>manière, f.</i>

**Rule 98.**—*Qui, que, où, dont*, serving to connect a verb with a noun in the superlative, govern the subjunctive mood in French.

**EXAMPLES :**

They are the finest goods *that have been sent*,  
*Ce sont les plus belles marchandises QUI AIENT été envoyées.*

---

\* As a positive idea, *the fear of his coming*, is expressed in this sentence, it seems that *ne* might be suppressed. This word however is used here, not as a *negative* but as a *dubitative* expression borrowed from the Latin language (*timeo ne veniat*). *Douter, désespérer, nier* or *disconvenir* (to deny) when used negatively, require *ne* after the conjunction *que*, as : *je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne*.

He is the most learned man I know,  
*C'est l'homme le plus savant QUE JE CONNAISSE.*

**Rule 99.**—*Qui, que, où, dont*, generally govern the subjunctive after the words *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier*, and words which have a negative import, as *pas un, aucun, personne, rien, peu, guère, qui que ce soit*.

EXAMPLES :

He is the *only* friend that *has* remained faithful to you,  
*C'est le SEUL ami qui vous SOIT resté fidèle.*

Is there *anything* which *renders* men more happy than virtue?  
*Y a-t-il RIEN qui RENDE les hommes plus heureux que la vertu?*

**Rule 100.**—The subjunctive is required after the following words :

*Quelque, quel que, qui que, qui que ce soit qui, quoi que, quoi que ce soit que, à quoi que, de quoi que.*

EXAMPLES :

Whoever told you so was right,  
*Qui que ce soit qui vous l'AIT DIT avait raison.*  
 Whatever you may do, you will be censured,  
*Quoi que vous FASSIEZ vous serez blâmé.*

And after the conjunctions given page 243.

It is also sometimes used without conjunction, in some sentences of wish or desire : as,

*May you be happy,*  
*PUISSIEZ vous être heureux !*

**FINALLY.**—The subjunctive is used when a relative and its antecedent come both between two verbs : as,

He wants a young man *who can* teach German,  
*Il a BESOIN d'un jeune homme qui PUISSE enseigner l'Allemand.*

**N.B.**—With the exception of some peculiar phrases, in which the subjunctive or the indicative mood is used according to the sense, in all other instances not mentioned in the syntax on verbs, the French tenses correspond to the English, and therefore need no explanation.

## EXERCISE ON THE THREE PRECEDING RULES.

That is, indeed, the finest speech I ever heard. He is the most conceited man I ever met with. You are the most obliging man I know. It is the only thing that can console us. You are the first who did mention it to me. There are few pleasures that are not followed by some remorse. To whomsoever you address yourself, speak boldly. Whatever he does, do not punish him. Whoever shall speak to you, do not answer. Do you know any one who will go with them?

That is, indeed,	<i>voilà bien.</i>	Pleasures,	<i>plaisirs, m.</i>
Speech,	<i>discours, m.</i>	To follow,	<i>suivre.</i>
To hear,	<i>entendre.</i>	By,	<i>de.</i>
Conceited,	<i>suffisant.</i>	Remorse,	<i>remords, m.</i>
To meet with,	<i>rencontrer.</i>	To address one's self,	<i>s'adresser à.</i>
Obliging,	<i>obligeant.</i>	Boldly,	<i>hardiment.</i>
To console,	<i>consoler.</i>	To answer,	<i>répondre.</i>
To mention a thing,	<i>parler de quelque chose.</i>	Any one,	<i>quelqu'un.</i>
		Will,	<i>voulotr.</i>

## OF PARTICIPLES.

The participle is so called because it partakes of the nature of the verb and of the adjective: of the verb as it has its signification and object; of the adjective as it expresses a quality.

There are two sorts of participles; the participle present, and the participle past.

## OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT AND VERBAL ADJECTIVE.

The *participle present* always ends in *ant*, in French, and is indeclinable; while the *verbal adjectives* (that is, adjectives derived from verbs) are declinable, and agree in gender and number with the substantive which they qualify.

As it is sometimes difficult to know whether a word ending in *ant* is a participle present or a verbal adjective, we give the following rules whereby to distinguish the one from the other.

**Rule 101.**—The participle present expresses an *action*, and may be replaced by another tense of the verb with *qui*:

## EXAMPLES :

A mother *caressing* her children,  
*Une mère* CARESSANT (QUI CARESSE) *ses enfants*.

Children *loving* their mothers,  
*Des enfants* AIMANT (QUI AIMENT) *leur mère*.

Men, *uniting* courage to prudence are rare,  
*Les hommes* ALLIANT (QUI ALLIENT) *le courage et la prudence sont rares*.

**Rule 102.**—The *verbal adjective* expresses a quality belonging to the substantive which it modifies, or a *state*, a *manner of being*, and may be construed by one of the tenses of *être* preceded by *qui* :

## EXAMPLES :

A *loving* mother,  
*Une mère* AIMANTE (QUI EST AIMANTE).

*Caressing* children,  
*Des enfants* CARESSANTS (QUI SONT CARESSANTS).

**OBSERVATION.**—The participle present can never be preceded, in French, by any other preposition than *en* ; the present of the infinitive must be used after any other, thus : I am tired of *reading*, *Je suis fatigué de LIRE* ; After *having* seen it, he withdrew ; *Après l'AVOIR vu*, *il se retira*.

When a *participle present* has reference to a noun or pronoun which is not the *subject* or *nominative* of the sentence, it must be rendered in French by the present or the imperfect of the indicative, with *qui* before it ; as, I have seen your brother *playing* in the garden, *J'ai vu votre frère QUI JOUAIT* (not *jouant*) *dans le jardin*. The preposition *by*, preceding a *participle present*, is most commonly expressed by *en* : as, You may easily get praise *by preferring* others to yourself ; *Vous pouvez aisément obtenir des louanges EN PRÉFÉRANT les autres à vous-même*.

## EXERCISE ON THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT AND VERBAL ADJECTIVE.

I saw them running at full speed. Do you perceive the sailors rowing towards the coast? We were walking and thinking of our misfortunes. That seal represents a dove holding a letter in its beak. Brutus saw his two sons expiring by his orders. We heard the bombs

bursting with a horrible noise. That proof convincing the jurymen of his innocence, he was acquitted. The ruling passion of Cæsar was ambition. Low<sup>2</sup> and<sup>3</sup> servile<sup>4</sup> men<sup>1</sup> are ashamed of nothing. Your mother is very obliging. It is a convincing proof of the surprising<sup>2</sup> effects<sup>1</sup> of the loadstone. Take those interesting<sup>2</sup> children<sup>1</sup> to the drawing-room. You cannot go there without disobeying your father. He must begin by saying his lessons. Nobody can be happy without practising virtue. Clouds and fogs are formed from vapours arising from the earth and waters. Variety of colours depends on the position and order of the objects diversifying the light in the reflection of their rays. We have obtained peace by making great sacrifices. Do not make bad worse by persisting to do that.

To run,	<i>courir.</i>
At full speed,	<i>à toutes jambes.</i>
Sailors,	<i>matelots.</i>
To row,	<i>ramer.</i>
Towards,	<i>vers.</i>
Coast,	<i>côte, f.</i>
Misfortunes,	<i>malheurs, m.</i>
Seal,	<i>cachet, m.</i>
To represent,	<i>représenter.</i>
Dove,	<i>colombe, f.</i>
To hold,	<i>tenir.</i>
Beak,	<i>bec, m.</i>
To expire,	<i>expirer.</i>
Orders,	<i>ordres, m.</i>
Bombs,	<i>bombes, f.</i>
To burst,	<i>éclater.</i>
Horrible noise,	<i>bruit horrible.</i>
Proof,	<i>preuve, f.</i>
To convince,	<i>convaincre.</i>
Acquitted,	<i>acquitté.</i>
To rule,	<i>dominer.</i>
Cæsar,	<i>César.</i>
Low,	<i>bas, m.</i>
Servile,	<i>rampan, m.</i>
To be ashamed,	<i>n'avoir honte.</i>
To oblige,	<i>obliger.</i>
To surprise,	<i>surprendre.</i>
Effects,	<i>effets, m.</i>
Loadstone,	<i>aimant, m.</i>

To take,	<i>conduire.</i>
To interest,	<i>intéresser.</i>
Drawing-room,	<i>salon, m.</i>
To disobey,	<i>désobéir à.</i>
To say,	<i>dire.</i>
Lessons,	<i>leçons, f.</i>
Nobody can,	<i>personne ne peut.</i>
To practice,	<i>pratiquer.</i>
Clouds,	<i>nuages, m.</i>
Fogs,	<i>brouillards, m.</i>
Formed,	<i>formé, m.</i>
Vapours,	<i>vapeurs, f.</i>
To arise,	<i>s'élever.</i>
Variety,	<i>variété, f.</i>
Colours,	<i>couleurs, f.</i>
To depend on,	<i>dépendre de.</i>
Order,	<i>ordre, m.</i>
Objects,	<i>objets, m.</i>
To diversify,	<i>diversifier.</i>
Light,	<i>lumière, f.</i>
Reflection,	<i>réflexion, f.</i>
Rays,	<i>rayons, m.</i>
To obtain,	<i>obtenir.</i>
Peace,	<i>paix, f.</i>
Sacrifices,	<i>sacrifices, m.</i>
To make bad worse,	<i>rendre le mal plus grand.</i>
To persist,	<i>persister.</i>

## OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

### OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST WITH *avoir*.

**Rule 103.**—A participle past used with *avoir* agrees in gender and number not with the *nominative*, but with the *accusative* when the latter precedes the verb.



## EXAMPLES :

The books which you have brought,  
*Les livres que vous avez apportés.*

The ladies whom I have seen,  
*Les dames que j'ai vues.\**

But it remains indeclinable when the accusative or object comes after.

## EXAMPLES :

You have brought the books,  
*Vous avez apporté les livres.*

I have seen the ladies,  
*J'ai vu les dames.*

The participle past of *unipersonal* verbs, or of all verbs used unipersonally is indeclinable : as,

The heat which we had in summer,  
*Les chaleurs qu'il a fait (not faites) pendant l'été.*

What advantages have resulted from it ?  
*Quels avantages en est-il résulté (not résultés).*

Also the participle past of a verb coming between two *que* ; as,

The letter which you wished me to write,  
*La lettre que vous avez voulu (not voulue) que j'écrivisse.*

OBSERVE.—The participle past used with *avoir* and followed by another verb, in the infinitive, is *indeclinable* when the two are inseparably united by the sense ; this is the case when the noun cannot be put between them : thus in *La maison que je vous ai conseillé d'acheter*, the participle *conseillé* remains indeclinable, because we cannot say : *J'ai conseillé LA MAISON d'acheter* ; but in, *La maison que j'ai vue brûler*, *vue* agrees because we can say, *j'ai vu LA MAISON brûler*. The participle past is never declined after *en*,

---

\* An easy method of finding the accusative in sentences like the above, is to ask the question, *qui ?* or *quoi ?* *qui* for persons, *quoi* for things. Ex : if you ask *vous avez apporté, quoi ?* *j'ai vu, qui ?* the answers will be *les livres ; les dames* ; therefore *les livres, les dames*, in short what answers to the questions *qui* or *quoi* is the object or accusative of the verb.

EXERCISE ON THE PARTICIPLE PAST WITH *avoir*.

Your sisters have made great progress in French. We have seen the royal<sup>2</sup> family<sup>1</sup>. They have dined to-day later than usual. Have they learnt their lesson? Has not your uncle sold his house? We have not yet read the letters which we have received. I am astonished at the progress they have made. Show me the silk you have bought. I have found again the ring I had lost; I had left it in one of my drawers. Repeat all the lessons you have learnt. This is the house he has sold. Where are my sisters? I saw them go by a quarter of an hour ago. I send you the music which you seemed to wish for. I know the author of the song which we heard sung. I heard them speak. What do you think of the young lady whom we heard sing? The presents which she refused to accept have been sent to her elder sister. I wanted six yards of cloth; you sent me a dozen (of them). Such are the difficulties which I could not overcome. I let them laugh and play in the garden. Where were they during the long wars we had to sustain? I rendered him all the services I could. He has already lost the brooch which you wished him to buy. I remember the high winds which blew last winter. He has obtained the success which you had foretold he would obtain. Here are the books I ordered from France.

Progress,	<i>progrès, m. p.</i>
In French,	<i>dans le Français.</i>
Family,	<i>famille, f.</i>
To dine,	<i>dîner.</i>
Late,	<i>tard.</i>
Usual,	<i>à l'ordinaire.</i>
To read,	<i>lire.</i>
To astonish,	<i>étonner.</i>
Silk,	<i>soie, f.</i>
To find again,*	<i>retrouver.</i>
Ring,	<i>bague, f.</i>
To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>
To leave,	<i>laisser.</i>
Drawers,	<i> tiroirs, m.</i>
To repeat,	<i>répéter.</i>
To go by,	<i>passer.</i>
A quarter of an hour ago,	<i>il y a un quart d'heure.</i>
Music,	<i>musique, f.</i>
To seem,	<i>sembler.</i>
To wish for,	<i>désirer.</i>
Author,	<i>auteur.</i>
To hear,	<i>entendre.</i>
To sing,	<i>chanter.</i>
Presents,	<i>présents, m.</i> <i>or cadeaux, m.</i>

To refuse,	<i>refuser.</i>
To accept,	<i>accepter.</i>
Elder,	<i>ainé, m.</i>
To want,	<i>avoir besoin de.</i>
Yards,	<i>aunes, verges, f.</i>
Cloth,	<i>drap, m.</i>
Dozen,	<i>douzaine, f.</i>
Difficulties,	<i>difficultés, f.</i>
Could, (from to be able,)	<i>pouvoir.</i>
To overcome,	<i>surmonter.</i>
To leave,	<i>laisser.</i>
Wars,	<i>guerres, f.</i>
To sustain,	<i>soutenir.</i>
Brooch,	<i>épingie, f.</i>
To wish,	<i>vouloir.</i>
To remember,	<i>se souvenir de.</i>
High winds,	<i>grands vents.</i>
Blew,	<i>use faire.</i>
To obtain,	<i>obtenir.</i>
Success,	<i>les succès.</i>
To foretell,	<i>prévoir.</i>
To order,	<i>faire venir.</i>

\* We usually prefix *re* to verbs that do not begin with *re* to express the word again used with English verbs: as, to read, *lire*; to read again, *relire*; to take, *prendre*; to take again, *reprandre*.

OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST WITH *être*.

**Rule 104.**—The participle past accompanied by *être*, is a verbal adjective, and therefore agrees, in French, in gender and number, with the subject of the verb.

## EXAMPLES :

The queen is recovered,  
*La reine est RÉTABLIE.*  
 The princes are arrived,  
*Les princes sont ARRIVÉS.*  
 Those ladies came to see us,  
*Ces dames sont VENUES nous voir.*  
 These flowers are faded,  
*Ces fleurs sont FANÉES.*  
 Lucretia killed herself,  
*Lucrèce s'est TUÉE.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. A pronominal verb with a *noun* in the *accusative* after it : as,

Lucretia killed herself,  
*Lucrèce s'est DONNÉE (not donnée) la mort.*  
 His aunt broke her leg,  
*Sa tante s'est CASSÉE (not cassée) la jambe.*

2. A pronominal verb used without any *accusative* : as,

We wrote to each other,  
*Nous nous sommes ÉCRIT (not écrits).*  
 They answered each other,  
*Il se sont RÉPONDU (not répondus).*

3. The few\* pronominal verbs which are formed of *neuter* verbs : as,

They succeeded each other,  
*Ils se sont SUCCÉDÉ (not succédés).*  
 We spoke to one another,  
*Nous nous sommes PARLÉ (not parlés).*

## EXERCISE ON THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

We are at last arrived. That lady seems afflicted. Are the robbers apprehended? The servants are very busy. Alms given without ostentation acquire a new merit. Are the ladies who came this morning related? The wicked are sooner or later tormented by their

---

\* They are: *se plaire, se complaire, se déplaire, se rire, se sourire, se parler, se succéder, se nuire, se convenir* (to suit one another), and *se ressembler*.

conscience. Those men quarrelled, abused one another, and would have fought if we had not hastened to separate them. Your sister and mine met at Mr. D.'s house, but did not speak to each other. Did they show one another your letters? They have injured each other much. Have they washed their hands? They have washed them twice already. Fortunately we kept silent. How many ministers have succeeded each other these five years? We have laughed at his threats. They saw themselves forced to surrender. The queen had showed herself to the people assembled. We left them united by friendship. She appeared deprived of life. They remained hidden. Fortunately he remembered where they had seen each other.

To afflict,	<i>affliger.</i>
Robbers,	<i>voleurs.</i>
To apprehend,	<i>arrêter.</i>
To be busy,	<i>être occupé.</i>
Alms,	<i>aumônes, f.</i>
Merit,	<i>mérite, m.</i>
Related,	<i>parentes, f. p.</i>
Sooner or later,	<i>tôt ou tard.</i>
To torment,	<i>tourmenter.</i>
To quarrel,	<i>se quereller.</i>
To abuse one another,	<i>se dire des injures.</i>
To fight,	<i>se battre.</i>
To hasten,	<i>s'empresser de.</i>
To separate,	<i>séparer.</i>
To meet,	<i>se rencontrer.</i>
To injure one another,	<i>se nuire.</i>
To wash one's hands,	<i>se laver les mains.</i>
Fortunately,	<i>par bonheur, or heureusement.</i>

To remain or to keep silent,	<i>se taire.</i>
How many,	<i>que de.</i>
Ministers,	<i>ministres.</i>
These,	<i>depuis.</i>
To laugh at,	<i>se rire de.</i>
Threats,	<i>menaces, f.</i>
To see one another,	<i>se voir.</i>
To surrender,	<i>se rendre.</i>
To show oneself,	<i>se montrer.</i>
People,	<i>peuples, m.</i>
To leave,	<i>laisser.</i>
To unite,	<i>unir.</i>
Friendship,	<i>amitié, f.</i>
To appear,	<i>paraître.</i>
To deprive,	<i>priver.</i>
To remain,	<i>rester.</i>
To hide,	<i>cacher.</i>
To remember,	<i>se souvenir de or se rappeler.</i>

## CHAPTER VI.

### SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

#### PLACE OF ADVERBS.

**Rule 105.**—A simple adverb is generally placed after the verb in simple tenses; and in compound tenses after the auxiliary as in English.\*

---

\* *Bien, mal, mieux, jamais* and *trop*, if used with a verb in the present of the infinitive generally precede it, as: *se bien conduire, se mal porter, ne jamais mentir.*

## EXAMPLES :

I *often* think of them,                      *je pense* SOUVENT à eux.  
 Have you *ever* seen him,                  l'avez-vous JAMAIS vu.

**Rule 106.**—Compound adverbs are always placed after the verb in simple tenses ; and in compound tenses after the participle.

## EXAMPLES :

They dress *after the French manner*,  
 Ils s'habillent à LA FRANÇAISE.  
 I did it *hastily*,  
 Je l'ai fait à LA HÂTE.

In the compound tenses of verbs, we may sometimes place the adverb either before or after the participle past ; thus we may say equally well :

He has grown *prodigiously*,  
 Il a grandi PRODIGIEUSEMENT, or il a PRODIGIEUSEMENT grandi.

We place, either before or after the verb, adverbs of *order* or *place*, and those which denote time in a *determinate* manner : as,

We ought *first* to do our duty ; *secondly*, seek lawful pleasures,  
 Nous devons faire, PREMIÈREMENT, notre devoir ; SECONDEMENT,  
 chercher les plaisirs permis.

*To-day* it is fine weather ; it will rain, perhaps, *to-morrow*,  
 AUJOURD'HUI il fait beau ; il pleuvra, peut-être, DEMAIN.

*First* they asked us our names,  
 D'ABORD on nous demanda nos noms, or on nous demanda D'ABORD  
 nos noms.

We have already said that the negative is composed of *ne*, *ne pas*, or *ne point*. *Ne* always precedes the verb, but the place of *pas* or *point* is variable.

When the verb is in the infinitive, both *ne* and *pas*, or *ne* and *point* are more elegantly placed before it than after : as,

You must be blind *not* to see that,  
 Il faut que vous soyez aveugle pour NE POINT voir cela.  
 It is more prudent *not* to go,  
 Il est plus prudent de NE PAS y aller.

OBSERVE.—*Pas* and *point* are not entirely synonymous; *ne point* is a stronger negative than *ne pas*, and more exclusive; for instance, if I say, *je ne lis pas*, I mean, and it is understood, that *at this moment I am not reading*; but if I say, *je ne lis point*, it will be understood that *I never read*; again, *il n'a pas d'argent*, signifies that he has no money about him now; *il n'a point d'argent*, he has no money at all. *Point* is used in preference to *pas* in answer to a question.

## EXERCISE ON THE PLACE OF ADVERBS.

Whatever you do, do it well. Have I not won fairly? You deservedly obtained it. Did you spend the day pleasantly? They have settled their affairs amicably. Your lawyer has acted sincerely in that business. Have you done already? I was lately at your house. They strongly opposed his designs. Do you often go to his house? I have never been there. We seldom repent of talking too little, but frequently of talking too much. Always recommend them to behave well and never do wrong to any body. You have tied that badly. He has come often enough. They will certainly lose their way. Perform your duty well, and you will deserve our esteem. He has lost enormously. Have you not played enough? Certainly you must be tired. He did not know me at first. Next year, I shall go to Germany with him. I shall certainly dismiss him. Formerly it was not so. To-day he laughs, to-morrow, perhaps, he will cry. I will endeavour not to be importunate. You are right not to suffer his insults.

Whatever,	<i>quoique.</i>
Well,	<i>bien.</i>
To win,	<i>gagner.</i>
Fairly,	<i>de bon jeu.</i>
To obtain,	<i>obtenir.</i>
Deservedly,	<i>à bon droit.</i>
To spend the day,	<i>passer la journée.*</i>
Pleasantly,	<i>agréablement.</i>
To settle,	<i>arranger.</i>
Affairs,	<i>affaires, f.</i>
Amicably,	<i>à l'amiable.</i>
Lawyer,	<i>homme de loi.</i>
To act,	<i>agir.</i>
Sincerely,	<i>sincèrement.</i>
Business,	<i>affaire, f.</i>

Already,	<i>déjà.</i>
Lately,	<i>dernièrement.</i>
To oppose,	<i>s'opposer à.</i>
Designs,	<i>desseins, m.</i>
To repent,	<i>se repentir de.</i>
Seldom,	<i>rarement.</i>
Frequently,	<i>souvent.</i>
To recommend,	<i>recommander à.</i>
To wrong,	<i>faire tort à.</i>
Any body,	<i>personne.</i>
To tie,	<i>nouer, attacher.</i>
To come,	<i>venir.</i>
Often enough,	<i>assez souvent.†</i>
To lose one's way,	<i>s'égarer, perdre son chemin.</i>

\* *Matinée, journée, soirée*, are used instead of *matin, jour, soir*, when the whole morning, day, or evening is implied.

† We cannot say, *souvent assez* as in English, *often enough*; we say, *beaucoup trop*, and not *trop beaucoup*, because *beaucoup* cannot be preceded by any augmentative as much can in English. We cannot therefore say, *très-beaucoup*, very much; *si beaucoup*, so much, nor other similar expressions.

To perform,	remplir.	Formerly,	autrefois.
To deserve,	mériter.	So,	ainsi.
Esteem,	estimer, &c.	To laugh,	rire.
Enormously,	énormément.	To cry,	pleurer.
To play,	jouer.	To endeavour,	tâcher de, faire en sorte de.
Tired,	fatigué.	Importunate,	importun.
Know,	reconnaître.	To be right,	avoir raison.
At first,	d'abord.	To suffer,	souffrir.
Germany,	Allemagne.	Insults,	insultes, &c.
To dismiss,	renvoyer.		

## OBSERVATIONS ON SOME NEGATIONS.

*Not* used in a reply to a question, is expressed by *pas* only : as,

*Comment se porte Madame votre mère ? PAS très-bien, Monsieur.*

*No* used in reply to a question, is construed into French by *non* : \* as,

*Avez-vous vu mon père ? NON, Monsieur.*

*Not* used in the second part of a sentence after *or*, is likewise expressed by *non* : as,

Will you do it or *not* ? *voulez-vous le faire ou NON ?*

*Not that* is expressed in French by either *non que*, *non pas que*, or *ce n'est pas que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood : as,

I will pay for it, *not* that I am obliged to do so,  
*Je le payerai, NON QUE, OR, NON PAS QUE, j'y sois obligé.*

*No more, not any more*, are expressed by *ne plus* : as,

I saw them *no more*, *je NE les vis PLUS.*  
I have *not* seen them *any more*, *je NE les ai PLUS vus.*

*Neither—nor*, are expressed by *ne—ni* : as,

He can *neither* read *nor* write,  
*Il NE sait NI lire NI écrire.*

I *neither* know *nor* wish to know them,  
*Je NE les connais NI NE veux les connaître.*

\* *Point* or *non pas* may be used instead of *non* in a familiar style : as, *en avez-vous ? point. Veux-tu me donner ceci ? non pas, mon ami.*

At the end of a sentence, *neither* is expressed in French by *non plus* : as,

You will not wait, nor I *neither*,  
*Vous ne voulez pas attendre, ni moi NON PLUS.*

*Never* and *by no means*, with a verb, are expressed in French by *ne jamais* and *ne nullement*, but when used by themselves in answer to a question *ne* is omitted : as,

Have you been to Paris? *Never*, *avez-vous été à Paris ? JAMAIS.*  
 Is he rich? *by no means*, *est-il riche ? NULLEMENT.*

*Nothing*, with a verb, is expressed in French by *ne rien* or *rien ne* : as,

I have *nothing*, *je n'ai RIEN.*  
 Nothing frightens him, *RIEN NE l'épouvante.*

*Rien* without *ne*, becomes a noun, and means *a trifling thing* : it is the accusative *rem* of the Latin noun *res*, *thing* : as,

He becomes angry for a *mere trifle*,  
*Il se fâche pour UN RIEN.*

Without the negative and article, it signifies *any thing* : as,

Is there *any thing* new? *y a-t-il RIEN de nouveau ?*

*Plus* and *davantage* must not be used indiscriminately; *plus* is followed by *de* or *que* : as,

He is beloved *more* than you,  
*Il est aimé PLUS QUE vous.*

If I stay here, I shall have *more* pleasure,  
*Si je reste ici, j'aurai PLUS DE plaisir.*

*Davantage*, on the contrary, is used alone, and at the end of a sentence : as,

He will be *the more* loved for it, *il en sera aimé DAVANTAGE.*  
 Will you have *any more*? *en voulez-vous DAVANTAGE.*

---

#### PARTICULAR RULES ON *ne*.

*Ne* for the sake of elegance is commonly used without *pas* or *point* after the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, and *savoir*, used in the sense of *pouvoir*, or followed by *si* : as,



I dare *not* contradict him,  
*Je n'ose le contredire.*

I cannot be silent,  
*Je NE puis or je NE saurais me taire.*

And in interrogations of this kind :

Have I a protector, a friend that is *not* also his?  
*Ai-je un protecteur, un ami qui NE soit aussi le sien ?*

Is there a man whom he does *not* slander?  
*Y a-t-il un homme dont il NE médise ?*

*Ne*, must be used without *pas* or *point*, before a verb that is followed by some word the sense of which expresses a negative, such as *nul*, *aucun*, *rien*, *personne*, *nullement*; and also *jamais*, *guère*, and *plus*, when these intend to express *time*: as,

I know *none* of these gentlemen,  
*Je NE connais AUCUN de ces messieurs.*

He has *but little* money to spend,  
*Il n'a GUÈRE d'argent à dépenser.*

*Ne*, is used without *pas* or *point*, in all subordinate propositions of sentences like those just mentioned, where it comes after *qui*, *que*, or *dont*: as,

I see no one who does not commend him,  
*Je ne vois personne qui NE le loue.*

I never meet them *without* my mentioning it to them,  
*Je ne les rencontre jamais QUE je NE leur en parle.*

*Ne*, is used without *pas* or *point*, when two negatives are joined by *ni*, or when *ni* is repeated: as,

He *neither* loves *nor* esteems them,  
*Il NE les aime NI NE les estime.*

*Neither* the poor *nor* the rich are exempt from death,  
*NI le pauvre NI le riche NE sont exempts de la mort.*

*Ne*, is used without *pas* or *point*, when it comes after *que* in the acceptation of *pourquoi*, and after *à moins que*, or *si* used in the sense of it: as,

*Why* do you *not* imitate him?  
*QUE NE l'imitiez-vous ?*

He will not go *unless* you accompany him.  
*Il ne veut pas y aller À MOINS QUE vous NE l'y accompagniez.*

*Pas* or *point* is omitted when *ne que* is used instead of *seulement*.

He does *nothing but* read from morning till night,  
*Il NE fait QUE lire du matin au soir.*

An honest man knows *nothing but* his duty,  
*L'honnête homme NE connaît QUE ses devoirs.*

*Ne* is used without *pas* or *point*, after *craindre*, and those of the same meaning, as *avoir peur*, *appréhender*, *trembler*, when these verbs are followed by the conjunction *que*, and if we do not wish the thing expressed by the second verb: as,

I *fear* he will come,  
*Je crains qu'il NE vienne.*

We *fear* he is ill,  
*Nous craignons qu'il NE soit malade.*

The same is to be observed after *de crainte que*, *de peur que*: as,

For *fear* he will come,  
*De crainte qu'il NE vienne.*

For *fear* he should be ill,  
*De crainte qu'il NE soit malade.*

OBSERVE.—If we wish that the action expressed by the second verb should take place, then *pas* or *point* must be expressed with *ne*: as,

I *fear* he will *not* come,  
*Je crains qu'il NE vienne PAS.*

*Ne*, is used without *pas* or *point* after the verbs *empêcher*, and *prendre garde*, meaning to take care, when followed by the conjunction *que*: as,

I shall *prevent* his disturbing you,  
*J'empêcherai bien qu'il NE vous dérange.*

Take care your son commit *not* that imprudence,  
*Prenez-garde que votre fils NE commette cette imprudence.*

\* In these sentences *ne* is not a negative, as may be seen by the English translation, it is the dubitative *ne* or *quin* of the Romans.

*Ne*, is used without *pas* or *point* after *désespérer*, *douter*, *disconvenir*, and *nier*, if these verbs are used *negatively* and followed by *que*, as,

I do not *doubt* that they are gone,  
*Je ne doute pas qu'ils NE soient partis.*

We do not *deny* that it may be so,  
*Nous ne nions pas que cela NE soit.*

But we would say without the negative :

I deny, I doubt that they are gone,  
*Je nie, je doute qu'ils soient partis.*

*Ne*, is used without *pas* or *point* in sentences where the conjunction *que* is preceded by the adverbs *autre*, *autrement*, *plus*, *mieux*, *moins*, *pire*, or any equivalent terms in sentences expressing a comparison : as,

He is much *better* informed than it is thought,  
*Il est beaucoup PLUS instruit qu'on NE pense.*

He writes *better* than he speaks,  
*Il écrit MIEUX qu'il NE parle.*

OBSERVE.—Should the first verb be accompanied by a negative, *ne* then is not used before the second. Thus we should say :

He does *not* write better than he speaks,  
*Il n'écrit PAS mieux qu'il parle.*

*Ne* is used without *pas* or *point* after *depuis que*, or *il y a que*, when the verb following *que* is in the preterit, and expressing the time since which an action has not taken place ; as,

I have *not* seen him since I have been in France,  
*Je ne l'ai pas vu depuis que je n'ai été en France.*

I had *not* seen them for six months,  
*Il y avait six mois que je NE les avais vus.*

But *pas* or *point* is not omitted if the verb be in the present ; as,

I have *not* seen him these six months,  
*Il y a six mois que je NE le vois POINT.*

EXERCISE ON THE NEGATIVES *ne, ne pas, ne point.*

He talks incessantly. I cannot command myself. I do not know where he is. I dare not say it. Is there anything of mine which is not at your disposal? Have we a friend that is not also yours? There is no one that I esteem more than his father. There is no knowledge more useful than that of ourselves. A clear<sup>s</sup> conscience<sup>l</sup> needs no excuse, and fears no accusation. No reverse of fortune ought to alter friendship. He who pleases nobody is less unhappy than him whom nobody pleases. I have by no means consented to it. He does not say a word. He hears nothing without repeating it. He never commits any excess, without being ill after it. Neither gold nor greatness can make us happy. I have neither debts nor lawsuits. Why did you not come sooner? I have nothing but your happiness at heart. We are afraid he will hurt himself. For fear he should fall. I fear he will not succeed. Take the key for fear you should come home late. You prevent people from hearing. I shall prevent your doing it again. Do you doubt that they are arrived? I do not doubt that you will soon be well again. You are less prudent than I thought. It is worse than was said. You are not stronger than you were. I have not seen your friend these two years. How do they live since I do not see them? There is nothing made by the hand of men, which time does not destroy.

To talk incessantly,	<i>ne cesser de parler.</i>	To commit,	<i>faire.</i>
To command	<i>se commander.</i>	Excess,	<i>excès, m.</i>
one'self,		After it,	<i>après.</i>
Any thing of mine	<i>rien qui m'appar-</i>	Greatness,	<i>grandeur, f.</i>
	<i>tienne.</i>	Make us,	<i>nous rendre.</i>
Which is not	<i>dont vous ne</i>	Debts,	<i>dettes, f.</i>
at your disposal,	<i>puissiez disposer.</i>	Law suits,	<i>procès, m.</i>
That,	<i>qui.</i>	To have any thing	<i>vouloir.</i>
There is,	<i>il est, il y a.</i>	at heart,	
Knowledge,	<i>connaissance, f.</i>	To hurt one'self.	<i>se blesser, se faire</i>
Clear,	<i>sans reproche.</i>		<i>mal.</i>
To need,	<i>avoir besoin.</i>	To fall,	<i>tomber.</i>
No,	<i>aucune, f.</i>	To succeed,	<i>réussir.</i>
Excuse,	<i>excuse, f.</i>	Key,	<i>clef, f.</i>
Accusation,	<i>accusation, f.</i>	To come home,	<i>rentrer.</i>
Reverse,	<i>revers, m.</i>	To prevent,	<i>empêcher.</i>
Fortune,	<i>fortune, f.</i>	To doubt,	<i>douter.</i>
To alter,	<i>altérer.</i>	Well again,	<i>rétabli.</i>
He who,	<i>celui qui.</i>	It was said,	<i>on disait.</i>
By no means,	<i>nullement.</i>	How do they live,	<i>que font ils.</i>
To consent,	<i>consentir.</i>	Made,	<i>de fait.</i>
A word,	<i>mot.</i>	Time,	<i>temps, m.</i>
To hear,	<i>entendre.</i>	To destroy,	<i>détruire.</i>
To repeat,	<i>répéter.</i>		

## CHAPTER VII. ON PREPOSITIONS.

### OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

#### *Avant, devant, BEFORE.*

1. *Avant* denotes *time* ; as,

*Before* the end of the year,  
*AVANT la fin de l'année.*

2. *Rank* ; as,

This chapter must be put *before* that,  
*Il faut mettre ce chapitre-ci AVANT celui-là.*

1. *Devant* denotes *place* ; as,

Look *before* you, *regardez DEVANT vous.*

2. *Order* ; as,

He was walking *before* me, *il marchait DEVANT moi.*

#### *Dans, en, IN, INTO.*

*Dans* denotes *time* and *place* in a positive manner ; as,

He will arrive *in* three days, *il arrivera DANS trois jours.*  
To be *in* a room, *être DANS une chambre.*

*En* denotes *time* and *place* in an indeterminate manner ;  
as,

*Il arrivera EN trois jours ; être EN Italie.*

OBSERVE.—There is this difference between *il arrivera DANS huit jours*, and *il arrivera EN huit jours*, that the latter sentence signifies that he will be a week coming, whereas the former means that he will arrive by this day week, whatever may be the time, he will take or has taken to perform the journey ; or again, thus, *il apprendra le Français DANS six mois*, means that he will begin to learn French six months hence ; and, *il apprendra le Français EN six mois*, signifies that he will in six months know French.

*Selon, suivant*, ACCORDING TO.

*Selon* is generally said of opinion, and *suivant* of practice; *SELON son goût*; *SUIVANT ses habitudes*.

---

*Entre, parmi*, BETWEEN, AMONG.

*Entre* is said of two objects only; *parmi* is said of several :

He was <i>between</i> us,	<i>il était ENTRE nous.</i>
I mixed <i>among</i> the crowd,	<i>je me mêlai PARMI la foule.</i>

---

*Depuis, pendant, pour*, FOR.

*Depuis* denotes the two *extremes* of a period of time ; as,

I have not seen him <i>for</i> a month,
<i>Je ne l'ai pas vu DEPUIS un mois.</i>

*Pendant* denotes the *duration* ; as,

They fought <i>for</i> two hours,
<i>Ils se battirent PENDANT deux heures.</i>

And *pour* expresses the *end* ; as,

They have provisions <i>for</i> three months,
<i>Ils ont des provisions POUR trois mois.</i>

---

*Sur*, ON.

The English preposition *on* is not expressed in French before the days of the week or the date of the month ; *on* Friday, *vendredi* : *on* the twenty-ninth of January, *le vingt neuf janvier*.

---

*Chez*, TO, AT.

*To*, *at*, are rendered by *chez*, when in English they precede the word house, either expressed or understood ; as,

I was at your brother's,      *j'étais CHEZ votre frère.*  
 I am going to Mr. Jones',      *je vais CHEZ M. Jones.*

When *to* or *at* is followed by the word *home*, a personal pronoun is substituted for the word *home* after *chez*; as,

He is at home,      *il est CHEZ LUI.*  
 I shall be at home,      *je serai CHEZ MOI.*

**OBSERVE.**—The master of a house only can, with propriety, say, *chez moi*, for *at home*. Children, &c., should translate *at home*, by *chez nous*, or *à la maison*, or *au logis*.

---

FROM.

*From*, before the name of a man or a woman, or a pronoun, is generally expressed in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma*, *de ta*, *de sa*, *de notre*, *de votre*, *de leur part*.

EXERCISE ON THE ABOVE PREPOSITIONS.

I shall arrive there before them. Do not place yourself before me. Though he is the youngest, he is always before his brothers in all the classes. He will appear before them on Thursday next. You will find him in his library. He will be in France for a fortnight. He has been there this month. I learnt Italian in twelve months. He intends to begin German in a month. Say that I shall be there in an hour. He has acted according to your orders. You should\* behave according to his advice. He plays from morning till night. Where were you during the conference? I have eaten nothing since last night. We have not candles enough for the evening. I sat between them. I saw the prince among the crowd. You will hear from him on the 10th of this month. I am going to your uncle's. He is not at home. I think he is gone to Mr. Edwards'. When will he be at home? On Saturday. He will stay at home the whole day.

Classes,	<i>classes, f.</i>	Conference,	<i>conférence, f.</i>
To appear,	<i>paraître.</i>	Last night,	<i>hier au soir.</i>
Next,	<i>prochain.</i>	Candles enough,	<i>assez de chandelles.</i>
Library,	<i>bibliothèque, f.</i>	Evening,	<i>soirée, f.</i>
Fortnight,	<i>quinaine, f.</i>	To sit,	<i>s'asseoir.</i>
A twelvemonth,	<i>un an.</i>	Crowd,	<i>foule, f.</i>
To intend,	<i>avoir dessein.</i>	To hear from,	<i>recevoir des nouvelles de.</i>
Orders,	<i>ordres, m.</i>	The whole day,	<i>toute la journée.</i>
To behave,	<i>se conduire.</i>		

---

\* See the note page 89 on *should*.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunction *que* is employed,

1. In the sense of *that*, either expressed or understood in English : as,

I hope he will consent to it, *j'espère qu'il y consentira.*

2. In comparative sentences : as,

Asia is larger *than* Europe,  
*L'Asie est plus grande que l'Europe.*

3. In negative sentences with *ne* to express *nothing but* : as,

They talk of *nothing but* that event,  
*On ne parle que de cet événement.*

4. *Que* is used in the second part of a sentence, to avoid the repetition of the conjunction occurring in the first part : as,

*If* you were going to town, and *if* you would buy that for me, I would give you the money,  
*Si vous alliez à Londres et que vous voulussiez m'acheter cela, je vous donnerais l'argent.*  
*Although* they be rich and enjoy all the pleasures of life, they are not happy,  
*Quoiqu'ils soient riches et qu'ils jouissent de tous les plaisirs de la vie, ils ne sont pas heureux.*

5. *Que* is used in the middle of a sentence for a great many other conjunctions, particularly for the following :

Because, *PARCE QUE.*

If I did not bow to you, it is *because* I did not see you,  
*Si je ne vous ai pas salué, c'est que je ne vous ai pas vu.*

---

In order that, *AFIN QUE.*

Come near, *in order that* I may speak to you,  
*Approchez que je vous parle.*



When, QUAND.

I was in Paris *when* Napoleon returned from the Isle of Elba,  
*J'étais à Paris le jour QUE Napoléon revint de l'Ile d'Elbe.*

---

As, COMME.

Wicked as he is, *Méchant qu'il est.*  
 Rich as they are, *Riches qu'ils sont.*

---

Unless, À MOINS QUE.

He never comes *unless* he is sent for,  
*Il ne vient jamais qu'on ne l'envoie chercher.*

---

Before, AVANT QUE.

Do not set off *before* he is ready,  
*Ne partez pas qu'il ne soit prêt.*

---

Yet, CEPENDANT.

Had he all the gold in the world, *yet* he would wish for more,  
*Il aurait tout l'or du monde qu'il en désirerait encore.*

---

Lest, for fear, DE PEUR QUE, DE CRAINTE QUE.

He trembles *lest* I should send him away,  
*Il tremble QUE je ne le renvoie.*

Make haste to go home *for fear* your father should scold you,  
*Dépêchez-vous de rentrer, QUE votre père ne vous gronde.*

---

Since, DEPUIS QUE.

It is two months *since* I have written to them,  
*Il y a deux mois QUE je ne leur ai écrit.*

---

Until, till, JUSQU'À CE QUE.

Wait *until* the concert is over,  
*Attendez QUE le concert soit fini.*

---

Without, SANS QUE.

I never go to the park *without* seeing those children,  
*Je ne vais jamais au parc QUE je n'y voie ces enfants.*

6. *Que* is also employed in the second part of a sentence, for

*When, but, or than*

when the words *hardly, scarcely, sooner or no sooner*, are used in the first: as,

I had <i>scarcely</i> arrived in England,	} <i>j'étais à peine arrivé en Angle-</i>	
<i>when</i> I fell ill, or,		} <i>terre, QUE je tombai malade.</i>
I had <i>no sooner</i> arrived in England,		
<i>but, or than</i> I fell ill,		

7. *Que* is likewise used for other conjunctions in the beginning of a sentence, to express admiration, or some sudden emotion of the soul, or in elliptical terms, etc.; as the following will show.

---

How, how much, how many, *QUE*.

*How great is the Almighty!*

*QUE Dieu est grand!*

*How much patience I have had for the last thirteen years!*

*QUE de patience j'ai eue depuis treize ans!*

*How many friends he has!*

*Qu'il a d'amis!*

---

Why, *POURQUOI*.

*Why do you not answer when you are spoken to?*

*QUE ne répondez-vous quand on vous parle?*

---

I wish that, *QUE*.

*I wish that he may live,*

*Qu'il vive.*

*I wish that they may be happy,*

*Qu'ils soient heureux.*

---

Let, *IL FAUT QUE*.

*Let those who have done be told that they may go home,*

*QUE l'on dise à ceux qui ont fini qu'ils peuvent s'en aller chez eux*

---

Whether, *SOIT QUE*.

*Whether you do it to-day or to-morrow is of no consequence,*

*QUE vous le fassiez aujourd'hui ou demain, n'importe.*

So soon as, as soon as, dès que, aussitôt que, si.

*So soon as, as soon as* I commit the least excess, I am ill,  
*QUE je fasse le moindre excès, je suis malade.*

EXERCISE ON THE CONJUNCTION *que*.

You do nothing but laugh. Do you think he will come? If you are to sit up, and if you like it, I will come and keep you company. Although one half of the world be deceitful, and the other wicked, yet we must live in it. When young people are inclined to study, and when they will study, they make a rapid progress. As you are rich, and as you have a good heart, do that for them. Since you are his friend, and you are so much indebted to him, you should get him out of that trouble. If I do not see him it is because I am engaged. Go nearer to him that he may hear you. Were you at the Opera when the Duke of Berri was assassinated? Never eat unless you are hungry. Do not begin unless everybody is arrived. We shall not get up before it is light. Do not go down stairs before we are all dressed. Had you what you ask, you would not be satisfied. Be silent, lest he should know that you are here. Make haste to learn your lessons for fear your master should perceive that you have been playing. It is a long time since I have been to their house. You must wait till they give you the answer. They never speak of you without commending you. I had scarcely finished when he came in. He had no sooner entered than he was surrounded and arrested. How fortunate he is! How many misfortunes you have experienced! How much generosity he displays! Why do you not come when I call you? Let those who may call be told that we are gone out, and shall not be back till four o'clock. Whether you come soon or late is of no consequence. As soon as they make the least noise, I waken.

To laugh,	<i>rire.</i>	To go near,	<i>s'approcher de.</i>
To sit up,	<i>veiller.</i>	When,	<i>le jour que.</i>
You like it,	<i>cela vous fasse plaisir.</i>	Duke,	<i>Duc.</i>
To keep one company,	<i>tenir compagnie à quelqu'un.</i>	Assassinated,	<i>assassiné.</i>
One half,	<i>une partie.</i>	To be hungry,	<i>avoir faim.</i>
Be deceitful,	<i>cherche à tromper.</i>	Every body,	<i>tout le monde.</i>
The other half,	<i>l'autre tâche de faire du mal.</i>	To get up,	<i>se lever.</i>
Yet we must,	<i>il faut pourtant y vivre.</i>	Is light,	<i>faute jour.</i>
Live in it,	<i>lorsque.</i>	To go down stairs,	<i>descendre.</i>
When,	<i>jeunes gens.</i>	Dressed,	<i>habillés, m. p.</i>
Young people,	<i>avoir des dispositions.</i>	Had you what,	<i>vous auriez ce que.</i>
To be inclined,	<i>l'étude, f.</i>	Satisfied,	<i>content.</i>
Study,	<i>étudier.</i>	To be silent,	<i>se taire.</i>
To study,	<i>des progrès rapides.</i>	To make haste,	<i>se dépêcher.</i>
A rapid progress,	<i>être redevable.</i>	To perceive,	<i>s'apercevoir.</i>
To be indebted,	<i>tirer quelqu'un d'un mauvais pas.</i>	To have been playing,	<i>avoir joué.</i>
To get one out of trouble,	<i>engagé or en affaires.</i>	ing,	
Engaged,		A long time,	<i>long-temps.</i>
		To wait,	<i>attendre.</i>
		To commend,	<i>louer.</i>
		To come in,	<i>entrer.</i>
		Surrounded,	<i>entouré.</i>
		Arrested,	<i>arrêté.</i>

Fortunate,	heureux.	To call,	passer chez.
Misfortunes,	malheurs, m.	Soon or late,	tôt ou tard.
Experienced,	éprouvés, m. p.	Is of no consequence,	n'importe.
To display,	montrer.	Noise,	bruit, m.
To call,	appeler.	To awake,	s'éveiller.

## ON THE GOVERNMENT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Some French conjunctions govern the verb in the *indicative mood*, others in the *subjunctive*, and some also in the *infinitive*.

The conjunctions which govern the verb in the *indicative mood* are :

<i>à condition que</i> , on condition that.	<i>néanmoins</i> , nevertheless.
<i>ainsi</i> , thus.	<i>ni</i> , neither, nor.
<i>ainsi que</i> ,	<i>non-seulement</i> , not only.
<i>de même que</i> ,	<i>ou</i> , or.
<i>à cause que</i> ,	<i>outre que</i> ,
<i>parceque</i> ,	<i>d'ailleurs</i> ,
<i>car</i> ,	<i>par conséquent</i> , consequently.
<i>à mesure que</i> , in proportion as.	<i>pendant que</i> ,
<i>après que</i> , after that, when.	<i>tandis que</i> ,
<i>au reste</i> , as for the rest.	<i>peut-être</i> , perhaps.
<i>attendu que</i> , as.	<i>pourquoi</i> ,
<i>autant que</i> , as much as.	<i>que</i> ,
<i>aussitôt que</i> ,	<i>que</i> , that.
<i>sitôt que</i> ,	<i>selon que</i> ,
<i>dès que</i> ,	<i>suivant que</i> ,
<i>d'abord que</i> ,	<i>surtout</i> , especially.
<i>d'autant que</i> , whereas, for as much as.	<i>si</i> , if.
<i>au lieu que</i> , whereas.	<i>sinon que</i> , except that.
<i>comme</i> , as.	<i>sinon</i> , else.
<i>comme si</i> , as if, as though.	<i>tant que</i> , as long as.
<i>depuis que</i> , since, ever since.	<i>toutefois</i> ,
<i>puisque</i> , since, as.	<i>pourtant</i> ,
<i>lorsque</i> ,	<i>cependant</i> ,
<i>quand</i> ,	<i>vu que</i> , seeing that.
<i>mais</i> , but,	<i>joint que</i> , added to that.
	<i>aussi long-temps</i> , as long as.

## CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Qu'</i> , that.	<i>jusqu'à ce que</i> , till.
<i>afin que</i> ,	<i>si tant est que</i> , if it be so.
<i>pour que</i> ,	<i>nonobstant que</i> ,
<i>avant que</i> , before.	<i>malgré que</i> ,
	<i>notwithstanding</i>
	<i>that, for all that.</i>

<i>non que,</i>	} not that.	<i>loin que,</i>	} far from.
<i>non pas que,</i>		<i>bien loin que,</i>	
<i>ce n'est pas que,</i>		<i>à la bonne heure que,</i>	
<i>quoique,</i>	} though, although.	<i>hors que,</i>	} save that.
<i>bien que,</i>		<i>hormis que,</i>	
<i>encore que,</i>		<i>excepté que,</i>	
<i>pourvu que,</i>	} provided.	<i>supposé que,</i>	} suppose that.
<i>moyennant que,</i>		<i>Dieu veuille que,</i>	
<i>au cas que,</i>		<i>plaise à Dieu que,</i>	
<i>en cas que,</i>	} in case that.	<i>plût à Dieu que,</i>	} would to God that.
<i>soit que,</i>		<i>à Dieu ne plaise</i>	
<i>sans que,</i>		<i>que,</i>	
<i>sinon que,</i>	} but that, except that.	<i>pour peu que,</i>	} if . . . ever so little.
		<i>si peu que,</i>	
<i>à moins que,</i>	} unless.	} these three conjunctions also require <i>ne</i> before the subjunctive.	
<i>de crainte que,</i>			
<i>de peur que,</i>			

The present of the infinitive is always used after the following conjunctions.

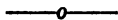
<i>afin de,</i>	} to, for, in order to.	<i>avant de,</i>	} before.
<i>de peur de,</i>		<i>avant que de,</i>	
<i>de crainte de,</i>		<i>à moins de,</i>	
<i>au lieu de,</i>	} instead.	<i>à moins que de,</i>	} unless.
<i>bien loin de,</i>		<i>plutôt que de,</i>	
<i>excepté de,</i>			

Observe that some prepositions are accidentally conjunctions ; as, *sans*, without : *pour*, in order to, etc. ; they require the next verb in the infinitive : as, He did it without thinking, *il l'a fait sans y penser*.

## REMARKS ON THE FOLLOWING RULES

ON THE

### GENDERS OF FRENCH NOUNS.



ON the difficulty found in the Genders of French Nouns, a great deal has been written by those who are engaged in teaching the French language to the English, but little has been effected, comparatively, to lessen or remove it. General methods and rules have, indeed, been given by former Grammarians, but so inaccurate or so intricate, as to produce no other effect than disgusting the minds of the learners, or impressing them with a notion (a very erroneous one) that an accurate knowledge of the genders forms an insuperable difficulty in the acquirement of the French language.

Among those estimable masters, who by dint of exertions and perseverance have, at last, succeeded in breaking through the trammels of the superannuated *routiniers*, and have, thereby, rendered the science of teaching modern languages and the labour of learning them more simple and efficacious, a few have endeavoured to render the French genders, so long looked upon as the *stumbling block* of the language, capable of being mastered by all. The success which attended their various endeavours, would have precluded the necessity of a further attempt, had any of them

entered into the subject as fully as its importance seems to demand.

It is the hope of being able to give a larger range of utility to these excellent works, that has induced me to publish in its present form, a *Treatise*, in which,—besides short and concise *Tables of Terminations* displaying the genders of all objects that in English are neuter—the DISTRIBUTION OF GENDERS will be fully entered into. In the *Second Part*, accordingly will be found :

1st. The designation of *Males* and *Females* of the same species.

2dly. All Nouns, the Gender of which varies, with their different acceptations.

3dly. All Nouns that are *Masculine* in one sense and *Feminine* in another, with their different meanings.

4thly. The formation of the *Feminine* of Nouns of various endings, such as *esclave, suisse, jumeau, sujet*, &c. &c.

5thly. All Nouns in *eur* with the three different ways of forming their feminine.

6thly. The Nouns which, though applied to females have no feminine; and, lastly, some remarks on a few Nouns which, though having their *Feminine*, yet are used in the *Masculine* in speaking of females.

# A T R E A T I S E

## ON THE

### GENDER OF FRENCH NOUNS AND SUBSTANTIVES.

---

#### PART THE FIRST.

---

##### PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

THERE are only *two* genders in French; all substantives, therefore, are masculine or feminine.

The masculine belongs to men, and all animals of the male kind.

The feminine belongs to women, and all animals of the female kind.

Among the appellative nouns, the following are *feminine*, but relate to both men and women :

His or Her Highness,	<i>Son Altesse.</i>
His or Her Grace,	<i>Sa Grandeur.</i>
His or Her Majesty,	<i>Sa Majesté.</i>
His Lordship, or Her Ladyship,	<i>Sa Seigneurie.</i>

to which may be added, a bail, *une caution* ; an acquaintance, *une connaissance*.

*Son Eminence, son Excellence, sa Sainteté*, are likewise feminine, and relate to men only.

Nouns of abuse are likewise feminine, and applicable to both men and women : as, a fool, a blockhead, a dupe ; *une bête, une mûchoire, une pécote, une dupe*, &c.

Some collective nouns relating to men, as *armée, gendarmerie, milice*, are feminine.

We say also,

an estafette,	<i>une estafette.</i>		a sentry,	<i>une sentinelle.</i>
---------------	-----------------------	--	-----------	------------------------

All appellative nouns belonging to women are feminine, except *un laidron*, an ugly young woman, and *un tendron*, a young lass.

---

##### GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE GENDERS OF FRENCH SUBSTANTIVES.

- Names of towns, colours, minerals, metals, are masculine.
- The names of trees, shrubs, are masculine ; except, briar, *ronce* ; thorn, *épine* ; holm-oak, *yeuse* ; vine, *vigne*.
- The names of days, months, seasons, are masculine.
- The names of mountains are masculine, except those used in the plural, as the Alps, *les Alpes* ; the Pyrenees, *les Pyrénées* ; the Cordilleras, *les Cordillères*.
- The names of winds are masculine ; except the north wind, *la Bise, la Tramontane*.
- The names of holydays are feminine ; except, Easter, *Pâques* ; Christmas, *Noël*.
- The names of virtues and qualities are feminine ; except, *le courage, le mérite*.



8. Nouns derived from the Latin are commonly of the same gender as in that language. The neuters in Latin are generally masculine in French, but there are many exceptions.

9. If the same name be used for male or female animals, such as an elephant, *un éléphant*; a fly, *une mouche*; a salmon, *un saumon*; a snake, *un serpent*, &c. the gender then, like that of inanimate objects, is known by the terminations. (See Part II.)

10. Adjectives and verbs substantively used are masculine.

OBSERVE.—There are among the exceptions to the rules on genders, nouns of *Arts* and *Sciences*, which it has been deemed unnecessary to give in this work. A few nouns seldom used, and all objectionable words, have likewise been left out.

### TERMINATIONS OF FRENCH SUBSTANTIVES.

The gender of substantives of some *animate*\* and of all *inanimate* objects, which in English are *neuter*, is distinguished in French by the termination of their names, as follows:

#### MASCULINE TERMINATIONS.

1. Words ending in a consonant are masculine; as,

*le bras,*

the arm

2. Those ending in  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} A \\ I \\ O \\ U \end{array} \right\}$  are masc., as  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{un opéra,} \\ \text{un écu,} \\ \text{un écho,} \\ \text{un bateau,} \end{array} \right.$

an opera  
a case  
an echo  
a boat

3. Words in *é* (not preceded by *s*) *un pré,* a meadow

4. Those in *me* (preceded by a vowel) *un crime,* a crime.

As well as those ending in—

5.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{AGN} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un présage,} \\ \text{AIRE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un repaire,} \\ \text{ANGE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un mélange,} \\ \text{APHE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{le télégraphe,} \\ \text{ASME} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un sarcasme,} \end{array} \right.$
- an omen  
a den  
a mixture  
the telegraph  
a sarcasm
6.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ÈDE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un remède,} \\ \text{ÈGE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un cortège,} \end{array} \right.$
- a remedy  
a cortege
7.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ICE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un sacrifice,} \\ \text{IDE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{le vide,} \\ \text{IGNE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un prestige,} \\ \text{ILE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un concile,} \\ \text{INGE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{du linge,} \\ \text{IRE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{le délire,} \\ \text{ISME} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{un sophisme,} \\ \text{ISTE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{le palmiste,} \\ \text{IVRE} \dots \dots \text{—} \dots \text{le livre,} \end{array} \right.$
- a sacrifice  
emptiness  
an illusion  
a council  
some linen  
delirium  
sophistry  
palmist  
the book

\* See above, paragraph 9.

8.	{	OGUE .. ..	ss ..	<i>le prologue,</i>	the prologue
		OIRE .. ..	— ..	<i>un observatoire,</i>	an observatory
		ON .. ..	— ..	<i>un canon,</i>	a cannon
		ORE .. ..	— ..	<i>un météore,</i>	a meteor
		ORDRE .. ..	— ..	<i>le désordre,</i>	disorder
		OXE .. ..	— ..	<i>un paradoxe,</i>	a paradox
9.		UGN .. ..	— ..	<i>le déluge,</i>	the flood
10.	{	BLE .. ..	— ..	<i>du sable,</i>	sand
		BRE .. ..	— ..	<i>du marbre,</i>	marble
		CLE .. ..	— ..	<i>un cercle,</i>	a circle
		CRE .. ..	— ..	<i>du sucre,</i>	sugar
		TRE .. ..	— ..	<i>un cloître,</i>	a cloister

## FEMININE TERMINATIONS.

The feminine terminations are :—

1.	{	ACE .. ..	ss ..	<i>la populace,</i>	the mob
		ADE .. ..	— ..	<i>la promenade,</i>	the walk
		AISON .. ..	— ..	<i>une maison,</i>	a house
		ANCE .. ..	— ..	<i>la constance,</i>	constancy
		ANSE .. ..	— ..	<i>la danse,</i>	dancing
		ANTE .. ..	— ..	<i>une plante,</i>	a plant
		AVE .. ..	— ..	<i>une cave,</i>	a cave, cellar
2.	{	ÉE .. ..	— ..	<i>la fumée,</i>	smoke
		ENCE .. ..	— ..	<i>la science,</i>	science
		ENSE .. ..	— ..	<i>la défense,</i>	the defence
		EUR .. ..	— ..	<i>une fleur,</i>	a flower
		ENTE .. ..	— ..	<i>une vente,</i>	a sale
3.	{	ION .. ..	— ..	<i>la religion,</i>	religion
		IE .. ..	— ..	<i>la vie,</i>	life
		IÈRE .. ..	— ..	<i>une chaumière,</i>	a cottage
		INE .. ..	— ..	<i>une épine,</i>	a thorn
		IQUE .. ..	— ..	<i>une boutique,</i>	a shop
4.	{	UDE .. ..	— ..	<i>la servitude,</i>	servitude
		URE .. ..	— ..	<i>la brûlure,</i>	the burn
5.		Té .. ..	— ..	<i>la santé,</i>	health
6.	{	ALLE .. ..	— ..	<i>de la ficelle,</i>	pack thread
		MME .. ..	— ..	<i>une pomme,</i>	an apple
		RRE .. ..	— ..	<i>de la terre,</i>	earth
		SSE .. ..	— ..	<i>la chasse,</i>	shooting, hunting
		TTE .. ..	— ..	<i>une botte,</i>	a boot

Lastly, most nouns ending with *e* mute, of any other terminations but those already given, are likewise feminine, as *une robe*, a gown; *une chaîne*, a chain.

## EXCEPTIONS TO THE PRECEDING TABLES.

## EXCEPTIONS TO THE MASCULINE TERMINATIONS.

Exceptions to the words ending in a consonant :—

<i>la brebis,</i>	the sheep	<i>l'iris,</i>	the iris
<i>la chair,</i>	the flesh	<i>la main,</i>	the hand
<i>la chaux,</i>	the lime	<i>la mer,</i>	the sea
<i>la clef,</i>	the key	<i>la mort,</i>	death
<i>la cour,</i>	the yard	<i>la nef,</i>	the nave
<i>la croix,</i>	the cross	<i>la noix,</i>	the walnut
<i>la cuiller,</i>	the spoon	<i>la nuit,</i>	the night
<i>la dent,</i>	the tooth	<i>la paix,</i>	peace
<i>la dot,</i>	the marriage portion	<i>la part,</i>	the portion
<i>la faim,</i>	the hunger	<i>la perdrix,</i>	the partridge
<i>la faux,</i>	the scythe	<i>la poix,</i>	the cobbler's wax
<i>la fin,</i>	the end	<i>la soif,</i>	the thirst
<i>la fois,</i>	the time	<i>la souris,</i>	the mouse
<i>la forêt,</i>	the forest	<i>la tour,</i>	the tower
<i>la gent,</i>	the nation, tribe, race	<i>la toux,</i>	the cough
<i>la harî,</i>	the halter	<i>la vis,</i>	the screw
		<i>la voix,</i>	the voice

And most words ending in *eur, ion, and aison.*

1. Exceptions to the masculine terminations *a, i, o, u.*

<i>l'après-midi,</i>	the afternoon	<i>l'eau,</i>	the water
<i>la fourmi,</i>	the ant	<i>la glu,</i>	the bird lime
<i>la foi,</i>	the faith	<i>la peau,</i>	the skin
<i>la loi,</i>	the law	<i>la tribu,</i>	the tribe
<i>la merci,</i>	the mercy	<i>la vertu,</i>	virtue
<i>la paroi,</i>	the wall, partition		

3. Exceptions to the masculine words ending in *é* accented (not preceded by *f*).

<i>l'amitié,</i>	friendship	<i>une moitié,</i>	a half
<i>l'ennemi,</i>	enmity	<i>la pitié,</i>	pity

4. Exceptions to the masculine words ending in *me*, preceded by a vowel.

<i>l'ame,</i>	the soul	<i>la paume,</i>	the palm (of one's hand)
<i>une dame,</i>	a pawn	<i>l'amertume,</i>	bitterness
<i>la lame,</i>	the blade	<i>la brume,</i>	sea fogs
<i>la rame,</i>	the oar	<i>la coutume,</i>	the custom
<i>la trame,</i>	the plot	<i>l'écume,</i>	the foam
<i>la Bohême,</i>	Bohemia	<i>l'enclume,</i>	the anvil
<i>la crème,</i>	the cream	<i>la plume,</i>	the pen, or feather.

5. Exceptions to the words ending in *age, aire, ange, apha :*

## AGE

<i>la cage,</i>	the cage,	<i>une plage,</i>	a flat shore, sandy beach
<i>une image,</i>	an image,	<i>la rage,</i>	the rage, madness
<i>la nage,</i>	swimming,		
<i>la page,</i>	the page,		

## AIRE

<i>l'affaire,</i>	the affair	<i>la haire,</i>	sack-cloth
<i>une aire,</i>	the nest of a bird of prey	<i>la glaire,</i>	slime, the white of a raw egg
<i>la chaire,</i>	the pulpit	<i>une paire,</i>	a pair
<i>une circulaire,</i>	a circular	<i>la statuaire,</i>	statuary
<i>une grammaire,</i>	a grammar		

## ANGE

<i>la fange,</i>	the slime	<i>une orange,</i>	an orange,
<i>la frange,</i>	the fringe	<i>une losange,</i>	a lozenge
<i>une grange,</i>	a barn	<i>une phalange,</i>	a phalanx
<i>la louange,</i>	praise	<i>la vendange,</i>	vintage

## APHE

<i>une épitaphe,</i>	an epitaph	<i>l'orthographe,</i>	orthography
<i>une épigraphe,</i>	an epigraph		

6. Exceptions to the words ending in *ède, ège*.

## ÈDE

<i>la Suède,</i>	Sweden
------------------	--------

## ÈGE

<i>l'allège,</i>	a lighter, tender	<i>la drège,</i>	malt
<i>la Norvège,</i>	Norway		

7. Exceptions to the words ending in *ice, ide, ige, ile, ire, iste*.

## ICE

<i>une armistice,</i>	a truce	<i>une lice,</i>	a list for combats
<i>l'avarice,</i>	avarice	<i>la malice,</i>	malice
<i>une cicatrice,</i>	a scar	<i>la milice,</i>	the militia
<i>les délices,</i>	delights	<i>une notice,</i>	a notice
<i>des épices,</i>	spices	<i>une office,</i>	a pantry, larder
<i>des immondices,</i>	filth, dirt	<i>la police,</i>	the police
<i>une injustice,</i>	an injustice	<i>les prémices,</i>	the first-fruits
<i>la justice,</i>	justice		

## IDE

<i>la bride,</i>	the bridle	<i>la guide,</i>	the rein
<i>une caniharide,</i>	a Spanish fly	<i>une pyramide,</i>	a pyramid
<i>une égide,</i>	a buckler	<i>une ride,</i>	a wrinkle

## IGE

<i>la tige,</i>	the stalk
-----------------	-----------

## ILE

<i>de l'argile,</i>	some clay	<i>une pile,</i>	a pile, heap
<i>de la bile,</i>	some bile	<i>une tuile,</i>	a tile
<i>une file,</i>	a row, rank, file	<i>une vigile,</i>	the eve of a holyday
<i>une île,</i>	an island		

## IRE

<i>de la cire,</i>	some wax	<i>une satire,</i>	a satire
--------------------	----------	--------------------	----------

## ISTE

<i>de la baliste,</i>	some cambric	<i>une liste,</i>	a list
<i>la baliste,</i>	the balista	<i>la piste,</i>	the track of the foot

8. Exceptions to the words ending in *ogue, otre, on, ore*.

## OGUE

<i>une drogue,</i>	a drug	<i>une synagogue,</i>	a synagogue
<i>une églogue,</i>	an eclogue	<i>la vogue,</i>	the fashion
<i>une pirogue,</i>	a canoe		

## OIRE

<i>une armoire,</i>	a closet	<i>la mémoire,</i>	the memory
<i>une bassinoire,</i>	a warming-pan	<i>la nageoire,</i>	the fin
<i>une décroissoire,</i>	a rubbing-brush	<i>la passoire,</i>	the cullender
<i>une écritoire,</i>	a writing-desk	<i>une poire,</i>	a pear
<i>une foire,</i>	a fair	<i>la ridoire,</i>	the strickle
<i>la gloire,</i>	glory	<i>la victoire,</i>	the victory
<i>une histoire,</i>	a history	<i>une bouilloire,</i>	a tea-kettle
<i>la mâchoire,</i>	the jaw		

## ON

<i>la boisson,</i>	the drink	<i>la leçon,</i>	the lesson
<i>une chanson,</i>	a song	<i>la moisson,</i>	the harvest
<i>une cloison,</i>	a partition	<i>la mousson,</i>	the trade wind
<i>la cuisson,</i>	the cooking	<i>une pamoison,</i>	a fainting fit
<i>la façon,</i>	the fashion	<i>une prison,</i>	a prison
<i>la foison,</i>	the abundance	<i>la rançon,</i>	the ransom
<i>la garnison,</i>	the garrison	<i>la toison,</i>	the fleece
<i>une guérison,</i>	a recovery	<i>la trahison,</i>	the treason

## ORE

<i>l'aurore,</i>	the dawn	<i>une métaphore,</i>	a metaphor
------------------	----------	-----------------------	------------

9. No exceptions to words ending in *uge*.10. Exceptions to the words ending in *ble, bre, cle, cre, tre*.

## BLE

<i>la bible,</i>	the bible	<i>une étable,</i>	a stable (for cattle)
<i>une charuble,</i>	a sort of cope	<i>une fable,</i>	a fable
<i>une cible,</i>	a target	<i>une table,</i>	a table

## BRE

<i>une chambre,</i>	a room	<i>une ombre,</i>	a shadow, shade
<i>une fibre,</i>	a fibre	<i>les ténèbres,</i>	darkness

## CLE

<i>des béciècles,</i>	spectacles	<i>la débécle,</i>	the breaking of the ice
-----------------------	------------	--------------------	-------------------------

## CRE

<i>une ancre,</i>	an anchor	<i>de l'encre,</i>	some ink
-------------------	-----------	--------------------	----------

## TRE

<i>une dartre,</i>	a tetter	<i>une mitre,</i>	a mitre
<i>la dextre,</i>	the right hand	<i>une montre,</i>	a watch
<i>une épître,</i>	an epistle	<i>une piastre,</i>	a Spanish coin
<i>une fenêtre,</i>	a window	<i>une poutre,</i>	a beam
<i>une guêtre,</i>	a gaiter	<i>une rencontre,</i>	a meeting
<i>une huitre,</i>	an oyster	<i>une vitre,</i>	a pane of glass
<i>une lettre,</i>	a letter		

## EXCEPTIONS TO THE FEMININE TERMINATIONS.

1. Exceptions to the words ending in *ace*, *ade*, *ave*.

		ACE	
	<i>un espace,</i>		a space
		ADE	
<i>un grade,</i>	a rank	<i>un stade,</i>	a furlong
		AVE	
	<i>un conclave,</i>		a conclave

2. Exceptions to the words ending in *de*, *ence*, *eur*.

ÉE			
<i>Lathénée,</i>	the athensæum	<i>un hyménée,</i>	a hymen
<i>un caducée,</i>	a caduceus	<i>un lycée,</i>	a lyceum
<i>un camée,</i>	a cameo	<i>un mausolée,</i>	a mausoleum
<i>le colisée,</i>	the Colisæum	<i>un musée,</i>	a museum
<i>l'élysée,</i>	the Elysium	<i>un trophée,</i>	a trophy
<i>l'empyrée,</i>	the Empyreum	<i>le ren-de-chaussée,</i>	the ground-floor

ENCE	
<i>le silence,</i>	silence

EUR			
<i>le bonheur,</i>	the happiness	<i>l'équateur,</i>	the equator
<i>la choufleur,</i>	the cauliflower	<i>l'honneur,</i>	the honor,
<i>le cœur,</i>	the heart	<i>l'intérieur,</i>	the inside, interior
<i>le chœur,</i>	the chorus	<i>le labeur,</i>	the labour
<i>le déshonneur,</i>	the dishonor	<i>le malheur,</i>	the misfortune
<i>l'extérieur,</i>	the exterior	<i>les pleurs,</i>	the tears

3. Exceptions to the words ending in *ion*, *ie*, *ière*, *ique*.

ION			
<i>un bastion,</i>	a bastion	<i>le talion,</i>	the talion,
<i>un brinborion,</i>	a toy, bauble	<i>le septentrion,</i>	the north
<i>un champion,</i>	a champion	<i>un scorpion,</i>	a scorpion
<i>un lampion,</i>	a small lamp	<i>le scion,</i>	the scion, sprig
<i>un million,</i>	a million	<i>un taudion,</i>	a pig-sty, a dirty place
<i>un pion,</i>	a pawn at chess		

and a few technical terms seldom used.

IE			
<i>le foie,</i>	the liver	<i>un incendie,</i>	a conflagration, a fire
<i>le génie,</i>	the genius	<i>un parapluie,</i>	an umbrella

IÈRE			
<i>le cimetière,</i>	the church yard	<i>le derrière,</i>	the back

IQUE			
<i>un attique,</i>	an attic	<i>un cantique,</i>	a spiritual song
<i>un caïque,</i>	a small Turkish boat	<i>un distique,</i>	a distich
		<i>un émétique,</i>	an emetic

<i>un panégyrique,</i>	an eulogium	<i>un tropique,</i>	the tropic
<i>un pique,</i>	a spade at cards	<i>un spécifique,</i>	a specific
<i>un portique,</i>	a portico	<i>le viatique,</i>	the sacrament given
<i>un topique,</i>	a topic		to a dying person

4. Exceptions to the words ending in *ude, ure.*

## UDE

<i>le prélude,</i>	the prelude
--------------------	-------------

## URE

<i>un augure,</i>	an omen	<i>le murmure,</i>	the murmur
<i>le mercure,</i>	mercury	<i>le parjure,</i>	the perjury

5. Exceptions to the words ending in *té.*

## TÉ

<i>un aparté,</i>	the speech an actor	<i>un été,</i>	a summer
	says aside	<i>un pâté,</i>	a pie
<i>le bénévolé,</i>	grace	<i>un traité,</i>	a treaty
<i>un comité,</i>	a committee	<i>un arrêté,</i>	a resolution
<i>le côté,</i>	the side	<i>du précipité,</i>	some precipitate
<i>un comté,</i>	a county	<i>du velouté,</i>	velvet-lace

6. Exceptions to the words ending in *lle, mme, rre, sse, tte.*

## LLE

<i>du chèvrefeuille,*</i>	honey suckle	<i>un porte-feuille,</i>	a pocket-book
<i>un codicille,</i>	a codicil	<i>un quadrille,</i>	a quadrille
<i>un intervalle,</i>	an interval	<i>un vaudeville,</i>	a play with couplets
<i>un libelle,</i>	a libel	<i>du vermicelle,</i>	vermicelli
<i>un mille,</i>	a mile	<i>un violoncelle,</i>	a violoncello

## MME

<i>un dilemme,</i>	a dilemma	<i>un programme,</i>	a program, syllabus
<i>un somme,</i>	a nap	<i>un parallélogramme,</i>	a parallelogram
<i>un gramme,</i>	a French weight	<i>un kilogramme,†</i>	a French weight

## RRE

<i>du beurre,</i>	butter	<i>le tintamarre,</i>	a thundering noise
<i>un cimeterre,</i>	a sword	<i>le tonnerre,</i>	the thunder
<i>du lierre,</i>	ivy	<i>un verre,</i>	a glass
<i>un parricrre,</i>	a pit, grass-plot		

## SSE

<i>un carrosse,</i>	a carriage	<i>le Permesse,</i>	a river of Bœotia
<i>un colosse,</i>	a colossus		consecrated to the
<i>le Parnasse,</i>	Parnassus		Muses

## TTE

<i>un amulette,</i>	a talisman, amulet	<i>un squelette,</i>	a skeleton
<i>un casse-noisettes,</i>	a nut-cracker	<i>un tire-botte,</i>	a boot-jack

\* Compound substantives are masculine; a few only, as examples, will therefore be given here.

† And a few others in *gramme* little used.

Exceptions to the feminine nouns ending with an *e* mute, of any other termination but those already given.

<i>un acte,</i>	an act	<i>un crabe,</i>	a crab
<i>un adverb,</i>	an adverb	<i>le crâne,</i>	the cranium, skull
<i>un angle,</i>	an angle	<i>le cratère,</i>	the crater
<i>un antidote,</i>	an antidote	<i>du crépe,</i>	some crape
<i>un apophthegme,</i>	a maxim,	<i>le crépuscule,</i>	twilight
<i>un arbuste,</i>	a shrub	<i>un cube,</i>	a cube
<i>un aromate,</i>	an aromat	<i>du cuivre,</i>	copper
<i>un astérisque,</i>	an asterisk	<i>le culte,</i>	worship
<i>un asthme,</i>	an asthma	<i>un cylindre,</i>	a cylinder
<i>un asyle,</i>	an asylum		
<i>un automate,</i>	an automaton	<i>un dédale,</i>	a labyrinth
<i>un axe,</i>	an axis	<i>un dialecte,</i>	a dialect
		<i>un dièse,</i>	a diesis
<i>un baigne,</i>	a bagnio	<i>un diocèse,</i>	a diocese
<i>un baptistère,</i>	a register for christening	<i>un disque,</i>	a disk
		<i>le dividende,</i>	the dividend
<i>du bronze,</i>	bronze	<i>le divorce,</i>	divorcee
<i>un bouge,</i>	a closet	<i>un dogme,</i>	a dogma
<i>un branle,</i>	a brawl	<i>un domaine,</i>	a domain
<i>un buste,</i>	a bust	<i>le doute,</i>	the doubt,
		<i>un drachme,</i>	a drachm
<i>un cadavre,</i>	a corpse	<i>de l'ébène,</i>	ebony
<i>un cadre,</i>	a frame	<i>de l'ellébore,</i>	hellebore,
<i>un calice,</i>	a chalice	<i>un éloge,</i>	an eulogy, praise
<i>le calme,</i>	the calm	<i>un épisode,</i>	an episode
<i>du camphre,</i>	camphor	<i>un érysipèle,</i>	an erysipelas
<i>le Capitole,</i>	the Capitol	<i>un esclandre,</i>	a bustle
<i>le caractère,</i>	temper, character	<i>un escompte,</i>	a discount
<i>le casque,</i>	a helmet	<i>un exemple,</i>	an example
<i>un catafalque,</i>	a funeral decoration	<i>un exergue,</i>	an exergue
<i>un catharrhe,</i>	a severe cold	<i>un exode,</i>	an exodus
<i>un cautère,</i>	a cautery	<i>un exorde,</i>	an exordium
<i>un ceste,</i>	a cestus		
<i>du chanvre,</i>	hemp,	<i>le faite,</i>	the summit
<i>un chambrane,</i>	a mantle-piece	<i>le faste,</i>	ostentation
<i>un chiffre,</i>	a cypher	<i>un fîfre,</i>	fifer
<i>du cidre,</i>	some cider	<i>du filigrane,</i>	filigrane
<i>un cierge,</i>	a wax-taper	<i>un fleuve,</i>	a large river
<i>un cigare,</i>	a cigar	<i>un fluide,</i>	fluid
<i>un cirque,</i>	a circus		
<i>un cloaque,</i>	a sink	<i>du genévre,</i>	gin
<i>un coche,</i>	a caravan	<i>un genre,</i>	gender
<i>un code,</i>	a code	<i>un germe,</i>	bud
<i>un coffre,</i>	a trunk	<i>un geste,</i>	a gesture
<i>un colloque,</i>	a conference	<i>un gîte,</i>	a home
<i>le commerce,</i>	commerce, trade	<i>un glaive,</i>	a sword,
<i>un compte,</i>	an account	<i>un globe,</i>	a globe
<i>un conciliabule,</i>	a conventicle	<i>un globule,</i>	a globule
<i>un cône,</i>	a cone	<i>un golphe,</i>	a gulf
<i>un conte,</i>	a tale	<i>un gouffre,</i>	a whirlpool
<i>un contraste,</i>	a contrast	<i>un greffe,</i>	a court of records
<i>le contrôle,</i>	a control	<i>un groupe,</i>	a group
<i>le cothurne,</i>	the buskin	<i>un gymnase,</i>	a gymnasium
<i>le coude,</i>	the elbow		



<i>le havre,</i>	the haven	<i>un pampre,</i>	a vine-branch with its leaves
<i>un hémisphère,</i>	an hemisphere	<i>un panache,</i>	a plume, bunch of feathers
<i>un hémistiché</i>	an hemistich	<i>un parachute,</i>	a parachute
<i>un horoscope,</i>	an horoscope	<i>un parallèle,</i>	a parallel
<i>un insecte,</i>	on insect	<i>un participe,</i>	a participle
<i>un isthme,</i>	an isthmus	<i>un patrimoine,</i>	a patrimony
<i>un interrègne,</i>	an interregnum	<i>le pécule,</i>	a competence, savings
<i>un jeune</i>	fast	<i>un peigne,</i>	a comb
<i>un kiosque,</i>	a pavilion	<i>un péne,</i>	a bolt
<i>un labyrinthe,</i>	a labyrinth	<i>un pentagone,</i>	a pentagon
<i>du laque,</i>	lacker, a kind of China varnish	<i>un pétale,</i>	a petal
<i>un logographe,</i>	a logograph	<i>le peuple,</i>	the people
<i>le luxe,</i>	luxury	<i>un phare,</i>	a light-house
<i>le Louvre,</i>	the Louvre	<i>un phénomène,</i>	a phenomenon
<i>du madère,</i>	madeira	<i>un platane,</i>	a plane-tree
<i>un malaise,</i>	an unpleasant feeling	<i>un poêle,</i>	a stove
<i>un manche,</i>	a handle	<i>du potare,</i>	pepper
<i>les manes,</i>	the ghosts, shades	<i>un pole,</i>	a pole
<i>un manifeste,</i>	a manifesto	<i>un polygone,</i>	a polygon
<i>le manque,</i>	the want	<i>un polype,</i>	a polypus
<i>un martyr,</i>	a martyr	<i>un poste,</i>	a post, station
<i>un masque,</i>	a mask	<i>un pouce,</i>	a thumb, inch
<i>un mensonge,</i>	a falsehood	<i>un préambule,</i>	a preamble
<i>le mérite,</i>	merit	<i>un précepte,</i>	a precept
<i>un microscope,</i>	a microscope	<i>un presbytère,</i>	a parsonage
<i>le ministère,</i>	the ministry	<i>un prétexte,</i>	a pretext
<i>un mode,</i>	a mood	<i>un principe,</i>	a principle
<i>un modèle,</i>	a model	<i>le prône,</i>	a sermon
<i>un môle,</i>	a mole, pier	<i>un protocole,</i>	a protocol
<i>un monastère,</i>	a monastery	<i>un proverbe,</i>	a proverb
<i>le monde,</i>	the world	<i>un quaterne,</i>	a quatern
<i>un monosyllabe,</i>	a monosyllable	<i>un quinceunx,</i>	a quincunx
<i>un monticule,</i>	a hillock	<i>le rde,</i>	ratting in the throat
<i>le monopole,</i>	a monopoly	<i>un règne,</i>	a reign
<i>un moule,</i>	a mould	<i>du relâche,</i>	intermission
<i>un muffle,</i>	a musle	<i>un reproche,</i>	a reproach
<i>un myrthe,</i>	a myrtle	<i>le reste,</i>	the remainder
<i>le mystère,</i>	the mystery	<i>un rêve,</i>	a dream
<i>le négoce</i>	trade	<i>un réverbère,</i>	a street lamp
<i>un obélisque,</i>	an obelisk	<i>le rythme,</i>	a rhythmus
<i>un ongle,</i>	a nail	<i>le ridicule,</i>	ridicule
<i>un opusculé,</i>	an opusculé	<i>un rite,</i>	a rite
<i>un orbe,</i>	an orb	<i>un risque,</i>	a risk
<i>un orbite,</i>	an orbit	<i>le sacerdoce,</i>	priesthood
<i>un organe,</i>	an organ	<i>un saule,</i>	a willow
<i>un ovale</i>	an oval	<i>un satellite,</i>	a satellite
<i>un pacte,</i>	an agreement, compact	<i>le scandale,</i>	a scandal
		<i>un scrupule,</i>	a scruple
		<i>du seigle,</i>	rye
		<i>le sexe,</i>	the sex
		<i>un signe,</i>	a sign

<i>un site,</i>	a site	<i>un type,</i>	a type
<i>un soliloque,</i>	a soliloquy	<i>un ukase,</i>	a Russian edict, proclamation
<i>un songe,</i>	a dream	<i>un uniforme,</i>	regimentals, a uni- form
<i>un somme,</i>	a nap	<i>un ulcère,</i>	an ulcer
<i>un souffle,</i>	a breath	<i>le vacarme,</i>	thundering noise
<i>du soufre,</i>	brimstone, sulphur	<i>le vague,</i>	the vague
<i>un style,</i>	a style	<i>un verbe,</i>	a verb
<i>un symbole,</i>	a symbol	<i>un vestibule,</i>	a vestibule
<i>le synode,</i>	the synod	<i>du vinaigre,</i>	vinegar
		<i>un voile,</i>	a veil
		<i>un vote,</i>	a vote
<i>un télescope,</i>	a telescope	<i>le zèle,</i>	zeal
<i>un temple,</i>	a temple	<i>le zéphyre,</i>	the zephyr
<i>un terme,</i>	a term	<i>le zodiaque,</i>	the Zodiac
<i>un texte,</i>	a text		
<i>du trèfle,</i>	trefoil		
<i>un triangle,</i>	a triangle		
<i>un triomphe,</i>	a triumph		
<i>un trône,</i>	a throne		
<i>un tube,</i>	a tube		
<i>le tumulte,</i>	a tumult		

## PART THE SECOND.

## \*DISTRIBUTION OF GENDERS.

## I.

The French designate the male and the female of the same species in three different ways;

1st. By different and particular names for males and females, as the following show :—

MALES.		FEMALES.	
boar, or boar-pig,	<i>verrat</i>	sow,	<i>truie</i>
brother,	<i>frère</i>	sister	<i>sœur</i>
bull,	<i>taureau</i>	cow,	<i>vache</i>
capon,	<i>chapon</i>	a young fat hen,	<i>poularde</i>
cock,	<i>coq</i>	hen,	<i>poule</i>
drone,	<i>bourdon</i>	bee,	<i>abeille</i>
gander,	<i>jars</i>	goose,	<i>oie</i>
hare,	<i>lièvre</i>	doe-hare or cony,	<i>hase</i>
he goat,	<i>bouc</i>	goat,	<i>chèvre</i>
horse,	<i>cheval</i>	mare,	<i>jument</i>
man,	<i>homme</i>	woman,	<i>femme</i>
monkey,	<i>singe</i>	female ape,	<i>guenon</i>
pig,	<i>cochon</i>	sow,	<i>truie</i>
ram,	<i>bélier</i>	ewe,	<i>brebis</i>
sheep,	<i>mouton</i>	sheep,	<i>brebis</i>
stag,	<i>cerf</i>	the female of the biche	
		stag,	
stallion,	<i>étalon</i>	mare,	<i>cavale</i>
steed,	<i>coursier</i>	a small ambling	<i>haquenée</i>
		mare,	
wild-boar,	<i>sanglier</i>	a wild-sow,	<i>laie</i>

\* Given here in the same order as in the *Grammaire Nationale*.

2dly. By one single word, varying only in its termination, as—

MALES.		FEMALES.	
ass,	<i>âne</i>	she-ass,	<i>anasse</i>
bear,	<i>ours</i>	she-bear,	<i>ourse</i>
buck,	<i>daim</i>	doe,	<i>daine</i>
cat,	<i>chat</i>	puss,	<i>chatte</i>
canary-bird,	<i>serin</i>	canary,	<i>serine</i>
chicken,	<i>poulet</i>	a young hen,	<i>poulette</i>
colt,	<i>poulain</i>	she-colt,	<i>poulliche</i>
dog,	<i>chien</i>	bitch,	<i>chienne</i>
drake,	<i>canard</i>	duck,	<i>cane</i>
fawn,	<i>faon</i>	fawn,	<i>faone</i>
god,	<i>dieu</i>	goddess,	<i>déesse</i>
lamb,	<i>agneau</i>	lamb,	<i>agnelle</i>
lion,	<i>lion</i>	lioness,	<i>lionne</i>
mule,	<i>mulet</i>	she-mule,	<i>mule</i>
nightingale,	<i>rossignol</i>	nightingale,	<i>rossignolette</i>
parrot,	<i>perroquet</i>	hen-parrot,	<i>perruche</i>
peacock,	<i>paon</i>	pea-hen,	<i>paone</i>
pheasant,	<i>faisan</i>	hen-pheasant,	<i>faisane</i>
rabbit,	<i>lapin</i>	doe-rabit,	<i>lapine</i>
roe-buck,	<i>chevreuil</i>	roe,	<i>chevrete</i>
tiger,	<i>tigre</i>	tigress,	<i>tigresse</i>
wolf,	<i>loup</i>	she-wolf,	<i>louve</i>

3dly. By using (as it is most often done) the same word for the male or female, in which case the word is either masculine or feminine, according to its termination, and without considering the sex.\*

#### EXAMPLES.

#### QUADRUPEDS.

MASCULINE FOR BOTH MALE AND FEMALE.		FEMININE FOR BOTH MALE AND FEMALE.	
a buffalo,	<i>un buffalo</i>	a giraffe,	<i>une girafe</i>
a camel,	<i>un chameau</i>	an hyena,	<i>une hyène</i>
a castor,	<i>un castor</i>	a mole,	<i>une taupe</i>
an elephant,	<i>un éléphant</i>	a mouse,	<i>une souris</i>
an hedge-hog,	<i>un hérisson</i>	a panther,	<i>une panthère</i>
a leopard,	<i>un léopard</i>	a tortoise,	<i>une tortue</i>
a rhinoceros,	<i>un rhinocéros</i>	a weasle,	<i>une belette</i>
a squirrel,	<i>un écureuil</i>		

#### BIRDS.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
a blackbird,	<i>un merle</i>	a lark,	<i>une alouette</i>
an hawk,	<i>un épervier</i>	a magpie,	<i>une pie</i>
a jackdaw,	<i>un geai</i>	an ostrich,	<i>une autruche</i>
a nightingale,	<i>un rossignol</i>	a partridge,	<i>une perdrix</i>
an owl,	<i>un hibou</i>	a swallow,	<i>une hirondelle</i>
a swan,	<i>un cygne</i>	a stork,	<i>une cigogne</i>
a vulture,	<i>un vautour</i>	a titmouse,	<i>une mésange</i>

\* When, in speaking of these animals, we wish to distinguish their sex, we are obliged to designate it by adding the word *male* or *female*; thus we say:—*le mâle de la tortue, la femelle de l'éléphant*; or *l'éléphant femelle; la tortue male, &c.*

## F I S H.

## MASCULINE.

a herring,	<i>un hareng</i>
a mackerel,	<i>un maquereau</i>
a pike,	<i>un brochet</i>
a salmon,	<i>un saumon</i>
a turbot,	<i>un turbot</i>

## FEMININE.

a brot,	<i>une limande</i>
a carp,	<i>une carpe</i>
an eel,	<i>une anguille</i>
a perch,	<i>une perche</i>
a shellfish,	<i>une moule</i>
a sole,	<i>une sole</i>
a whale,	<i>une baleine</i>

## A M P H I B I O U S.

## MASCULINE.

a chameleon,	<i>un caméléon</i>
a crocodile,	<i>un crocodile</i>
a lizard,	<i>un lézard</i>
a serpent,	<i>un serpent</i>
a toad,	<i>un crapaud</i>

## FEMININE.

an adder,	<i>une vipère</i>
a frog,	<i>une grenouille</i>
a tortoise,	<i>une tortue</i>

## I N S E C T S.

## MASCULINE.

a butterfly,	<i>un papillon</i>
a cockchafer,	<i>un hanneton</i>

## FEMININE.

an ant,	<i>une fourmi</i>
a spider,	<i>une araignée</i>

## II.

WORDS THE GENDER OF WHICH VARIES, AND THEREFORE OFFERS  
SOME DIFFICULTY.

## AIGLE.

## MASCULINE.

- AIGLE is masculine,
1. When used to designate the male of the bird of prey known by that name.
  2. When applied to a man of genius.
  3. In speaking of the Germanic empire.
  4. When used as the name of the largest size of board and paper.

## FEMININE.

- AIGLE is feminine,
1. When used to designate the female of the bird of prey.
  2. As a term of heraldry, a sign, or constellation.
  3. Whenever it indicates a species of fish.

## AMOUR.

AMOUR is masculine,

1. When used in the singular.\*
2. When used in reference to those species of little genii, which, according to the mythology of the Greeks, attended Beauty.
3. In speaking of any sort of love, such as filial love, conjugal love, &c.

AMOUR is feminine in the sense of passion.

---

\* In the plural, it may be masculine or feminine, according to the sense in which it is used.

## CHOSE.

## MASCULINE.

QUELQUE CHOSE used in the sense of something, is always masculine.

## FEMININE.

QUELQUE CHOSE in the sense of *whatever the thing may be* is always feminine.

## COUPLE.

COUPLE is masculine when it designates two animated beings, *united by their will*, by any feeling whatever, or any other cause that makes them act in concert.

UN COUPLE de pigeons suffisent pour peupler une volière.

UN COUPLE d'amis (that is two men united by friendship).

COUPLE is feminine when it implies two beings of the same species, animated or not, *united accidentally*, and without any participation of the will.

UNE COUPLE de pigeons ne sont pas suffisants pour le dîner de six personnes.

UNE COUPLE d'amis (that is to say two individuals, each deserving the name of friend).

## DELICE.

DÉLICE is masculine in the singular.

DÉLICE is feminine in the plural.

## FOUDRE.

FOUDRE may be of both genders, whether used figuratively or not; but it must necessarily be masculine when used in the sense of a *great orator*, or *warrior*.

## GENS.

The adjective qualifying the word GENS is masculine,

1. When it follows, as: *les gens INSTRUITS*; *les gens VICIEUX*.

2. When one precedes, which ends in the same manner in the masculine and feminine, as: *tous les HONNÊTES gens ne sont pas CONNUS*.

The adjective qualifying the word GENS is feminine,

1. When it precedes,\* as is particularly the case when speaking in irony, or blame, or when expressing an idea that may be taken in bad part,† as *voilà de bien VICIEUXES gens*. *Les BONNES gens sont bavards*.

When the adjectives *tout*, *certain*, *quel*, *tel*, immediately precede the word *gens*, those adjectives are put in the feminine; as: — *CERTAINES gens*; *QUELLES gens êtes-vous?*

## ORGE.

ORGE is masculine only when coupled with the words *mondé*, *perlé*, as:—  
*de l'orge mondé*,  
*de l'orge perlé*.

ORGE is feminine except in the cases just mentioned.

## ORGUE.

ORGUE is masculine when used in the singular.

ORGUE is feminine when used in the plural.‡

\* Except, as mentioned in the masculine column, those which have the same termination for both genders.

† In other cases the masculine is preferable, as:—*Ce sont des gens très bons*. If any word intervenes between, the masculine must be used, as:—*Certains honnêtes gens*; *quels braves gens*!

‡ When used in the plural, but preceded by the expression *un des*, the masculine must be preferred; thus we should say: *c'est un des plus beaux orgues que je connaisse*.

## III.

OF SUBSTANTIVES THAT ARE MASCULINE IN ONE SENSE AND FEMININE IN ANOTHER.

## LIST OF NOUNS

MASCULINE IN ONE SENSE,		AND FEMININE IN ANOTHER.	
<i>un aide,</i>	an assistant	<i>une aide,</i>	assistance
<i>un aigle,</i>	an eagle	<i>une aigle,</i>	a Roman standard
<i>un aune,</i>	an alder-tree	<i>une aune,</i>	an ell
<i>un barbe,</i>	a Barbary horse	<i>une barbe,</i>	a beard
<i>un couple,</i>	a couple	<i>une couple,</i>	a brace, a pair
<i>un crêpe,</i>	a mourning hat-band	<i>une crêpe,</i>	a pancake
<i>un enseigne,</i>	an ensign	<i>une enseigne,</i>	a sign
<i>un espace,</i>	a space	<i>une espace,</i>	a space (a small piece of metal used in printing)
<i>un exemple,</i>	an example	<i>une exemple,</i>	a copy for writing
<i>un forêt,</i>	a gimlet	<i>une forêt,</i>	a forest
<i>un greffe,</i>	a court of records	<i>une greffe,</i>	grafting, a scion
<i>un guide,</i>	a guide	<i>une guide,</i>	a rein
<i>un hymne,</i>	a solemn song	<i>une hymne,</i>	a hymn sung at church
<i>du jufube,</i>	the fruit so called	<i>de la jufube,</i>	the paste made of the fruit
<i>un livre,</i>	a book	<i>une livre,</i>	a pound
<i>un manche,</i>	the handle of a tool	<i>une manche,</i>	a sleeve
<i>un manœuvre,</i>	a mason's man	<i>une manœuvre,</i>	a manœuvre, military evolution, trick
<i>un mémoir,</i>	a bill, a memoir	<i>une mémoir,</i>	a memory
<i>un mode,</i>	a mood	<i>une mode,</i>	a fashion
<i>un moule,</i>	a mould, cast	<i>une moule,</i>	a shell-fish, muscle
<i>un mousse,</i>	a ship-boy	<i>une mousse,</i>	moss (a plant)
<i>un œuvre,</i>	a work in lofty style; also when applied to the works of a musician	<i>une œuvre,</i>	a work in the usual application of the word
<i>un office,</i>	office, charge, public worship	<i>une office,</i>	a pantry, a servants' hall
<i>un page,</i>	a page of a prince	<i>une page,</i>	a page in a book
<i>un paillasse,</i>	a merry-andrew	<i>une paillasse,</i>	a straw bed
<i>Pâques,</i>	Easter-day	<i>la Pâque,</i>	the passover
<i>un parallèle,</i>	a parallel	<i>une parallèle,</i>	a parallel line
<i>un pendule,</i>	a pendulum	<i>une pendule,</i>	a clock (in a house)
<i>un période,</i>	an indefinite space of time	<i>une période,</i>	a period, a complete sentence
<i>un pique,</i>	a spade (at cards)	<i>une pique,</i>	a pike
<i>un poêle,</i>	a stove	<i>une poêle,</i>	a frying-pan
<i>un poste,</i>	a post	<i>une poste,</i>	a post-office, two leagues
<i>le pourpre,</i>	purple colour, spotted-feret	<i>la pourpre,</i>	purple dye, regal dignity

MASCULINE IN ONE SENSE,		FEMININE IN ANOTHER.	
<i>un remise,</i>	a glass-coach	<i>une remise,</i>	a remittance, a coach-house
<i>du réglisse,</i>	liquorice (the juice extracted from the plant)	<i>de la réglisse,</i>	liquorice (a plant)
<i>un satyre,</i>	a satyr	<i>une satire,</i>	a satire
<i>un sentinelle,</i>	a sentry	<i>une sentinelle,</i>	a sentry*
<i>un somme,</i>	a nap	<i>une somme,</i>	a sum
<i>un souris,</i>	a smile	<i>une souris,</i>	a mouse
<i>un tour,</i>	a trick, tour, turn	<i>une tour</i>	a tower
<i>un trompette,</i>	a trumpeter	<i>une trompette,</i>	a trumpet
<i>le vague,</i>	vague	<i>une vague,</i>	a wave
<i>un vase,</i>	a vase	<i>la vase,</i>	alime, mud, mire
<i>un voile,</i>	a veil	<i>une voile,</i>	a sail
<i>du vulnéraire,</i>	(said of herbs good for wounds)	<i>de la vulnéraire,</i>	an aromatic plant†

## IV.

## FORMATION OF FEMININE IN NOUNS.

*Substantives*, or words used substantively, which end with an *e* mute, do not change their termination in the feminine. Thus we say:

IN THE MASCULINE.	IN THE FEMININE.	IN THE MASCULINE.	IN THE FEMININE.
<i>un camarade</i>	<i>une camarade</i>	<i>un idoldire</i>	<i>une idoldire</i>
<i>un domestique</i>	<i>une domestique</i>	<i>un profane</i>	<i>une profane</i>
<i>un esclave</i>	<i>une esclave</i>	<i>un rebelle</i>	<i>une rebelle, &amp;c. &amp;c.</i>
<i>un élève</i>	<i>une élève</i>		

The exceptions consist in a few words which change *e* mute into *esse*. These are:

<i>chanoine</i> , which makes <i>chanoinesse</i>	<i>pape</i> , which makes <i>papesse</i>
<i>comte</i> .. .. <i>comtesse</i>	<i>prince</i> .. .. <i>princesse</i>
<i>diable</i> .. .. <i>diablesse</i>	<i>prophète</i> .. .. <i>prophétresse</i>
<i>drole</i> .. .. <i>drolesse</i>	<i>suisse</i> .. .. <i>suiresse</i>
<i>hôte</i> .. .. <i>hôtesse</i>	<i>tigre</i> .. .. <i>tigresse</i>
<i>ivrogne</i> .. .. <i>ivrognesse</i>	<i>traître</i> .. .. <i>traïtresse</i>
<i>maître</i> .. .. <i>maïresse</i>	<i>ogre</i> .. .. <i>ogresse</i>
<i>maître</i> .. .. <i>maïresse</i>	<i>vicomte</i> .. .. <i>vicomtesse</i>
<i>négre</i> .. .. <i>négresse</i>	

\* *Sentinelle* may be masculine or feminine according to the taste of the writer or the view of his mind.

† This word like *réglisse*, *jujube*, and *sentinelle*, may be used almost indifferently in the masculine or feminine.

## V.

## OF SUBSTANTIVES WHICH END IN EAU, EN, ET, ON.

## EAU.

Words ending in *eau* become feminine by changing *eau* into *elle*, as :

un *jouvenceau*,      a lad                      |    une *jouvencelle*,      a lass

## EN, ET, ON.

Words ending in *en*, *et*, *on*, form their feminine by doubling the last consonant and adding an *e* mute,\* as :

un <i>chrétien</i> ,	a christian	une <i>chrétienne</i> ,	a christian
un <i>sujet</i> ,	a subject	une <i>sujette</i> ,	a subject
un <i>fripou</i>	a rogue	une <i>friponne</i> ,	a rogue

## VI.

## OF NOUNS ENDING IN EUR.

Substantives ending in the masculine in *eur*, form their feminine in three different manners, thus :

1st by changing <i>eur</i> into <i>euse</i>
2nd      .. <i>eur</i> .. <i>cresse</i>
3rd      .. <i>eur</i> .. <i>rice</i>

The words *inférieur*, *supérieur*, *majeur*, *mineur*, *serviteur*, *gouverneur*, which make in the feminine, *inférieure*, *supérieure*, *majeure*, *mineure*, *servante*, *gouvernante*, are the only exceptions to this rule.

## NOUNS ENDING IN EUR WHICH MAKE EUSE.

a feller,	<i>abatteur</i>	<i>abatteuse</i>
a barker,	<i>aboyeur</i>	<i>aboyeuse</i>
a buyer,	<i>acheteur</i>	<i>acheteuse</i>
a lighter,	<i>allumeur</i>	<i>allumeuse</i>
trimmer,	<i>appareilleur</i>	<i>appareilleuse</i>
one who pairs, sorts	<i>apparieur</i>	<i>apparieuse</i>
matches,		
one who draws or picks	<i>arracheur</i>	<i>arracheuse</i>
anything,		
one who gathers,	<i>assembleur</i>	<i>assembleuse</i>
one who knocks people	<i>assommeur</i>	<i>assommeuse</i>
down,		
one who bathes in a river,	<i>baigneur</i>	<i>baigneuse</i>
sweeper,	<i>balayeur</i>	<i>balayeuse</i>
one who speaks gibberish,	<i>baragouineur</i>	<i>baragouineuse</i>
stammerer,	<i>bredouilleur</i>	<i>bredouilleuse</i>
image-breaker,	<i>briseur</i>	<i>briseuse</i>

---

\* Except *compagnon*, *patron*, *indiscret*, which make *compagne*, *patrone*, *indis-crète*.



embroiderer,  
one who pouts,  
coaxer,  
prattler,  
carder,  
singer,  
charmer,  
one who seeks after any-  
thing,

whisperer,  
brawler,  
hair-dresser,  
runner,  
connaissanceur, judge,  
narrator,  
bawler, crier,  
one who eats greedily,  
bed-fellow,  
dancer,  
one who goes a bird-  
nesting,

winder,  
sayer,  
a wrangler, quarrelsome  
man or woman,

gilder,  
sleeper,  
poisoner,  
borrower,  
wheddler,  
colorist (of prints)  
manager, mediator,  
undertaker, contractor,  
picker,  
maker,  
droll, farce-player,  
spinner,  
whipper,  
provider, contractor,  
one who figures (stuff),  
lisper,  
scold,  
prattler,  
gambler,  
washer,  
praiser,  
flatterer, one who lets  
out,

loader; a female who  
sorts cards into games,  
reaper,  
mock, scorner,

*brodeur*  
*boudeur*  
*cajoleur*  
*caqueteur*  
*cardeur*  
*chanteur*  
*charmeur*  
*chercheur*

*chuchoteur*  
*clabeaudeur*  
*coiffeur*  
*coureur*  
*connaissanceur*  
*conteur*  
*crieur*  
*croqueur*  
*coucheurf*  
*danceur*  
*dénicheur*

*dévideur*  
*discur*  
*disputeur*

*doreur*  
*dormeur*  
*empoisonneur*  
*emprunteur*  
*enjoleur*  
*enlumineur*  
*entremetteur*  
*entrepreneur*  
*éplucheur*  
*faiseur*  
*farceur*  
*fileur*  
*fouetteur*  
*fournisseur*  
*gauffreur*  
*grasseyeur*  
*grondeur*  
*jaseur*  
*joueur*  
*laveur*  
*louangeur*  
*loueur*

*meneur*

*moissonneur*  
*moqueur*

*brodeuse*  
*boudeuse*  
*cajoleuse*  
*caquetteuse*  
*cardeuse*  
*chanteuse\**  
*charmeuse*  
*chercheuse*

*chuchoteuse*  
*clabeaudeuse*  
*coiffeuse*  
*coureuse*  
*connaissanceuse*  
*conteuse*  
*crieuse*  
*croqueuse*  
*coucheuse*  
*danceuse*  
*dénicheuse*

*dévideuse*  
*discuse*  
*disputeuse*

*doreuse*  
*dormeuse*  
*empoisonneuse*  
*emprunteuse*  
*enjoleuse*  
*enlumineuse*  
*entremetteuse*  
*entrepreneuse*  
*éplucheuse*  
*faiseuse*  
*farceuse*  
*fileuse*  
*fouetteuse*  
*fournisseuse*  
*gauffreuse*  
*grasseyeuse*  
*grondeuse*  
*jaseuse*  
*joueuse*  
*laveuse*  
*louangeuse*  
*loueuse*

*meneuse*

*moissonneuse*  
*moqueuse*

\* We also say *cantatrice* for a female singer, skilful in the art of singing.

† Used only with *bon* or *mauvais*, as *un mauvais coucheur*, a bad bed-fellow;

opener,	<i>oureur</i>	<i>oureuse</i>
talker,	<i>parieur</i>	<i>parieuse</i>
skater,	<i>patineur</i>	<i>patineuse</i>
sinner,	<i>pécheur</i>	<i>pécheuse</i>
thinker,	<i>penseur</i>	<i>penseuse</i>
weeper,	<i>pleureur</i>	<i>pleureuse</i>
carrier,	<i>porteur</i>	<i>porteuse</i>
purveyor,	<i>pourvoyeur</i>	<i>pourvoyeuse</i>
preacher, one who is al-	<i>prêcheur</i>	<i>prêcheuse</i>
ways finding fault,		
taker,	<i>preneur</i>	<i>preneuse</i>
lender,	<i>prêteur</i>	<i>prêteuse</i>
appraiser,	<i>priseur*</i>	<i>priseuse</i>
promiser, one who pro-	<i>prometteur</i>	<i>prometteuse</i>
mises much and per-		
forms little,		
commender, a tiresome	<i>prôneur</i>	<i>prôneuse</i>
adviser,		
a quarrelsome person,	<i>querelleur</i>	<i>querelleuse</i>
one who makes a ga-	<i>quêteur</i>	<i>quêteuse</i>
thering or goes a-		
begging,		
one that mends stock-	<i>ravaudeur</i>	<i>ravaudeuse</i>
ings,		
mender,	<i>raccomodeur</i>	<i>raccomodeuse</i>
dotard,	<i>radoteur</i>	<i>radoteuse</i>
jeerer, jester,	<i>railleur</i>	<i>railleuse</i>
arguer, impertinent prater,	<i>raisonneur</i>	<i>raisonneuse</i>
tell-tale,	<i>rapporteur</i>	<i>rapporteuse</i>
one who makes tiresome	<i>rabâcheur</i>	<i>rabâcheuse</i>
repetitions,		
receiver,	<i>receveur</i>	<i>receveuse</i>
dreamer,	<i>rêveur</i>	<i>rêveuse</i>
one who buys to sell again,	<i>revendeur</i>	<i>revendeuse</i>
sneerer,	<i>ricaneur</i>	<i>ricaneuse</i>
laugher, merry creature,	<i>rieur</i>	<i>rieuse</i>
rover, rambler,	<i>rodeur</i>	<i>rodeuse</i>
snorer,	<i>ronfleur</i>	<i>ronfleur</i>
noisy person,	<i>tapageur</i>	<i>tapageuse</i>
shooter, drawer,	<i>tireur</i>	<i>tireuse</i>
worker, labourer,	<i>travailleur</i>	<i>travailleuse</i>
cheat,	<i>tricheur</i>	<i>tricheuse</i>
deceiver,	<i>trompeur</i>	<i>trompeuse</i>
knitter,	<i>tricoteur</i>	<i>tricoteuse</i>
seller,	<i>vendeur</i>	<i>vendeuse</i>
visitor,	<i>visiteur</i>	<i>visiteuse</i>
robber,	<i>voleur</i>	<i>voleuse</i>
traveller,	<i>voyageur</i>	<i>voyageuse</i>

---

\* *Priseur* is always joined to *huissier*, or *commissaire*; as, *un huissier priseur*, an auctioneer, appraiser.

Nouns in *eur* which make *rice*.

optimiser, one who, or any thing which accelerates, in- creases,	<i>abréviateur</i> <i>accélérateur</i>	<i>abréviatrice</i> <i>accélévatrice</i>
accompanist, administrator, admirer, adorer, adulator, flatterer, ambassador, his wife, appraiser, approver, hearer, auditor, computer, accountant, slanderer, co-labourer, conciliator, conductor, leader, con- ductress,	<i>accompagnateur</i> <i>administrateur</i> <i>admirateur</i> <i>adorateur</i> <i>adulateur</i> <i>ambassadeur</i> <i>appréciateur</i> <i>approbateur</i> <i>auditeur</i> <i>calculateur</i> <i>calomniateur</i> <i>collaborateur</i> <i>conciliateur</i> <i>conducteur</i>	<i>accompagnatrice</i> <i>administratrice</i> <i>admiratrice</i> <i>adoratrice</i> <i>adulatrice</i> <i>ambassadrice</i> <i>appréciatrice</i> <i>approbatrice</i> <i>auditrice</i> <i>calculatrice</i> <i>calomniatrice</i> <i>collaboratrice</i> <i>conciliatrice</i> <i>conductrice</i>
preserver, consoler, finisher, consumer, conspirator, contemplator, co-labourer, corrupter, creator, curator, debtor, informer,	<i>conservateur</i> <i>consolateur</i> <i>consommateur</i> <i>conspirateur</i> <i>contemplateur</i> <i>coopérateur</i> <i>corrupteur</i> <i>créateur</i> <i>curateur</i> <i>débiteur</i> <i>délateur</i> <i>dénonciateur</i> <i>désolateur</i> <i>destructeur</i> <i>directeur</i> <i>dispensateur</i> <i>dissipateur</i> <i>dominateur</i> <i>donateur</i> <i>examineur</i> <i>exécuteur</i>	<i>conservatrice</i> <i>consolatrice</i> <i>consommatrice</i> <i>conspiratrice</i> <i>contemplatrice</i> <i>coopératrice</i> <i>corruptrice</i> <i>créatrice</i> <i>curatrice</i> <i>débitrice</i> <i>délatrice</i> <i>dénonciatrice</i> <i>désolatrice</i> <i>destructrice</i> <i>directrice</i> <i>dispensatrice</i> <i>dissipatrice</i> <i>dominatrice</i> <i>donatrice</i> <i>examinatrice</i> <i>exécutrice</i>
destroyer,		
director, manager, dispenser, spendthrift, waster, despot, ruler, donor, examiner, executor, emperor,                         } empress,                         } explorer, exterminator, founder, one who generates, pro- duces,	<i>empereur</i> <i>explorateur</i> <i>exterminateur</i> <i>fondateur</i> <i>générateur</i>	<i>impératrice</i> <i>exploratrice</i> <i>exterminatrice</i> <i>fondatrice</i> <i>génératrice</i>
imitator, improvisator, improvisatrix,                 } one who points out, inspector, inspirer, instigator, speaker in a dialogue,	<i>imitateur</i> <i>improvisateur</i> <i>indicateur</i> <i>inspecteur</i> <i>inspirateur</i> <i>instigateur</i> <i>interlocuteur</i>	<i>imitatrice</i> <i>improvisatrice</i> <i>indicatrice</i> <i>inspectrice</i> <i>inspiratrice</i> <i>instigatrice</i> <i>interlocutrice</i>

one who expounds or explains,	<i>interpréteur</i>	<i>interprélatrice</i>
interrogator,	<i>interrogateur</i>	<i>interrogatrice</i>
interrupter,	<i>interrupteur</i>	<i>interruptrice</i>
introducer,	<i>introduceur</i>	<i>introduceurice</i>
inventor,	<i>inventeur</i>	<i>inventrice</i>
reader,	<i>lecteur</i>	<i>lectrice</i>
legislator,	<i>législateur</i>	<i>législatrice</i>
liberator,	<i>libérateur</i>	<i>libératrice</i>
mediator,	<i>médiateur</i>	<i>médiatrice</i>
moderator,	<i>modérateur</i>	<i>modératrice</i>
mover, contriver,	<i>moteur</i>	<i>motrice</i>
operator,	<i>opérateur</i>	<i>opératrice</i>
observer,	<i>observateur</i>	<i>observatrice</i>
persecutor, bore,	<i>persécuteur</i>	<i>persécutrice</i>
producer,	<i>producteur</i>	<i>productrice</i>
propagator,	<i>propagateur</i>	<i>propagatrice</i>
protector,	<i>protecteur</i>	<i>protectrice</i>
reconciler,	<i>réconciliateur</i>	<i>réconciliatrice</i>
reformer,	<i>réformateur</i>	<i>réformatrice</i>
regulator,	<i>régulateur</i>	<i>régulatrice</i>
remunerator,	<i>rémunérateur</i>	<i>rémunératrice</i>
restorer, one who restores,	<i>restaurateur</i>	<i>restauration*</i>
one who keeps a genteel eating-house,		
seducer,	<i>séducteur</i>	<i>séductrice</i>
speculator,	<i>spéculateur</i>	<i>spéculatrice</i>
spectator,	<i>spectateur</i>	<i>spectatrice</i>
robber, plunderer,	<i>spoliateur</i>	<i>spoliatrice</i>
examiner,	<i>vérificateur</i>	<i>vérificatrice</i>

Nouns ending in *eur* which make *esse*.

one who supplies with money,	<i>baillieur</i>	<i>bailleresse</i>
hunter, sportsman, huntress,	<i>chasseur</i>	<i>chasseresse†</i>
defendant,	<i>défendeur</i>	<i>défenderesse</i>
plaintiff,	<i>demandeur</i>	<i>demanderesse</i>
conjuror, soothsayer,	<i>devineur or devin</i>	<i>devineresse</i>
enchanter,	<i>enchanter</i>	<i>enchanteresse</i>

## VII.

### OF NOUNS ENDING IN *x*.

The feminine of Nouns which end in *x*, is formed by changing *x* into *se*, examples:—

an ambitious person,	<i>ambitieux</i>	<i>ambitieuse</i>
a lover,	<i>amoureux</i>	<i>amoureuse</i>
a lame person,	<i>boiteux</i>	<i>boiteuse</i>
a ticklish person,	<i>chatouilleux</i>	<i>chatouilleuse</i>

\* *Restauration* is only used in speaking of one who restores anything.

† *Chasseresse* is only used in high style; we usually say *chasseuse*.

a factious person,	<i>factieux</i>	<i>factieuse</i>
a gouty person,	<i>goutteux</i>	<i>goutteuse</i>
a jealous person,	<i>jaloux</i>	<i>jalouse</i>
an idle person,	<i>parasceux</i>	<i>parasceuse</i>
a presumptuous person,	<i>présomptueux</i>	<i>présomptueuse</i>

The only exceptions to this rule are:—

<i>neveu</i>	which makes	<i>nièce</i>
<i>vieux</i>	.. ..	<i>vieille</i>

### VIII.

OF NOUNS ENDING IN A CONSONANT, OTHERS THAN THOSE MENTIONED IN THE PRECEDING NUMBERS.

Nouns ending in any other consonant than those already mentioned, form their feminine by the addition of an *e* mute, examples:

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
African,	<i>Africain</i>	<i>Africaine</i>
English,	<i>Anglais</i>	<i>Anglaise</i>
prattler,	<i>babillard</i>	<i>babillarde</i>
citizen, townman, or woman,	<i>bourgeois</i>	<i>bourgeoise</i>
courier,	<i>courrier</i>	<i>courrière</i>
a pious person,	<i>dévo</i>	<i>dévot</i>
defunct,	<i>défun</i>	<i>défunse</i>
a dandy, a fashionable woman,	<i>élégant</i>	<i>élégante</i>
Spaniard,	<i>Espagnol</i>	<i>Espagnole</i>
a dainty person,	<i>friand</i>	<i>friande</i>
a greedy person,	<i>gourmand</i>	<i>gourmande</i>
giant, giantess,	<i>géant</i>	<i>géante</i>
an ungrateful person,	<i>ingrat</i>	<i>ingrate</i>
gardener,	<i>jardinier</i>	<i>jardinière</i>
a slow person,	<i>lambin</i>	<i>lambine</i>
worker, workman, work-woman,	<i>ouvrier</i>	<i>ouvrière</i>
a wicked, naughty person,	<i>méchant</i>	<i>méchante</i>
sovereign,	<i>souverain</i>	<i>souveraine</i>
neighbour,	<i>voisin</i>	<i>voisine</i>
villager,	<i>villageois</i>	<i>villageoise, &amp;c.</i>

### EXCEPTIONS.

The exceptions to the foregoing rule are:—

bachelor,	<i>bachelier,*</i>	which makes	<i>bachelette</i>
duke,	<i>duc</i>	.. ..	<i>duchesse</i>
jew,	<i>juif</i>	.. ..	<i>juive</i>
mongrel,	<i>métis</i>	.. ..	<i>métisse</i>

\* No longer used in the sense of bachelor; we now say, un *garçon* or un *célibataire*.

mortal,	<i>mortel</i>	which makes	<i>mortelle</i>
peer,	<i>pair</i>	.. ..	<i>paire</i>
peasant,	<i>paysan</i>	.. ..	<i>paysanne</i>
quaker,	<i>quaker</i>	.. ..	<i>quakeresse</i>
a foolish person,	<i>sot</i>	.. ..	<i>sotte</i>
widower, widow,	<i>veuf</i>	.. ..	<i>veuve</i>
a diminutive oldish man or woman,	<i>vieillot</i>	.. ..	<i>vieillotie</i>

and *partisan* which has no feminine.

## IX.

OF NOUNS ENDING WITH ANY OTHER VOWEL THAN THE E MUTE.

The feminine of words which end in *é, i, u*, is formed by adding an *e* mute, examples:—

	MASCULINE.		FEMININE.
elder,	<i>ainé</i>		<i>ainée</i>
hungry person,	<i>affamé</i>		<i>affamée</i>
apprentice,	<i>apprenti</i>		<i>apprentie</i>
hunchback,	<i>bossu</i>		<i>bossue</i>
a resolute person,	<i>déterminé</i>		<i>déterminée</i>
enemy,	<i>ennemi</i>		<i>ennemie</i>
an inconsiderate person,	<i>inconsidéré</i>		<i>inconsidérée</i>
unknown,	<i>inconnu</i>		<i>inconnue</i>

The exceptions to this rule are:—

abbot,	<i>abbé</i>	{ which makes in the feminine	<i>abbesse</i>
favourite,	<i>favori</i>		<i>favorite</i>
King,	<i>roi</i>		<i>reine</i>

## X.

OF NOUNS WHICH EXPRESS TRADES OR QUALITIES CONSIDERED AS MORE ESPECIALLY SUITABLE TO MEN.

Nouns of professions, trades, &c., have no feminine; therefore, although there are women who compose, translate, engrave, &c., we do not say in the feminine, *compositrice, traductrice, graveuse*, for this reason, that such words have been invented for men only, to whom the trades or qualities they designate more generally belong.

List of words which have no feminine.

aggressor,	<i>agresseur</i>	censor,	<i>censeur</i>
agriculturist,	<i>agriculteur</i>	composer,	<i>compositeur</i>
judge, connoisseur,	<i>amateur</i>	confessor,	<i>confesseur</i>
artisan	<i>artisan</i>	coxcomb,	<i>fus</i>
assassin,	<i>assassin</i>	defender,	<i>défenseur</i>
author,	<i>auteur</i>	slanderer, traducer,	<i>détracteur</i>
botanist	<i>botaniste</i>	disciple,	<i>disciple</i>
captain,	<i>capitaine</i>	distiller,	<i>distillateur</i>
quack,	<i>charlatan</i>	doctor,	<i>docteur</i>

writer,	<i>écrivain</i>
editor,	<i>éditeur</i>
sharpener, swindler,	<i>escroc</i>
post-man, letter-carrier	<i>facteur</i>
abetter, accomplice,	<i>fauteur</i>
grave-digger,	<i>fossoyeur</i>
geometer,	<i>géomètre</i>
engraver,	<i>graveur</i>
printer,	<i>imprimeur</i>
engineer,	<i>ingénieur</i>
impostor,	<i>imposteur</i>
ploughman, tiller,	<i>laboureur</i>
bookseller,	<i>libraire</i>
man of letters,	<i>littérateur</i>
medical man,	<i>médecin</i>
orator,	<i>orateur</i>
partisan,	<i>partisan</i>
painter,	<i>peintre</i>

philosopher,	<i>philosophe</i>
predecessor,	<i>prédécesseur</i>
preacher,	<i>prédicateur</i>
one who betrays his trust, or an extortioner,	<i>prévaricateur</i>
professor,	<i>professeur</i>
prose-writer,	<i>prosauteur</i>
head-master, rector of a college,	<i>proviseur</i>
questor,	<i>questeur</i>
editor,	<i>rédacteur</i>
manager, trustee,	<i>régisseur</i>
rhetorician,	<i>rhéteur</i>
subscriber,	<i>souscripteur</i>
successor,	<i>successeur</i>
secretary,	<i>secrétaire</i>
conqueror,	<i>vainqueur</i>

## XI.

OF NOUNS, WHICH THOUGH HAVING A FEMININE, YET ARE USED IN THE MASCULINE.

There are circumstances where, even in speaking of women, or beings of the feminine gender, we must use the masculine rather than the feminine, and though in several instances no other reason can be given why it should be so, but that it is the custom—that tyrant of languages—yet it may be laid down as a principle, that this is done when we wish the noun to express the idea of a male, manly, strong being, or the qualities exclusively belonging to, the masculine.—Thus we say:—

*Elisabeth était un grand roi.*

*Les Françaises sont de grands maîtres en coquetterie.*

*Le maître ici, c'est moi* (though this be said by a woman).

THE END.

# COLLEGE OF MENARS.

---

THIS COLLEGE has been established by the Prince De CHIMAY,

**At MENARS, near BLOIS, in FRANCE,**

And offers peculiar advantages to ENGLISH STUDENTS, several of whom, belonging to Families of the first respectability, are now receiving their Education there.

It is situate in a very beautiful and healthy part of France, and

**THE TERMS AMOUNT ONLY TO £40 A-YEAR**

*For Board, Lodging, Clothing, Washing, Medical Attendance, and Education, including Stationery, and*

**WITHOUT ANY EXTRAS EXCEPT BOOKS;**

A sum which in that district is equivalent to at least double that amount in England.

The Course of Instruction comprises all that is taught in the first Colleges—

**Latin, Greek, Mathematics, German, Spanish, Italian, Drawing, Music, Dancing, &c.**

---

English Pupils are taught FRENCH during the first months after their arrival, and they very soon acquire a proficiency both in writing and speaking it. No extra charge is made if the Pupil remains during the Vacation (there is one only, in September).

*A Protestant Gentleman*

attends to the Religious Instruction of those who belong to the Church of England.

Each Pupil must bring with him an outfit, on entering, which may be partly provided by his parents, or obtained at the College for the sum of £24. More minute details may be obtained from Mons. ISIDORE BRASSEUR, Professor of French Literature, at King's College, London, to whom personal application may be made, at the College, Strand, every day, between Nine and Twelve (if by letter, post-paid).



# BRASSEUR'S FRENCH GENDERS,

May be had separately,

1 Vol., neatly bound, price 1s. 6d.,

PUBLISHED BY

Messrs. BOSANGE & Co., 14, GREAT MARLBOROUGH STREET.

---

## BRASSEUR'S PRACTICAL EXERCISES

ON

## FRENCH PHRASEOLOGY,

1 Vol., 3s. 6d.,

PUBLISHED BY W. PARKER, WEST STRAND.

---

IN THE PRESS,

## A NEW FRENCH LEXICON,

BY

MARIN DE LA VOYE.

\*.\* This work, from its perfectly novel construction, enables beginners instantly to ascertain the signification of any word, under whatever Grammatical form the rules of composition may have prescribed. Every part of speech, conjugated, declined, or abridged in any way, will there be found alphabetically arranged in so compendious a manner, that the size, the price, and use of the book, render it particularly advantageous to Schools.

To be had at

Messrs. A. H. BAILEY & Co's., 33, CORNHILL.



